

Collins easy learning

# French Conversation

Salut!

*Ça va?*


The easiest way to learn a language

Collins easy learning

# French Conversation



Salut!



*Ça va?*

Published by Collins  
An imprint of HarperCollins Publishers  
Westerhill Road  
Bishopbriggs  
Glasgow G64 2QT

Second Edition 2015

© HarperCollins Publishers 2006, 2015

eBook Edition © May 2015 ISBN 978-0-00-811882-2  
Version: 2015-03-30

Collins® is a registered trademark of HarperCollins Publishers Limited

[www.collinsdictionary.com](http://www.collinsdictionary.com)  
[www.collins.co.uk/languagesupport](http://www.collins.co.uk/languagesupport)

Typeset by Davidson Publishing  
Solutions, Glasgow

All rights reserved under International and Pan-American Copyright Conventions. By payment of the required fees, you have been granted the non-exclusive, non-transferable right to access and read the text of this e-book on screen. No part of this text may be reproduced, transmitted, downloaded, decompiled, reverse engineered, or stored in or introduced into any information storage and retrieval system, in any form or by any means, whether electronic or mechanical, now known or hereinafter invented, without the express written permission of HarperCollins.

Entered words that we have reason to believe constitute trademarks have been designated as such. However, neither the presence nor absence of such designation should be regarded as affecting the legal status of any trademark.

The contents of this publication are believed correct at the time of printing. Nevertheless the Publisher can accept no responsibility for errors or omissions, changes in the detail given or for any expense or loss thereby caused.

HarperCollins does not warrant that any website mentioned in this title will be provided uninterrupted, that any website will be error free, that defects will be corrected, or that the website or the server that makes it available are free of viruses or bugs. For full terms and conditions please refer to the site terms provided on the website.

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.

If you would like to comment on any aspect of this book, please contact us at the given address or online.

E-mail: [dictionaries@harpercollins.co.uk](mailto:dictionaries@harpercollins.co.uk)  
[@collinsdict](http://www.facebook.com/collinsdictionary)

**Acknowledgements**

We would like to thank those authors and publishers who kindly gave permission for copyright material to be used in the Collins Corpus. We would also like to thank Times Newspapers Ltd for providing valuable data.

MANAGING EDITOR  
Janice McNeillie

CONTRIBUTOR  
Laurence Larroche

FOR THE PUBLISHER  
Gerry Breslin  
Hannah Dove

## **Contents**

[Cover](#)

[Title page](#)

[Copyright](#)

### **Introduction**

[What is it?](#)

[Why do you need it?](#)

[How is it structured?](#)

[How does it work?](#)

[Why choose Collins Easy Learning French Conversation?](#)

[The Collins Easy Learning range](#)

### **French pronunciation**

[Silent letters](#)

[French vowels](#)

[Vowel combinations](#)

[French consonants](#)

[Stress](#)

[Liaison](#)

## **Units**

### **Small talk**

[Comment ça va? – How are things?](#)

[Greetings](#)

[Introducing people](#)

[Talking about yourself](#)

[Asking for information](#)

[Saying what you want to do](#)

Making suggestions  
Expressing opinions  
Talking about your plans  
Making arrangements  
Saying what you have to do  
Listen out for  
Lifestyle Tips

### Getting there

Bon voyage! – Have a good trip!  
Talking about your plans  
Saying what you have to do  
Saying what you want to do  
Making suggestions  
Asking for information  
Asking for things  
Saying what you like, dislike, prefer  
Listen out for  
Lifestyle Tips

### Home from home

Dors bien! – Sleep well!  
Asking for things  
Talking about yourself  
Asking for information  
Asking for permission  
Saying what you like, dislike, prefer  
Expressing opinions  
Making suggestions  
Asking for suggestions  
Saying what you have to do  
Talking about your plans  
Complaining  
Listen out for  
Lifestyle Tips

## Wining and dining

*Bon appétit! – Enjoy your meal!*

*Making arrangements*

*Asking for information*

*Asking for things*

*Saying what you want to do*

*Saying what you like, dislike, prefer*

*Asking for suggestions*

*Making suggestions*

*Listen out for*

*Lifestyle Tips*

## Hitting the town

*Amusez-vous bien! – Enjoy yourselves!*

*Making suggestions*

*Talking about your plans*

*Asking for information*

*Asking for things*

*Saying what you like, dislike, prefer*

*Expressing opinions*

*Asking for permission*

*Listen out for*

*Lifestyle Tips*

## Museums, monuments and much more

*Passez une bonne journée! – Have a nice day!*

*Saying what you want to do*

*Talking about your plans*

*Making suggestions*

*Asking for information*

*Asking for things*

*Asking for permission*

*Saying what you like, dislike, prefer*

*Complaining*

*Listen out for*

## Lifestyle Tips

### Retail therapy

Je peux vous aider? – Can I help you?

Asking for things

Saying what you have to do

Talking about your plans

Expressing opinions

Asking for information

Saying what you like, dislike, prefer

Making suggestions

Asking for permission

Listen out for

Lifestyle Tips

### Service with a smile

Service irréprochable! – Excellent service!

Greetings

Talking about yourself

Saying what you have to do

Saying what you want to do

Asking for information

Asking for things

Asking for suggestions

Making suggestions

Making arrangements

Talking about your plans

Saying what you like, dislike, prefer

Listen out for

Lifestyle Tips

### Ouch!

Rétablis-toi vite! – Get well soon!

Describing the problem

Saying what happened



Asking for information  
Asking for things  
Saying what you want to do  
Making suggestions  
Listen out for  
Lifestyle Tips

## Help!

Ne vous en faites pas! – Don't worry!  
Describing the problem  
Saying what happened  
Describing people and things  
Asking for information  
Asking for things  
Saying what you want to do  
Saying what you have to do  
Making suggestions  
Talking about your plans  
Listen out for  
Lifestyle Tips

## Getting in touch

Qui est à l'appareil? – Who's calling, please?  
Making a telephone call  
When the person you're calling answers  
Saying why you're calling  
Giving information  
Answering the telephone  
Ending a telephone call  
Listen out for  
Writing emails and letters  
Texting  
Social media  
Lifestyle Tips

## Time, numbers, date

Trois, deux, un... Partez! – Three, two, one... Go!

Les nombres – Numbers

L'heure – The time

Listen out for

La durée – Saying how long

Les saisons – The seasons

Les mois de l'année – The months of the year

Les dates – Dates

Les jours de la semaine – The days of the week

L'alphabet – The alphabet

Listen out for

Interesting days and dates

## In summary...

Bon, résumons... – So, to sum up...

Apologizing

Asking for and giving explanations

Asking for information

Asking for permission

Asking for things

Complaining

Describing people and things

Explaining a problem

Expressing opinions

Making suggestions

Saying what's happened

Saying what you have to do

Saying what you like, dislike, prefer

Saying what you want to do

Talking about your plans

## One-stop phrase shop

Je vous demande pardon? – I beg your pardon?

Hellos and goodbyes

Please and thank you  
Attracting someone's attention  
Making sure you've understood  
Checking facts  
Wishing someone something  
Apologizing  
Reassuring someone  
Opinions  
Agreeing, disagreeing and declining  
Congratulating someone  
Reacting to good and bad news  
Exclamations  
Surprise  
Encouraging someone  
Handing someone something  
Dangers and emergencies  
Speaking your mind  
Conversational words

## **Grammar**

Nouns  
Articles  
Pronouns  
Adjectives  
Questions  
Negatives  
Some common translation difficulties  
Verbs  
Verb tenses

## **Verb tables**

Aimer: to love  
Finir: to finish  
Attendre: to wait  
S'asseoir: to sit down

Aller: to go

Avoir: to have

Devoir: to have, to owe

Être: to be

Faire: to do, to make

Pouvoir: to be able

Vouloir: to want

## **Vocabulary builder**

About the publisher

## Introduction

### What is it?

*Collins Easy Learning French Conversation* is a book for learners of French of all ages. It will increase your confidence in holding a conversation in French, whether you are just starting to learn French, studying at school or at an evening class, or brushing up your language skills. You may be going on holiday or planning to go travelling in a French-speaking country, go there on business, or live there. Whatever your situation, you'll want to be able to communicate effectively and naturally in French.

### Why do you need it?

Becoming proficient in a foreign language means being able to use and understand a number of different aspects – vocabulary, grammar, pronunciation, and so on. However, it takes a while to be able to put all these elements together and be sure that what you are saying sounds like natural French. The *Easy Learning French Conversation* has been carefully designed to bring these aspects together and give you language structures which you can use in conversation with confidence, knowing that you will be speaking French as spoken by French speakers.

### How is it structured?

*Collins Easy Learning French Conversation* is made up of 12 units, each illustrating the language used in a particular situation, followed by a

summary which brings together the key phrases covered throughout the units. You'll also find the [One-stop phrase shop](#) – a unit which contains all the important expressions and turns of phrase that help you to sound more natural in French.

A short grammar and verbs supplement gives you additional language support, ensuring that you have everything at your fingertips. Finally, the English-French glossary covers the most important vocabulary you may need to personalize your conversation.

### [How does it work?](#)

Language allows us to express ourselves and interact with others. In any given situation, we perform different language tasks, such as asking for information, agreeing and disagreeing, complaining, making suggestions and so forth. To do this, we use linguistic structures (*How...?*, *When...?*, *Could I...?*, *I'd like...* and so on) which can be used in a variety of contexts. Each unit in *Collins Easy Learning French Conversation* gives you all the phrases you might need in a given situation, grouped by structure. English headings help you navigate through the structures to enable you to find what you want quickly and easily. Throughout the units, there are also tips headed **Bon à savoir!** which highlight important differences in the way English and French work.

A conversation, by definition, is a two-way process. It is as important to understand what is being said to you as it is to be able to respond. At the end of each unit, there is a section headed **Listen out for**. Each of these sections gives you a variety of the most typical phrases you might hear in a given situation. Becoming familiar with these will allow you to have a successful conversation with a French speaker. For further help with pronunciation, a free download with all the important structures recorded is available on [www.collins.co.uk/easylearningresources](http://www.collins.co.uk/easylearningresources).

Communicating effectively in French isn't just about linguistic competence – it's also about cultural knowledge. For you to feel confident in a French-speaking country, it is useful to know more about French culture and lifestyle. At the end of each unit, the **Lifestyle Tips** will give you the information you need to gain a deeper insight into the language, the country and its people.

### Why choose *Collins Easy Learning French Conversation*?

- **easy to use** all the key language structures you need to give you the confidence to hold a conversation in natural French
- **easy to read** a clear, modern layout which allows you to find what you need quickly and easily
- **easy to understand** the language you may hear from French speakers in a given situation
- **easy to speak** free audio download available on [www.collins.co.uk/easylearningresources](http://www.collins.co.uk/easylearningresources)

### The *Collins Easy Learning* range

The *Collins Easy Learning French Conversation* is part of the best-selling *Collins Easy Learning* range, which includes the highly acclaimed *Collins Easy Learning French Dictionary*, *Collins Easy Learning French Grammar* and *Collins Easy Learning French Verbs* support you with all your grammatical needs, and the *Collins Easy Learning French Words* allows you to learn and practise your French vocabulary. The *Collins Easy Learning* series is the ideal language reference range to help you learn French.

## French pronunciation

There are some sounds in French which need a bit of practice, such as the French **r**, which is much more noticeable than an English *r*, and the very sharp **u** sound to be heard in words like **rue** and **plu**, which is different from the *oo* sound in an English word like *ruin*.

## Silent letters

As in English, not all the letters in French words are pronounced – especially final consonants. The final consonant is not sounded in the following, for example: **vert** (*green*), **grand** (*tall*), **petit** (*small*), and **ouvert** (*open*). However, if the final consonant is followed by an **e**, for example in the feminine form of the adjective, the consonant is pronounced. The feminine forms **verte**, **grande**, **petite**, and **ouverte** all end with consonant sounds.

## French vowels

These are the main ways in which French vowels are pronounced:

- a** – *a* as in *fat* (patte, casserole)  
aw (bas, cas)  
followed by n: *en* as in *encore* (dans, sans, plan)
- e** – *uh* (le, premier, repas)  
*e* as in *set* (merci, restaurant)  
followed by n: *en* as in *encore* (vent, entrer, cent)  
followed by r: *ay* (parler, diner)
- é** – *ay* (occupe, region)
- è** – *ai* as in *air* (pere, regle)



- i** – ee (il, billet, vie, samedi)  
followed by n: a as in sang (matin, fin, vin)
- o** – o as in spot (donner, mort)  
oh (mot, poser)
- u** – followed by n: u as in sung (lundi, brun)

To make the **u** sound for words like **rue** and **pure**, place your lips as if you were going to whistle and make a sharp *ee* sound at the front of your mouth.

### Vowel combinations

- ai** – e as in set (mais, lait)  
followed by n: a as in sang (pain, copain)
- au** – o as in gosh (gauche)
- eu** – euh (peu, deux)
- eau** – oh (couteau)
- ou** – oo (geou, couscous)

### **BON À SAVOIR!**

Two words you will often hear – **oui** (*yes*) and **lui** (*him*) are examples of a breathy *w* sound – they’re pronounced rather like *hwee* and *lwhee*.

### French consonants

Most French consonants are pronounced the same as their English equivalents. Some consonants, however, are pronounced differently depending on which vowel follows:

- c** – *k* as in *keen* when it is followed by **a**, **o** or **u** (çadeau, couteau, cumin) – note that when a cedilla (**ç**) is added to the **c**, it will sound like *s* in *sit* (ça, garçon, déçu)

	– s as in <i>ceiling</i> when it is followed by <b>e, i</b> or <b>y</b> (sé <u>a</u> nce, <u>c</u> itron, <u>c</u> yp <u>r</u> ès)
<b>ch</b>	– sh as in <i>shop</i> ( <u>ch</u> emise, mou <u>ch</u> oir)
<b>g</b>	– g as in <i>gate</i> when it is followed by <b>a, o</b> or <b>u</b> (gaz, égouter, aigu)
	– s as in <i>leisure</i> when it is followed by <b>e, i</b> or <b>y</b> (juge, gilet, gym)
<b>gn</b>	– ni as in <i>onion</i> (oig <u>n</u> on, campag <u>n</u> e)
<b>j</b>	– s as in <i>leisure</i> (jeter, <u>J</u> ules)
<b>q, qu</b>	– k as in <i>keen</i> (chaq <u>u</u> e, q <u>u</u> estion)
<b>s</b>	– z as in <i>zoo</i> when it is between vowels (heure <u>s</u> e, ois <u>e</u> au)
	– s as in <i>sit</i> when it isn't (cass <u>é</u> , sa <u>u</u> ce, désast <u>r</u> e)
<b>th</b>	– t as in <i>take</i> (math <u>s</u> , th <u>er</u> mostat, th <u>é</u> âtre)
<b>t in -tion</b>	– s as in <i>sit</i> (nata <u>t</u> ion, nati <u>o</u> nal)

Some consonants are pronounced differently to English:

<b>h</b>	– when it begins a word, it can be ‘silent’ (l’ <u>h</u> omme, un <u>h</u> ôtel) or ‘aspirate’ (les <u>h</u> aricots, le <u>h</u> all). When the <b>h</b> is silent, the word behaves as though it starts with a vowel and forms a liaison with the preceding word where appropriate (see below). When the <b>h</b> is aspirate, no liaison is made.
<b>r</b>	– rr: a raspy sound in the back of the throat ( <u>r</u> ue, <u>r</u> ouge, <u>r</u> are)
<b>ll</b>	– y as in <i>yes</i> (fil <u>l</u> e, pail <u>l</u> e)

## **BON À SAVOIR!**

Note, however, that **mille** (*one thousand*) is pronounced to rhyme with *peel*.

## Stress

In English words, a particular syllable is stressed (*concert*, *dentist*), whereas in French each syllable has its own length and each is pronounced with the same intensity.

## Liaison

Liaison is what happens when a French word ending in a consonant which would usually be silent, for example, **petit** (*small*), **les** (*the*), precedes a word starting with a vowel or a 'silent' **h**. The silent consonant is sounded to make the words flow more easily.

**petit ami** (*boyfriend*) is pronounced puh-teet-ah-mee (the **t** at the end of **petit** is sounded)

**les hôtels** (*hotels*) is pronounced layz-oh-tel (the **s** at the end of **les** sounds like a z)

## Small talk

### Comment ça va? – How are things?

Whether you're going to be working in a French-speaking country or you're going to spend some time with your French-speaking friends, you'll want to be able to chat with people and get to know them better. The phrases in this unit will help you talk naturally to friends, family and colleagues in a number of everyday situations.

#### GREETINGS

Just as in English, there are several ways of greeting people in French, depending on who you are addressing, and whether you want to be formal or not. Say **bonjour, madame/mademoiselle/monsieur** if you want to sound polite and just **bonjour** to someone you know a little. If you're on friendly terms with someone, you can say **salut!** (*hi!*).

#### **Hello...**

<b>Bonjour.</b>	<b>Hello.</b>
<b>Bonjour, madame.</b>	<b>Good morning.</b>
<b>Bonjour, Pierre.</b>	<b>Good afternoon Pierre.</b>
<b>Salut, Olivier!</b>	<b>Hi Olivier!</b>

**Bonsoir.**

**Good evening.**

## **BON À SAVOIR!**

In French there is no equivalent for *good morning* and *good afternoon* – people just say **bonjour** during the day or **bonsoir** in the evening.

Use **au revoir, madame/mademoiselle/monsieur** to say goodbye to people you don't know well. You can just say **au revoir** to people you know, or use **salut!** (*bye!*) if you are on friendly terms with them.

## **Goodbye...**

<b>Au revoir, monsieur.</b>	<b>Goodbye.</b>
<b>Au revoir, mademoiselle.</b>	<b>Goodbye.</b>
<b>Salut!</b>	<b>Bye!</b>
<b>Bonsoir.</b>	<b>Goodnight.</b>

## **See you...**

<b>À plus tard!</b>	<b>See you later!</b>
<b>À demain!</b>	<b>See you tomorrow!</b>
<b>À lundi!</b>	<b>See you on Monday!</b>

## **INTRODUCING PEOPLE**

You may want to introduce people you know to one another. The simplest way is by saying **voici** (*this is*) when introducing a person. You can also use **je te présente** (*I'd like you to meet*) when addressing someone you know well, or **je vous présente** to be more formal or when speaking to several people.

## This is...

<b>Voici</b> mon mari, Richard.	<b>This is</b> my husband, Richard.
<b>Voici</b> mes enfants: Andrew, Gordon et Emma.	<b>These are</b> my children, Andrew, Gordon and Emma.
<b>Je vous présente</b> Danielle.	<b>I'd like you to meet</b> Danielle.
<b>Je te présente</b> Kevin, mon compagnon.	<b>I'd like you to meet</b> Kevin, my partner.

## BON À SAVOIR!

When you're introduced to someone, you'll want to know how to react. The traditional **enchanté** should only be used in formal or business situations these days, and very often people just say **bonjour**.

## TALKING ABOUT YOURSELF

In order to get the conversation going, you'll want to be able to talk about yourself – what your name is, what you do and so on. To say what your name is in French, you use the verb **s'appeler** which literally means *to call oneself*. The **s'** (*oneself*) changes to **m'** (*myself*) in **je m'appelle** (*my name is*). For more information on reflexive verbs like **s'appeler**, see [here](#).

## My name is...

<b>Je m'appelle</b> Jean-Pierre Métayer.	<b>My name is</b> Jean-Pierre Métayer.
<b>Je m'appelle</b> Tarik.	<b>My name is</b> Tarik.
<b>Il s'appelle</b> André.	<b>His name is</b> André.

**Elle s'appelle** Lara.

**Vous vous appelez**  
comment?

**Moi, c'est** Liam.

**Her name is** Lara.

What's **your name**?

Hi, **I'm** Liam.

If you want to say how old you are, use **j'ai** followed by your age and **ans** (literally *I have... years*). **ai** comes from the verb **avoir**. For more information on **avoir**, see [here](#).

### **I'm...years old**

**J'ai** trente-sept **ans**.

**J'ai** vingt-deux **ans**.

Mon fils **a** huit **ans**.

**Vous avez** quel **âge**?

**I'm** thirty-seven **years old**.

**I'm** twenty-two.

My son's eight.

How **old are you**?

### **BON À SAVOIR!**

If you have to ask **Vous avez quel âge?**, you can always add **sans indiscretion** (*if you don't mind my asking*).

To talk about who you are and what you do, use **je suis** (*I am*). This comes from the verb **être**. For more information on **être**, see [here](#).

**Je suis** une amie de Paul.

**Je suis** le frère de Ben.

**Je suis** célibataire.

**Je travaille en tant que**  
programmeur pour  
l'entreprise Dunier.

**Je suis** enseignant.

**I'm** a friend of Paul's.

**I'm** Ben's brother.

**I'm** single.

**I work as a** programmer  
for the Dunier company.

**I'm** a teacher.

## BON À SAVOIR!

When you say what you do in French, you don't put an article in front of the job name: *I'm a baker* is **je suis boulanger**. However, you do need an article when you address someone by their title, so *Mrs Chairwoman* is **Madame la Directrice**.

### I have...

<b>J'ai</b> deux sœurs.	<b>I have</b> two sisters.
<b>J'ai</b> un fils et une fille.	<b>I have</b> one son and one daughter.
<b>On a</b> de la famille dans le sud de la France.	<b>We have</b> relatives in southern France.
<b>Elle a</b> les yeux bleus.	<b>She has</b> blue eyes.
<b>Il a</b> les cheveux châtain.	<b>He has</b> brown hair.

### I live...

<b>Je vis</b> au pays de Galles.	<b>I live</b> in Wales.
<b>Je vis</b> seul.	<b>I live</b> alone.
<b>On habite</b> dans un appartement.	<b>We live</b> in a flat.

## BON À SAVOIR!

If you're female, you'll say **seule** (*alone*) rather than **seul**.

### I'm staying...

<b>Je suis descendu</b> à l'hôtel du Palais.	<b>I'm staying</b> at the Palace Hotel.
<b>Vous êtes descendu</b> à quel	Which hotel <b>are you</b>



hôtel?	<b>staying</b> at?
<b>Je suis</b> à Paris pour une semaine.	<b>I'm staying</b> in Paris for a week.
<b>Je loge</b> chez des amis.	<b>I'm staying</b> with friends.

To say that you've done something for a given length of time, use **ça fait...** followed by a time word such as **jour** (*day*), **semaine** (*week*) or **an** (*year*) and the verb in the present tense. For more information on the present tense, see [here](#).

### I have...for...

<b>Ça fait</b> cinq ans <b>que je</b> suis infirmière.	<b>I've been</b> a nurse <b>for</b> five years.
<b>Ça fait</b> dix ans <b>que je</b> vis en France.	<b>I've lived</b> in France <b>for</b> ten years.
<b>Je suis</b> à Saint-Raphaël <b>depuis</b> deux semaines.	<b>I've been</b> in Saint-Raphaël <b>for</b> two weeks.
<b>J'apprends</b> le français <b>depuis</b> 6 mois.	<b>I've been</b> learning French <b>for</b> 6 months.

## ASKING FOR INFORMATION

When you're chatting socially, you will want to ask any number of questions. One simple way of finding out information from someone is to say **parlez-moi** (*tell me*) to someone you don't know very well or **parle-moi** to someone you're on friendly terms with.

### Tell me...

<b>Parlez-moi</b> de votre famille.	<b>Tell me</b> about your family.
-------------------------------------	-----------------------------------

**Parlez-moi** un peu de vous.

**Parle-moi** de ton nouveau copain.

**Dis-moi** en quoi consiste ton boulot.

**Tell me** a bit about yourself.

**Tell me** about your new boyfriend.

**Tell me** what your job involves.

Another handy way of asking for information in spoken French is to put **c'est** at the beginning of the sentence before the question word: **quoi** (*what*), **où** (*where*), **quand** (*when*) and so on.

### What...?

<b>C'est quoi</b> ton adresse?	<b>What's</b> your address?
<b>C'est quoi</b> le numéro de téléphone d'Olivier?	<b>What's</b> Olivier's phone number?
<b>Qu'est-ce que</b> tu fais dans la vie?	<b>What</b> do you do?
<b>À quoi</b> elle ressemble?	<b>What</b> does she look like?

### Where...?

<b>Où</b> est votre bureau?	<b>Where</b> is your office?
<b>C'est où</b> cette soirée?	<b>Where</b> is the party being held?
<b>Où est-ce que</b> tu travailles?	<b>Where</b> do you work?
<b>Où est-ce que</b> tu habites?	<b>Where</b> do you live?
Tu viens <b>d'où</b> ?	<b>Where</b> do you come <b>from</b> ?
Tu loges <b>où</b> ?	<b>Where</b> are you staying?

## When...?

<b>C'est quand</b> ton anniversaire?	<b>When</b> is your birthday?
<b>Quand est-ce que</b> tu arrives?	<b>When</b> will you be here?
<b>Quand est-ce que</b> Laurent doit arriver?	<b>When</b> is Laurent supposed to get here?
<b>Quand est-ce que</b> James vient nous rendre visite?	<b>When</b> is James coming to visit us?
<b>À quelle heure</b> on se retrouve?	<b>What time</b> are we meeting?

If you want to ask how long someone has been doing something, use **Ça fait longtemps que...?** (*How long have you...?*) followed by the present tense. For more information on the present tense, see [here](#).

## How long have...?

<b>Ça fait longtemps que</b> tu es en France?	<b>How long have</b> you been in France?
<b>Ça fait longtemps que</b> tu travailles ici?	<b>How long have</b> you been working here?
<b>Ça fait longtemps que</b> vous attendez?	<b>How long have</b> you been waiting?

A very versatile way of asking someone socially how something is going or has gone is to use **Ça se passe bien,...?** (*How is...?*) or **Ça s'est bien passé,...?** (*How was...?*).

## How...?

<b>Ça s'est bien passé,</b> tes	<b>How was</b> your holiday?
---------------------------------	------------------------------

vacances?	
<b>Ça s'est bien passé</b> , votre vol?	<b>How was</b> your flight?
<b>Ça se passe bien</b> , à l'université?	<b>How's</b> university <b>going</b> ?

Sometimes you'll want to ask why a friend or acquaintance did or didn't do something. You can use **Pourquoi...?** (*Why...?*) and the past tense to ask. For more information on the past tense, see [here](#).

### Why...?

<b>Pourquoi est-ce que</b> tu ne m'as pas téléphoné?	<b>Why</b> didn't you call me?
<b>Pourquoi est-ce que</b> tu n'y es pas allé?	<b>Why</b> didn't you go?
<b>Pourquoi est-ce que</b> tu as déménagé?	<b>Why</b> did you move house?
<b>Pourquoi est-ce qu'</b> elle a démissionné?	<b>Why</b> did she quit her job?

## SAYING WHAT YOU WANT TO DO

When you're talking to friends or colleagues you will often need to be able to talk about what you would like to do. To say what you want to do, use **je voudrais** (*I'd like*). **voudrais** comes from the verb **vouloir**. For more information on **vouloir**, see [here](#).

### I'd like to...

<b>Je voudrais</b> te remercier de m'avoir aidé.	<b>I'd like to</b> thank you for helping me.
--	--

**Je voudrais** parler à M. Gautier, s'il vous plaît.

**On voudrait** t'inviter à prendre un verre.

**On voudrait** te présenter un ami.

**I'd like to** speak to Mr Gautier, please.

**We'd like to** take you out for a drink.

**We'd like you to** meet a friend.

You can also use **je veux** (*I want*) to talk about what you want to do. If you want to say that you want someone to do something, you use **je veux que** followed by the subjunctive. For more information on the subjunctive, see [here](#).

### **I want to...**

**Je veux** organiser une soirée surprise.

**Je veux** inviter quelques amis pour mon anniversaire.

**Je veux que** tu viennes avec moi.

**Je veux que** la soirée soit réussie.

**I want to** organize a surprise party.

**I want to** have a few friends over for my birthday.

**I want you to** come with me.

**I want the evening to** be a success.

## **MAKING SUGGESTIONS**

One easy way of making suggestions to your friends and colleagues is to use **on pourrait** (*we could*) followed by the verb in the infinitive. **pourrait** comes from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [here](#).

### **We could...**

---

**On pourrait** demander à Paul de se joindre à nous.

**On pourrait** se voir à un autre moment.

**On pourrait** prendre un verre un de ces jours.

**On pourrait** se retrouver au Café de la Poste.

**We could** ask Paul to join us.

**We could** meet another time.

**We could** go out for a drink some time.

**We could** meet up at the Café de la Poste.

Just as in English you can make a suggestion by simply asking **Pourquoi ne... pas?** (*Why don't...?*). You will notice that French speakers very often omit **ne** to make sentences shorter – this is mainly in spoken French.

### Why don't...?

**Pourquoi ne pas** se donner rendez-vous un de ces jours?

**Pourquoi pas** inviter Fabien et sa copine?

**Pourquoi pas** déjeuner avec moi?

**Pourquoi tu ne** les appelles **pas?**

**Why don't** we get together sometime?

**Why don't** we invite Fabien and his girlfriend?

**Why don't** you meet me for lunch?

**Why don't** you phone them?

You can also make a suggestion using the French phrase **Et si...?** (*How about?*) which is followed by a verb in the imperfect tense. For more information on the imperfect tense, see [here](#).

### How about...?

**Et si** on les invitait à dîner?

**How about** asking them round for dinner?

**Et si** tu venais avec nous?

**How about** if you came with us?

**Et si** je passais te prendre le matin?

**How about** if I picked you up in the morning?

Use **Est-ce que je devrais...?** (*Should I...?*) followed by the verb in the infinitive to ask if you should do something. **devrais** comes from the verb **devoir**. For more information on **devoir**, see [here](#).

### Should I...?

**Est-ce que je devrais** inviter Anna?

**Should I** invite Anna?

**Est-ce que je devrais** la rappeler?

**Should I** call her back?

**Est-ce qu'on devrait** aller dans un restaurant italien?

**Should we** go to an Italian restaurant?

## EXPRESSING OPINIONS

When talking to people in a social or work situation, you may wish to express your opinion of something. In French you can use **je crois** or **je pense** (*I think*). When you use **croire** and **penser** with a negative, as in **je ne pense pas que** or **je ne crois pas que**, the verb which follows is in the subjunctive. For more information on the subjunctive, see [here](#).

### I think...

**Je pense que** Sonia a raison.

**I think** Sonia's right.

**Je pense** vraiment **qu'il** est trop tard pour aller au

**I really think** it's too late to go to the cinema.

cinéma.

**Je pense qu'**on devrait partir à minuit.

**Je ne pense pas que** ça soit le cas du tout.

**Je crois que** c'est une excellente idée.

**I think** we should leave at midnight.

**I don't think** that's the case at all.

**I think** it's a great idea.

## BON À SAVOIR!

Don't forget to add **que** (*that*) after **croire** and **penser**. It's optional in English, but not in French.

## In my opinion...

**À mon avis**, c'est une bonne proposition.

**À mon avis**, ça va poser des problèmes.

**À mon avis**, ce n'est pas vrai.

**À mon avis**, c'est un bon employeur, cette société.

**In my opinion**, it's a good suggestion.

**In my opinion**, it's going to cause problems.

**In my opinion**, it's not true.

**In my opinion**, it's a great company to work for.

If you want to ask other people what they think of something, use **Qu'est-ce que tu penses de...?** (*What do you think of...?*).

## What do you think of...?

**Qu'est-ce que tu penses de** son dernier film?

**Qu'est-ce que tu penses**

**What do you think of** his latest movie?

**What do you think of** this



<b>de</b> cette idée?	idea?
<b>Qu'est-ce que vous diriez de</b> sortir dîner ce soir?	<b>What do you think about</b> going out for dinner tonight?
<b>Qu'est-ce que vous en pensez?</b>	<b>What do you think?</b>

To agree or disagree with what other people say, use **je suis d'accord** or **je ne suis pas d'accord**.

### I agree...

<b>Je suis d'accord.</b>	<b>I agree.</b>
<b>Je suis d'accord avec</b> Nigel.	<b>I agree with</b> Nigel.
<b>Je ne suis pas d'accord avec</b> cette décision.	<b>I don't agree with</b> this decision.
<b>Je ne suis pas tout à fait d'accord avec</b> Claire.	<b>I don't completely agree with</b> Claire.
<b>Je suis entièrement de ton avis!</b>	<b>I entirely agree with you!</b>

### You're right...

<b>Tu as raison!</b>	<b>You're right!</b>
Je pense que <b>vous avez raison.</b>	I think <b>you're right.</b>
<b>C'est Matthieu qui a raison.</b>	Matthieu's <b>right.</b>
Je crois que <b>tu as tort.</b>	I think <b>you're wrong.</b>
<b>Tu as tort de ne pas</b> l'écouter.	<b>You're wrong not to</b> listen to her.

## BON À SAVOIR!

Where we use the verb *to be* in English in the phrases *to be right* or *to be wrong*, French speakers use **avoir** (*to have*): **avoir raison** (*to be right*), **avoir tort** (*to be wrong*).

## TALKING ABOUT YOUR PLANS

When talking to your colleagues and friends you will want to tell them about your plans. In French, as in English, the present is very often used to talk about plans, especially for things that have been arranged and that are definite. For more on the present tense, see [here](#).

### I'm seeing...

<b>Je vois</b> Philippe jeudi.	<b>I'm seeing</b> Philippe on Thursday.
<b>Je la vois</b> cet après-midi.	<b>I'm seeing</b> her this afternoon.
<b>On va</b> au cinéma ce soir.	<b>We're going</b> to the cinema tonight.
<b>Nous</b> allons déjeuner ensemble vendredi prochain.	<b>We're going</b> for lunch next Friday.

In English, when we talk about the future we often say *I'm going to*. French works the same way. To say that you're going to do something, use **je vais** (*I'm going to*) or **on va** (*we're going to*) before a verb in the infinitive. **vais** and **va** come from the verb **aller**. For more information on **aller**, see [here](#).

### I'm going to...

<b>Je vais</b> lui téléphoner.	<b>I'm going to</b> phone him.
--------------------------------	--------------------------------

**Je vais** le prévenir que je ne peux pas venir.

**Je vais** leur dire de venir un peu plus tard.

**On va** sortir au restaurant demain soir.

**On va** se revoir.

**I'm going to** let him know I can't come.

**I'm going to** tell them to come a little later.

**We're going to** go out for dinner tomorrow night.

**We're going to** see each other again.

### Are you going to...?

**Est-ce que tu vas** lui annoncer la nouvelle aujourd'hui?

**Est-ce que vous allez** le revoir?

**Tu vas** aller à cette soirée?

**Tu vas** acheter une maison?

**Are you going to** tell him the news today?

**Are you going to** see him again?

**Are you going to** go to this party?

**Are you going to** buy a house?

When talking about what you intend to do, you can use **j'ai l'intention de** or **je compte** (*I intend to*) followed by a verb in the infinitive.

### I intend to...

**J'ai l'intention de** l'inviter à prendre un verre.

**J'ai l'intention d'**aller les voir cet été.

**On a l'intention de** l'inviter pendant les vacances.

**I intend to** ask her out for a drink.

**I intend to** go and see them this summer.

**We intend to** invite him during the holidays.

**Je compte** régler ce problème le plus vite possible.

**I intend to** sort out this problem as quickly as possible.

### Do you intend to...?

**Est-ce que tu as l'intention d'**aller au mariage d'Yves et Julie?

**Do you intend to** go to Yves and Julie's wedding?

**Est-ce que vous avez l'intention de** les contacter?

**Do you intend to** get in touch with them?

Qu'**est-ce que vous avez l'intention de** dire?

What **do you intend to** say?

**Tu comptes** rester dans la région?

**Do you intend to** stay in this area?

Comment **est-ce que tu comptes** lui annoncer la nouvelle?

How **do you intend to** tell him the news?

## MAKING ARRANGEMENTS

When making arrangements with someone, use **Est-ce que ça vous va si...?** or **Est-ce que ça te va si...?** to ask someone if something suits them. **va** comes from the verb **aller**. For more information on **aller**, see [here](#).

### Will it suit you if...?

**Est-ce que ça te va si** on dîne à neuf heures?

**Does it suit you if** we have dinner at nine?

**Est-ce que ça vous va si** je vous appelle la semaine

**Will it suit you if** I phone you next week?

prochaine?

**Ça t'irait** comme  
arrangement?

**Would** this arrangement  
**suit** you?

To ask somebody if they would prefer something, use **Est-ce que tu préférerais que...?** or **Est-ce que vous préféreriez que...?** (*Would you prefer it if...?*), which comes from the verb **préférer** in the conditional. The conditional is very useful to make polite requests or offers. You can find out more about it [here](#). For more information on **-er** verbs like **préférer**, see [here](#).

### Would you prefer it if...?

**Est-ce que tu préférerais**  
**qu'on** se donne rendez-  
vous en ville?

**Est-ce que vous**  
**préféreriez qu'on** se  
retrouve au restaurant?

**Tu préférerais que** je  
passe te chercher?

**Would you prefer it if** we  
met in town?

**Would you prefer it if** we  
met at the restaurant?

**Would you prefer it if** I  
came to collect you?

### Is it better to...?

**Est-ce qu'il vaut mieux**  
inviter aussi les conjoints?

**Est-ce qu'il vaut mieux**  
t'appeler le soir?

**Est-ce qu'il vaut mieux**  
vous prévenir avant de  
passer?

**Is it better to** invite  
partners as well?

**Is it better to** ring you in  
the evening?

**Is it better to** let you know  
before we call in?

If you want to confirm an arrangement with somebody, you can use **Est-ce qu'on est d'accord sur...?** (*Are we agreed on...?*).

**Are we agreed on...?**

<b>Est-ce qu'on est d'accord sur</b> la date?	<b>Are we agreed on the</b> date?
<b>Est-ce qu'on est d'accord sur</b> le lieu du rendez-vous?	<b>Are we agreed on</b> where to meet?
<b>Tu es d'accord?</b>	<b>Do you agree?</b>
<b>D'accord!</b>	<b>Agreed!</b>

**BON À SAVOIR!**

**D'accord** is used to accept offers or to agree: **On y va ensemble? – D'accord!** (*Shall we go together? – OK!*).

## **SAYING WHAT YOU HAVE TO DO**

When you want to say that you have to do something in French, you use **il faut que** (*I have to*) followed by the subjunctive. For more information on the subjunctive, see [here](#).

**I have to...**

<b>Il faut que</b> je passe un coup de fil.	<b>I have to</b> make a phone call.
<b>Il faut que</b> je reste chez moi ce soir.	<b>I have to</b> stay in tonight.
<b>Il faut qu'</b> on y soit à huit heures pile.	<b>We have to</b> be there at eight o' clock sharp.

**Je suis obligé de** sortir  
dîner avec mes collègues.

**Tu n'es pas obligé de**  
loger à l'hôtel.

**I have to** go out to dinner  
with my colleagues.

**You don't have to** stay at  
the hotel.

## BON À SAVOIR!

To say that you don't have to do something, use **je ne suis pas obligé de**, not **il ne faut pas que je** which means *I mustn't*.

To say what you have to do, you can also use **je dois** (*I must*) and then the verb in the infinitive. **dois** comes from **devoir** which you can find out about [here](#).

### I must...

**Je dois** finir avant cet  
après-midi.

**Je dois** les prévenir.

**Je dois** le rembourser cette  
semaine.

**Tu ne dois pas** oublier de  
signer le contrat.

**Vous ne devez** en parler à  
**personne.**

**I must** finish before this  
afternoon.

**I must** warn them.

**I must** pay him back this  
week.

**You mustn't** forget to sign  
the contract.

**You mustn't** tell **anyone.**

When you want to say that you should or ought to do something, use **il faudrait que** (*I should*) and then the verb in the subjunctive. Like **faut**, **faudrait** comes from the verb **falloir**, but **faudrait** is the conditional. To find out more about the conditional and the subjunctive, see [here](#).

### I should...

---

**Il faudrait que** j'appelle Anne.

**Il faudrait que** tu nous rendes visite.

**Il faudrait que** je te donne mon numéro de portable.

**I should** call Anne.

**You should** come and visit us.

**I should** give you my mobile number.

To ask what someone has to do or when, how, why or where they have to do it, put **qu'** (*what*), **quand** (*when*), **comment** (*how*), **pourquoi** (*why*), **où** (*where*) and so on at the beginning of the sentence, before **est-ce qu'il faut que** (*do you have to*). Remember that the verb after **il faut que** is in the subjunctive. To find out more about the subjunctive, see [here](#).

### Do you have to...?

**Est-ce qu'il faut que** tu leur donnes une réponse aujourd'hui?

**Est-ce qu'il faut que** tu partes tout de suite?

**Est-ce qu'il faut** amener quelque chose?

Qu'**est-ce qu'il faut que** tu fasses?

Quand **est-ce qu'il faut que** ce soit fini?

Où **est-ce qu'il faut que** je m'assoie?

**Do you have to** give them an answer today?

**Do you have to** go right now?

**Do we have to** bring something?

What **do you have to** do?

When **does it have to** be finished?

Where **do I have to** sit?

## LISTEN OUT FOR

Here are some key phrases which you are likely to hear in conversation.



Vous êtes déjà allé à Lille?	Have you ever been to Lille?
Vous restez combien de temps à Rouen?	How long are you staying in Rouen?
Ça vous plaît, Rouen?	How do you like Rouen?
Vous apprenez le français depuis combien de temps?	How long have you been learning French?
Ça va, tu arrives à suivre?	Are you following the conversation?
Vous parlez bien français.	Your French is very good.
Est-ce que je parle trop vite?	Am I speaking too fast?
Vous préférez que je parle anglais?	Would you prefer it if I spoke English?
Vous voulez que je répète?	Would you like me to say it again?
Vous voulez que je parle moins vite?	Do you want me to speak more slowly?
Tu peux me tutoyer.	You can call me tu.
On se tutoie?	Shall we call each other tu?
Vous êtes marié?	Are you married?
Vous avez des enfants?	Have you got any children?
Tu viens souvent ici?	Do you come here often?

## Lifestyle Tips

- The polite *you* (**vous**) is used to address people whom you don't know. It's also a way of showing respect to someone who's older than you, or, at work, to someone who's higher up in the hierarchy. People who work together on a daily basis usually say **tu** to each other, (**se tutoyer** – *to say tu to each other*) but it is safer to wait a little before taking that step. Many people do not like to be addressed as **vous**, because they think it's too formal. They will usually suggest you call them **tu**, saying **tu peux me tutoyer** or **on peut se tutoyer**. You can make the first move and ask **On se tutoie?**, if you think that the other person will be more comfortable using the **tu** form.

- When meeting someone for the first time, you usually shake hands (**serrer la main à quelqu'un**), whether it's a man or a woman. In business relations, at business appointments or at negotiations, shaking hands is very common. Men who are on friendly terms usually shake hands, while women kiss on both cheeks (**se faire la bise**). Men also kiss female friends and in some cases other men, for instance when they belong to the same family. Bear in mind that habits may be different depending on where you are in France, which is why French people themselves often get confused; for instance, the number of kisses you give someone to say hello varies from one area to another!

- The words **ami** and **copain** (and the feminine forms **amie** and **copine**) can either mean *friend* or *boyfriend/girlfriend*. If someone uses **mon copain** for instance, they could be either be talking about a male friend or their boyfriend. The expressions **petit(e) ami(e)** and **petit(e) copain/copine** can also be used to

mean *boyfriend* and *girlfriend*. To say *my partner*, use **mon compagnon** for a man and **ma compagne** for a woman.

- French people socialize in cafés and restaurants as British people do, but it is probably more common in France than in Britain to invite people, be it for coffee (**pour prendre le café**), for the apéritif (**pour prendre l'apéritif** or, more informally **l'apéro**) or for dinner (**pour le dîner**). Traditionally, **le café** or **l'apéritif** are ways of getting to know people more, while **le dîner** (and lunch, **le déjeuner**) are an opportunity for people who already know each other well, or families, to spend time together.

# Getting there

## Bon voyage! – Have a good trip!

If you're going to be travelling to and around French-speaking countries and cities, the phrases in this unit will help you ask for directions, find out how to get to places and buy tickets in easy, everyday French.

### TALKING ABOUT YOUR PLANS

When you're travelling around, you will probably want to talk about what you're going to do. Use **je vais** (*I'm going to*) or **on va** (*we're going to*) before the verb. These come from the verb **aller**. For more information on **aller**, see [here](#).

#### **I'm going to...**

<b>Je vais</b> passer une journée à Avignon.	<b>I'm going to</b> spend a day in Avignon.
<b>Je vais</b> prendre le train de sept heures.	<b>I'm going to</b> take the seven o'clock train.
<b>On va</b> passer deux nuits à Argelès.	<b>We're going to</b> spend two nights in Argelès.
Ensuite, <b>on va</b> aller à	Then <b>we're going to</b> go to

Grenoble.  
Normalement, **on va**  
d'abord à Strasbourg.

Grenoble.  
If all goes well, **we'll be**  
**going** to Strasbourg first.

## BON À SAVOIR!

Use **normalement** or **si tout va bien** (*if all goes well*) at the beginning of a sentence to talk about a plan that might have to be changed.

## I'll...

<b>Je vais</b> t'emmener à la gare.	<b>I'll</b> take you to the station.
Ne t'en fais pas, <b>je vais</b> prendre le bus.	Don't worry, <b>I'll</b> get the bus.
<b>On va</b> t'appeler un taxi.	<b>We'll</b> call you a taxi.
<b>On va</b> venir te chercher à la gare.	<b>We'll</b> come and pick you up at the railway station.

If you want to talk about what your plans are, you can use **j'ai l'intention de** (*I'm planning to*).

## I'm planning to...

<b>J'ai l'intention de</b> louer une voiture.	<b>I'm planning to</b> hire a car.
<b>J'ai l'intention d'</b> aller au Maroc.	<b>I'm planning to</b> go to Morocco.
<b>On a l'intention de</b> suivre la route côtière.	<b>We're planning to</b> drive along the coast.
<b>Je compte</b> passer deux jours à Santiago.	<b>I intend to</b> spend two days in Santiago.

## I hope to...

<b>J'espère</b> aller en Alsace cette année.	<b>I hope to</b> go to Alsace this year.
<b>J'espère</b> voir la Bibliothèque François Mitterrand.	<b>I hope to</b> see the François Mitterrand Library.
<b>On espère</b> pouvoir tout visiter.	<b>We hope</b> we can visit everything.

## SAYING WHAT YOU HAVE TO DO

If you want to say that you have to do something in French, such as buy a ticket, catch a train and so on, you use **il faut que** (*I have to*) or **il faudrait que** (*I ought to*) followed by the subjunctive. For more information on the subjunctive, see [here](#).

## I have to...

<b>Il faut que</b> j'achète mon billet demain.	<b>I have to</b> buy my ticket tomorrow.
<b>Il faut d'abord que</b> je prenne le Train Express Régional jusqu'à Niort.	<b>I have to</b> take the local train to Niort first.
<b>Il faut qu'</b> on y soit avant 8 heures.	<b>We have to</b> be there by 8 o'clock.

## I ought to...

<b>Il faudrait que</b> je fasse le plein.	<b>I ought to</b> fill up the tank.
<b>Il faudrait que</b> je confirme	<b>I ought to</b> confirm my

mon vol.	flight.
<b>Il faudrait qu'on</b> soit à la gare à sept heures.	<b>We ought to</b> be at the station at seven.
<b>Il faudrait qu'on</b> prenne plus de carburant.	<b>We ought to</b> get some more petrol.

Another way of saying what you have to do is to use **je dois** (*I must*) followed by the infinitive.

### I must...

<b>Je dois</b> aller chercher la voiture avant trois heures.	<b>I must</b> collect the car before three.
<b>Je dois</b> prendre le bus à 5h30 demain matin.	<b>I must</b> catch the bus at 5.30 tomorrow morning.
<b>Vous devez</b> présenter votre permis de conduire.	<b>You must</b> show your driving licence.
<b>Vous devez</b> imprimer votre billet électronique.	<b>You must</b> print out your e-ticket.

## SAYING WHAT YOU WANT TO DO

When you are using some kind of transport in France, you may well need to say what you would like to do in French. You can use **je voudrais** (*I'd like*) with the infinitive. This comes from the verb **vouloir**. For more information on **vouloir**, see [here](#).

### I'd like to...

<b>Je voudrais</b> louer un vélo.	<b>I'd like to</b> hire a bike.
<b>Je voudrais</b> prendre le train.	<b>I'd like to</b> take the train.

**Mon ami voudrait**  
signaler la perte de ses  
bagages.

**My friend would like to**  
report his luggage  
missing.

The most direct way of saying what you want to do is using **je veux** (*I want*) or **je souhaite** (*I wish*) with the infinitive. **veux** is from the verb **vouloir** and **souhaite** is from the verb **souhaiter**. For more information on **vouloir** and **-er** verbs like **souhaiter**, see [here](#) and [here](#).

### I want to...

<b>Je veux</b> aller à Marseille.	<b>I want to</b> go to Marseilles.
<b>Je veux</b> descendre à Nancy.	<b>I want to</b> get off at Nancy.
<b>On veut</b> partir demain matin.	<b>We want to</b> leave tomorrow morning.
<b>Je souhaite</b> échanger mon billet.	<b>I want to</b> change my ticket.
<b>Je ne souhaite pas</b> voyager en première classe.	<b>I don't want to</b> travel first class.

If you want to say that you feel like doing something, say **j'ai envie de** (*I feel like*). This is slightly stronger than **j'ai bien envie de** (*I quite fancy*). **ai** comes from the verb **avoir**. For more information on **avoir**, see [here](#).

### I feel like...

<b>J'ai envie de</b> passer par Annecy.	<b>I feel like</b> going via Annecy.
<b>J'ai envie de</b> faire le voyage en plusieurs fois.	<b>I feel like</b> breaking the journey.
<b>On n'a pas envie de</b> passer	<b>We don't feel like</b>



six heures dans le train.

**J'ai bien envie d'**aller à  
Port-Vendres.

spending six hours on the  
train.

**I quite fancy** going to  
Port-Vendres.

## MAKING SUGGESTIONS

You may wish to make a suggestion to your colleagues or friends in French. One way of doing this is to use **on pourrait** (*we could*). This comes from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [here](#).

**We could...**

**On pourrait** y aller  
demain.

**On pourrait** faire étape à  
Agen.

**On peut** y aller à pied, **si**  
**tu préfères.**

**We could** go there  
tomorrow.

**We could** break our  
journey at Agen.

**We can** walk, **if you**  
**prefer.**

## **BON À SAVOIR!**

If you want to ask someone what they think of a particular suggestion, use **Qu'est-ce que tu en dis?** or **Qu'est-ce que vous en dites?** (*What do you say?*).

**I can... if you like**

**Je peux** te déposer, **si tu**  
**veux.**

**Je peux** te retrouver à  
l'aéroport, **si tu veux.**

**I can** give you a lift, **if you**  
**like.**

**I can** meet you at the  
airport, **if you like.**

**On peut** demander au contrôleur, **si vous voulez**.

**We can** ask the ticket inspector, **if you like**.

If you want to ask someone if they would like to do something, use **Tu veux...?**, or **Tu voudrais...?** (*Would you like...?*) if you know the person well or **Vous voulez...?** if you're talking to several people. These all come from the verb **vouloir**. For more information on **vouloir**, see [here](#).

### Would you like to...?

<b>Tu veux</b> aller te baigner?	<b>Would you like to</b> go for a swim?
<b>Tu veux</b> te reposer un peu?	<b>Would you like to</b> have a little rest?
<b>Est-ce que tu veux</b> prendre le volant?	<b>Would you like to</b> drive?
<b>Vous voulez</b> y aller à pied?	<b>Would you like to</b> walk there?
<b>Est-ce que vous voulez</b> qu'on s'arrête ici?	<b>Would you like to</b> stop here?

Another way of making suggestions in French is to ask **Pourquoi ne pas...?** (*Why don't...?*), which is often shortened to **Pourquoi pas...?** in spoken French.

### Why don't...?

<b>Pourquoi ne pas</b> louer une voiture?	<b>Why don't we</b> hire a car?
<b>Pourquoi ne pas</b> prendre le métro?	<b>Why don't we</b> take the underground?
<b>Pourquoi pas</b> demander au	<b>Why don't we</b> ask the

chauffeur?

driver?

### How about...?

Et si on prenait par la petite route?	<b>How about</b> taking the B road?
Et si on prenait le bateau pour y aller?	<b>How about</b> going there by boat?
Et si on passait par Biarritz?	<b>How about</b> going via Biarritz?

## ASKING FOR INFORMATION

When you are travelling around in a French-speaking country or city, you will often need to find out some information to help you get to where you want to go. When you are asking for information you may need to get someone's attention in order to ask them a question. To do this you can use either **excusez-moi** or **pardon**.

### I'm looking for...

Excusez-moi, <b>je cherche</b> la gare maritime, s'il vous plaît.	Excuse me, <b>I'm looking for</b> the harbour station.
Excusez-moi, <b>je cherche</b> l'écomusée du Beaujolais, s'il vous plaît.	Excuse me, <b>I'm looking for</b> the Beaujolais heritage centre.
Pardon, le bureau des réclamations, <b>s'il vous plaît?</b>	Excuse me, <b>I'm looking for</b> the complaints office.

## BON À SAVOIR!

Remember to say **merci** or **merci beaucoup** when you get the information. If someone hasn't been able to help you, you can still thank them by saying **merci quand même** (*thanks all the same*).

If you want to ask a general question in French, you can use **C'est...?** or **Est-ce que c'est...?** (*Is it...?*).

### Is it...?

<b>C'est</b> par là?	<b>Is it</b> this way?
<b>C'est</b> près d'ici?	<b>Is it</b> near here?
<b>Est-ce que c'est</b> loin, s'il vous plaît?	<b>Is it</b> far?
<b>Est-ce que c'est</b> le train pour Angoulême?	<b>Is this</b> the train for Angoulême?
<b>Est-ce que c'est</b> le bon arrêt pour le musée, s'il vous plaît?	<b>Is this</b> the right stop for the museum?
<b>Est-ce que</b> cette place <b>est</b> libre?	<b>Is</b> this seat free?

### Is there...?

<b>Il y a</b> une station-service près d'ici, s'il vous plaît?	<b>Is there</b> a petrol station near here, please?
<b>Il y a</b> une station de métro près d'ici?	<b>Is there</b> an underground station near here?
<b>Il y a</b> des restaurants près d'ici?	<b>Are there</b> any restaurants around here?
<b>Est-ce qu'il y a</b> des tarifs étudiants?	<b>Is there</b> a student discount?

## BON À SAVOIR!

You can see that both *there is* and *there are* are **il y a** in French.

In order to get more specific information, you may want to ask, for example, **Où...?** (*Where...?*), **Quel...?** (*Which...?*), or **À quelle heure...?** (*What time...?*).

### Where...?

<b>Où</b> est la consigne?	<b>Where's</b> the left-luggage office?
<b>Où</b> est la station de taxis la plus proche, s'il vous plaît?	<b>Where's</b> the nearest taxi rank, please?
<b>Où</b> sont les toilettes?	<b>Where</b> are the public toilets?

### Which...?

Je dois prendre <b>quelle ligne</b> , s'il vous plaît?	<b>Which line</b> do I take, please?
<b>Quels bus</b> vont en centre-ville?	<b>Which buses</b> go to the town centre?
<b>De quel quai</b> part le train pour Sarlat?	<b>Which platform</b> does the train for Sarlat leave <b>from</b> ?
Excusez-moi, <b>c'est quelle direction</b> pour Brest, s'il vous plaît?	Excuse me, <b>which way</b> do I go for Brest, please?
<b>C'est quelle direction</b> pour aller au Stade de France, s'il vous plaît?	<b>Which way is it</b> to the Stade de France, please?

## What time...?

On embarque à <b>quelle heure</b> ?	<b>What time</b> are we boarding?
Le train part à <b>quelle heure</b> ?	<b>What time</b> does the train leave?
À <b>quelle heure</b> est-ce qu'on arrive à Bruxelles?	<b>What time</b> do we get to Brussels?
Le départ <b>est bien</b> à sept heures?	The departure <b>is at</b> seven, <b>isn't it</b> ?
Le bus <b>arrive bien</b> à neuf heures trente?	The bus <b>arrives at</b> nine thirty, <b>doesn't it</b> ?

## BON À SAVOIR!

When you're not sure about something, you can ask for confirmation by adding **bien** after the verb in your question.

If you want to ask how often something happens, how long it takes or how much it costs, you can use a phrase with **combien**.

## How often...?

Il y a un bus pour Genève <b>tous les combien</b> ?	<b>How often</b> is there a bus for Geneva?
Il y a un vol pour Londres <b>tous les combien</b> ?	<b>How often</b> is there a flight to London?
Il faut faire le plein <b>tous les combien</b> de kilomètres?	<b>How often</b> do you have to fill up the tank?

## How long...?

--	--

<b>Ça prend combien de temps?</b>	<b>How long does it take?</b>
<b>Ça prend combien de temps</b> pour aller à la gare?	<b>How long does it take</b> to get to the railway station?
<b>Ça prend combien de temps</b> pour aller de Lille à Paris?	<b>How long does it take</b> to get from Lille to Paris?
Le voyage <b>prend combien de temps?</b>	<b>How long does the journey take?</b>
<b>On va mettre combien de temps</b> pour y aller?	<b>How long will it take us</b> to get there?

### How much is...?

<b>Combien coûte</b> un ticket pour Lyon?	<b>How much is</b> a ticket to Lyon?
<b>Combien coûte</b> le péage entre Paris et Orléans?	<b>How much is</b> the motorway toll between Paris and Orléans?
<b>Combien est-ce que ça coûte</b> de laisser une valise à la consigne?	<b>How much does it cost</b> to leave a case in left-luggage?
<b>Combien est-ce que ça coûterait</b> de louer une voiture pour deux jours?	<b>How much would it cost</b> to hire a car for two days?

Use **Est-ce que je peux...?** (*Can I...?*) or **Est-ce qu'on peut...?** (*Can we...?*) to ask whether you can do something. These are from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [here](#).

### Can I...?

--	--

**Est-ce que je peux** payer par carte bleue?

**Est-ce que je peux** louer une voiture pour la journée?

**Est-ce qu'on peut** fumer dans le train?

**Est-ce qu'on peut** y aller à pied?

**Est-ce qu'il est possible de** changer son billet par Internet?

**Can I** pay by debit card?

**Can I** hire a car for the day?

**Is smoking allowed** on the train?

**Can you** walk there?

**Can you** change your ticket online?

## ASKING FOR THINGS

When asking for something, you can use **Est-ce que je peux avoir...?** (*Can I have...?*) or **Est-ce que je pourrais avoir...?** (*Could I have...?*). These come from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [here](#).

### Can I have...?

**Est-ce que je peux avoir** un plan du métro, s'il vous plaît?

**Est-ce que je peux avoir** une carte à la semaine, s'il vous plaît?

**Est-ce que je pourrais avoir** les horaires des trains, s'il vous plaît?

**Can I have** a map of the underground, please?

**Can I have** a weekly pass, please?

**Could I have** a train timetable, please?



When you want to find out if something is available or if someone has something, use **Est-ce que vous avez...?** or **Vous avez...?** (*Do you have...?*). **avez** comes from the verb **avoir**. For more information on **avoir**, see [here](#).

### Do you have...?

<b>Est-ce que vous avez</b> les horaires des bus?	<b>Do you have</b> any bus timetables?
<b>Vous avez</b> un plan d'accès, s'il vous plaît?	<b>Do you have</b> a map that shows how to get there, please?
<b>Vous avez</b> des voitures plus petites en location?	<b>Do you have</b> smaller cars to hire?
<b>Est-ce qu'il vous reste</b> des places côté couloir?	<b>Do you have</b> any aisle seats <b>left</b> ?

When you ask for something, you can simply name what you want, but make sure you finish your question with **s'il vous plaît**, or your request might sound rather like an order!

### A..., please

<b>Un</b> aller simple, <b>s'il vous plaît</b> .	<b>A</b> single, <b>please</b> .
<b>Une</b> place côté fenêtre, <b>s'il vous plaît</b> .	<b>A</b> window seat, <b>please</b> .
<b>Trois</b> billets retours pour Montréal, <b>s'il vous plaît</b> .	<b>Three</b> returns to Montreal, <b>please</b> .

If you are asking someone if they can do something for you, you should use **Est-ce que vous pouvez...?** (*Can you...?*).

## Can you...?

<p><b>Est-ce que vous pouvez</b> nous emmener à l'hôtel Saint-Antoine, s'il vous plaît?</p>	<p><b>Can you</b> take us to the Saint-Antoine hotel, please?</p>
<p><b>Est-ce que vous pouvez</b> me prévenir quand on arrivera à l'arrêt du musée?</p>	<p><b>Can you</b> tell me when we're near the museum stop?</p>
<p><b>Vous pouvez</b> me déposer ici, s'il vous plaît?</p>	<p><b>Can you</b> drop me here, please?</p>
<p><b>Vous pouvez</b> nous montrer où ça se trouve sur la carte?</p>	<p><b>Can you</b> show us where it is on the map?</p>

## Would you mind...?

<p><b>Est-ce que ça vous dérangerait de</b> m'écrire l'adresse?</p>	<p><b>Would you mind</b> writing down the address for me?</p>
<p><b>Est-ce que ça vous dérangerait de</b> me déposer à mon hôtel?</p>	<p><b>Would you mind</b> dropping me at my hotel?</p>
<p><b>Est-ce que ça vous dérangerait de</b> nous montrer où c'est?</p>	<p><b>Would you mind</b> showing us where it is?</p>

## SAYING WHAT YOU LIKE, DISLIKE, PREFER

You will want to be able to discuss what you like and dislike with your French-speaking acquaintances. To say what you like, use **j'aime bien** (*I*

like), which is not as strong as **j'aime** (*I love*). To say what you don't like, just use **je n'aime pas** (*I don't like*). These come from the verb **aimer**. For more information on **aimer**, see [here](#).

### I like...

<b>J'aime bien</b> ces routes de campagne.	<b>I like these</b> country roads.
<b>J'aime bien</b> voyager en train.	<b>I like</b> travelling by train.
<b>J'aime beaucoup</b> cette voiture.	<b>I like</b> this car <b>a lot</b> .
<b>J'aime</b> l'avion.	<b>I love</b> flying.

### I don't like...

<b>Je n'aime pas</b> les voitures automatiques.	<b>I don't like</b> automatics.
<b>Je n'aime pas</b> conduire à droite.	<b>I don't like</b> driving on the right.

### Do you like...?

<b>Tu aimes bien</b> cette région?	<b>Do you like</b> this area?
<b>Tu aimes bien</b> voyager seul?	<b>Do you like</b> travelling by yourself?
<b>Est-ce que vous aimez</b> conduire de nuit?	<b>Do you like</b> driving at night?
<b>Est-ce que vous aimez bien</b> les voyages organisés?	<b>Do you like</b> package tours?

If you want to say what you prefer, use **je préfère** (*I prefer*) or **je préférerais** (*I'd prefer*). These come from the verb **préférer**. For more information on **-er** verbs like **préférer**, see [here](#).

### I prefer to...

<b>Je préfère</b> dormir à l'hôtel.	<b>I prefer to</b> sleep in a hotel.
<b>Je préfère</b> prendre l'autoroute.	<b>I prefer to</b> take the motorway.
<b>Je préférerais</b> ne pas laisser ma voiture ici.	<b>I'd prefer not to</b> leave my car here.

### I'd rather...

<b>J'aimerais mieux</b> faire le voyage par beau temps.	<b>I'd rather</b> make the journey in good weather.
<b>J'aimerais mieux</b> être assise côté fenêtre.	<b>I'd rather</b> sit next to the window.
<b>On aimerait mieux</b> faire la route de jour.	<b>We'd rather</b> drive in the daytime.

## LISTEN OUT FOR

Here are some key phrases you are likely to be hear when you're travelling around.

Prochain arrêt:...	Next stop:...
Le train pour Nice part du quai numéro trois.	The train for Nice leaves from platform three.
Votre billet, s'il vous plaît.	Ticket, please.
Je peux m'asseoir ici?	Do you mind if I sit here?

Continuez tout droit  
jusqu'aux feux.

Prenez la deuxième à  
gauche.

C'est en face de la  
cathédrale.

C'est tout près.

On peut y aller à pied.

C'est à trois arrêts d'ici.

Go straight on till you get  
to the traffic lights.

Take the second turning on  
the left.

It's opposite the cathedral.

It's very near.

It's within walking  
distance.

It's three stops from here.

## *Lifestyle Tips*

- If you're behind the wheel of a car, be ready to produce your driving licence if asked for it by the police. If you've left it behind, you may well be fined. The police officer might ask you: **votre permis de conduire, s'il vous plaît** (*your driving licence, please*). French drivers also have to be able to produce their **carte grise** (*car registration document*) and their **attestation d'assurance** (*car insurance certificate*).
- Motorways are not free in France. When you go onto the motorway, you get a **ticket de péage** or **ticket d'entrée**. When you come off the motorway this will show how many kilometres you've driven and how much you have to pay.
- At motorway tolls, some toll booths are manned, some are automatic (using bank cards), and some are reserved for drivers using the **télépéage** system which makes it possible to pay the toll via a sensor inside the car (with monthly bills sent to your address). It is best to stay clear of these lanes which are marked with a yellow "T" sign, as the drivers equipped with such sensors don't take kindly to tourists holding up their fast lane!
- Over the past years, **covoiturage** (*car sharing*) has become quite popular in France. It can be a cheap and convenient way of getting around, especially for short distances. There are many places where you can find offers for **covoiturage**, but local papers, and ad boards in shops are probably your best bet.

- If you're asked to produce your **titre de transport** on the bus, the train or the underground, it means that you have to show your ticket to the inspector.
- Make sure you punch your ticket before you get on the train or bus. If you have forgotten to do so, it is advisable to go and see **le contrôleur** (*the ticket inspector*) as soon as possible or you might be fined.
- If you're in a hurry, you can hop on the train and buy a ticket for a small amount extra directly from a ticket inspector - go and see him or her as soon as you're on the train or you might be suspected of **resquillage** (*fare-dodging*).
- Queues tend to be informal in French-speaking countries. So if you're trying to get to an information desk and don't know if it's your turn, just ask **C'est à moi?** or **C'est mon tour?** (*Am I next?*). If you want to let someone in before you, you can say **après vous** (*after you*).

# Home from home

## Dors bien! – Sleep well!

If you're going to stay in a French-speaking country, the phrases in this unit will provide you with the language you need to help you find the sort of accommodation you want (hotel, hostel, self-catering accommodation or a flat to rent) and ensure that everything is to your satisfaction when you're there. We'll also give you a few tips on what the receptionist or your landlord or landlady may say to you.

### ASKING FOR THINGS

To say what kind of accommodation you want in French, use **je voudrais** or **je souhaite** (*I'd like*). **voudrais** comes from the verb **vouloir** and **souhaite** comes from the verb **souhaiter**. For further information on **vouloir** and **-er** verbs like **souhaiter**, see [here](#) and [here](#).

**I'd like...**

**Je voudrais** une chambre avec un balcon.

**Je voudrais** réserver une chambre double pour

**I'd like** a room with a balcony.

**I'd like to** book a double room for two nights.



deux nuits.	
<b>On voudrait</b> un dortoir de six personnes.	<b>We'd like</b> a six-bed dorm.
<b>Je souhaite</b> rester trois nuits.	<b>I'd like to</b> stay three nights.
<b>Je souhaite</b> louer votre gîte pendant deux semaines.	<b>I'd like to</b> book your gîte for two weeks.

**je veux** is a slightly more direct way of saying what you want.

### I want...

<b>Je veux</b> un appartement bien éclairé.	<b>I want</b> a well-lit flat.
<b>Je veux</b> changer de chambre; celle que vous m'avez donnée est humide.	<b>I want to</b> change rooms; the one you gave me is damp.
<b>Je veux qu'on</b> me rembourse.	<b>I want</b> a refund.
<b>On ne veut pas</b> de chambre côté rue.	<b>We don't want</b> a room overlooking the road.

Use **je tiens à** to say that you insist on something. **tiens** comes from the verb **tenir**.

### I insist on...

<b>Je tiens vraiment à</b> avoir vue sur la mer.	<b>I absolutely insist on</b> having a view of the sea.
<b>Je tiens à</b> ne pas être dérangé.	<b>I insist on</b> not being disturbed.

**On tient à** être dans le centre-ville.

**We insist on** staying in the centre of town.

When you want to find out if something is available, use **Est-ce que vous avez...?** (*Do you have...?*) or **Est-ce que vous auriez...?** (*Would you have...?*). These come from the verb **avoir**. For more information on **avoir**, see [here](#).

### Do you have...?

<b>Est-ce que vous avez</b> des informations sur le logement?	<b>Do you have</b> any information about accommodation?
<b>Est-ce que vous avez</b> des chambres de libre?	<b>Have you got</b> any rooms free?
<b>Vous avez</b> Internet?	<b>Have you got</b> internet access?
<b>Est-ce que vous auriez</b> des serviettes, s'il vous plaît?	<b>Would you have</b> any towels, please?

### Can I have...?

<b>Est-ce que je peux avoir</b> la clé de ma chambre, s'il vous plaît?	<b>Can I have</b> the key to my room, please?
<b>Est-ce que je peux avoir</b> un reçu, s'il vous plaît?	<b>Can I have</b> a receipt, please?
<b>Est-ce qu'on peut avoir</b> une liste des logements disponibles?	<b>Can we have</b> a list of available accommodation?
<b>Est-ce que je pourrais avoir</b> deux serviettes en plus?	<b>Could I have</b> two more towels?

If you are asking someone whether they can do something for you, use **Est-ce que pouvez...?** (*Can you...?*) and **Est-ce que vous pourriez...?** (*Could you...?*). They both come from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [here](#).

### Can you...?

<b>Est-ce que vous pouvez</b> me confirmer la réservation par e-mail?	<b>Can you</b> confirm the booking by email?
<b>Est-ce que vous pouvez</b> m'appeler pour me réveiller à sept heures, s'il vous plaît?	<b>Can you</b> give me an alarm call at seven o'clock, please?
<b>Est-ce que vous pourriez</b> changer les serviettes, s'il vous plaît?	<b>Could you</b> change the towels, please?
<b>Vous pourriez</b> me montrer la chambre, s'il vous plaît?	<b>Could you</b> show me the room, please?

### Would you mind...?

<b>Est-ce que ça vous dérangerait de</b> me montrer comment marche la cuisinière?	<b>Would you mind</b> showing me how the cooker works?
<b>Est-ce que ça vous dérangerait de</b> m'appeler un taxi?	<b>Would you mind</b> calling a taxi for me?
<b>Ça vous dérangerait de</b> monter mes valises à ma chambre?	<b>Would you mind</b> taking my suitcases up to my room?

## TALKING ABOUT YOURSELF

When you are enquiring about somewhere to stay you will need to give information about yourself. Use **je suis** (*I am*) to talk about yourself and **on est** (*we are*) to include the people who are with you. These come from the verb **être**. For more information on **être**, see [here](#).

### I'm...

<b>Je suis</b> étudiante.	<b>I'm</b> a student.
<b>Je suis</b> canadien.	<b>I'm</b> Canadian.
<b>Je suis</b> du sud de l'Angleterre.	<b>I'm</b> from the south of England.
<b>On est</b> en vacances.	<b>We're</b> on holiday.
<b>Nous sommes</b> les propriétaires.	<b>We're</b> the owners.

### My name is...

<b>Je m'appelle</b> Brian Gallagher.	<b>My name is</b> Brian Gallagher.
<b>Je m'appelle</b> Olivia Gauthier.	<b>My name is</b> Olivia Gauthier.
<b>Je m'appelle</b> Madame Smith. J'ai réservé une chambre double pour cette nuit.	<b>My name is</b> Mrs Smith. I've booked a double room for tonight.
<b>Mon nom de famille c'est</b> Morris...	<b>My surname is</b> Morris...
...et <b>mon prénom c'est</b> Emma.	...and <b>my first name is</b> Emma.
<b>Ça s'écrit</b> M-O-R-R-I-S.	<b>It's spelt</b> M-O-R-R-I-S.

## BON À SAVOIR!

Remember that the French alphabet is pronounced differently from the English alphabet. For more information on how to say letters of the alphabet in French, see [here](#).

## ASKING FOR INFORMATION

When you want to obtain some information about your accommodation, an easy way to ask questions is just to put **est-ce que** before what you want to know. Alternatively, you can simply make your voice go up at the end of the sentence. This sounds more informal than using **est-ce que**.

### Is it...?

<b>Est-ce que c'est</b> cher?	<b>Is it</b> expensive?
<b>Est-ce que c'est</b> un hôtel moderne?	<b>Is it</b> a modern hotel?
<b>C'est</b> loin?	<b>Is it</b> far?
Le petit déjeuner <b>est</b> inclus dans le prix?	<b>Is</b> breakfast included in the price?
<b>Est-ce que</b> toutes les charges <b>sont</b> comprises dans le loyer?	<b>Are</b> all the bills included in the rent?

You can use **Il y a...?** in French to ask both *Is there...?* or *Are there...?*.

### Is there...?

<b>Est-ce qu'il y a</b> un endroit où manger près d'ici?	<b>Is there</b> anywhere near here where we can get something to eat?
<b>Est-ce qu'il y a</b> un	<b>Is there</b> an intercom?

interphone?	<b>Is there</b> a sea view?
<b>Est-ce qu'il y a</b> vue sur la mer?	<b>Is there</b> central heating in the apartment?
<b>Est-ce qu'il y a</b> le chauffage central dans l'appartement?	<b>Are there</b> any disabled toilets?
<b>Il y a</b> des toilettes handicapés?	

Use **je cherche** (*I'm looking for*) or **on cherche** (*we're looking for*) to ask where something is. **cherche** comes from the verb **chercher**. For more information on **-er** verbs like **chercher**, see [here](#).

### I'm looking for...

Excusez-moi, <b>je cherche</b> le camping.	Excuse me, <b>I'm looking for</b> the campsite.
<b>Je cherche</b> une chambre d'hôte pour ce soir.	<b>I'm looking for</b> a B&B for tonight.
<b>On cherche</b> l'hôtel du Nord.	<b>We're looking for</b> the hôtel du Nord.

To get more specific information you may need to ask **Quel...?** (*What...?*), **Où...?** (*Where...?*) or **À quelle heure...?** (*What time...?*).

### What...?

<b>Quel</b> est le nom de l'hôtel?	<b>What's</b> the name of the hotel?
<b>Quel</b> est le numéro de l'agence immobilière?	<b>What's</b> the number for the letting agency?
<b>Quelle</b> est l'adresse du propriétaire?	<b>What's</b> the address of the landlord?

**Quels** sont vos tarifs?

**What** are your rates?

### **BON À SAVOIR!**

Remember to use **quel** with a masculine word and **quelle** with a feminine word.

### **Where...?**

<b>Où</b> est le bar?	<b>Where's</b> the bar?
<b>Où</b> est la salle de fitness?	<b>Where's</b> the gym?
<b>Où</b> sont les ascenseurs?	<b>Where</b> are the lifts?
<b>Où est-ce que</b> je peux brancher mon portable?	<b>Where</b> can I plug in my laptop?

### **What time...?**

<b>À quelle heure</b> est le dîner?	<b>What time's</b> dinner?
<b>À quelle heure</b> vous fermez les portes le soir?	<b>What time</b> do you lock the doors at night?
Il faut libérer la chambre <b>avant quelle heure</b> ?	<b>What time</b> do we have to vacate the room <b>by</b> ?
Vous servez le petit déjeuner <b>jusqu'à quelle heure</b> ?	<b>What time</b> do you serve breakfast <b>till</b> ?

You are very likely to want to ask how much something costs. To do this, use a phrase containing **combien**.

### **How much...?**

--	--

**C'est combien pour** une nuit en chambre double?

**C'est combien pour** la pension complète?

**Combien ça coûterait** de louer un gîte pour tout le mois de juillet?

**How much is** a double room per night?

**How much is** full board?

**How much would it be** to rent a gîte for the whole of July?

### How many...?

Il vous reste **combien de** chambres avec salle de bains?

Il y a **combien de** lits dans la chambre familiale?

**How many** en-suite rooms have you got left?

**How many** beds are there in the family room?

## ASKING FOR PERMISSION

Often when you are staying in a hotel or other accommodation you will need to be able to ask whether you can do something or not. Use **Est-ce que je peux...?** (*Can I...?*) or **Est-ce que nous pouvons...?** (*Can we...?*) to ask if you can do something. These come from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [here](#).

### Can I...?

**Est-ce que je peux** voir la chambre?

**Est-ce que je peux** laisser mes valises ici cinq minutes?

**Est-ce que je peux** fumer

**Can I** see the room?

**Can I** leave my suitcases here for five minutes?

**Can I** smoke in the room?



dans la chambre?	
<b>Est-ce qu'on peut</b> utiliser la piscine?	<b>Can we</b> use the pool?
<b>Est-ce qu'on peut</b> camper ici?	<b>Can we</b> camp here?

### Do you mind if...?

<b>Ça vous dérange si</b> je gare ma voiture dehors un instant?	<b>Do you mind if</b> I park my car outside for a moment?
<b>Ça vous dérange si</b> je paye par carte de crédit?	<b>Do you mind if</b> I pay by credit card?
<b>Ça te dérange si</b> on prend la chambre du haut?	<b>Do you mind if</b> we take the upstairs bedroom?

If you want to ask someone if you may do something, use **Vous permettez que...?** (*Am I allowed to...?*) followed by a verb in the subjunctive. For more information on the subjunctive, see [here](#).

### Am I allowed to...?

<b>Vous permettez que</b> je reçoive des invités?	<b>Am I allowed to</b> have guests?
<b>Vous permettez que</b> je me serve de la machine à laver?	<b>Am I allowed to</b> use the washing machine?
<b>Vous permettez qu'on</b> utilise le téléphone?	<b>May we</b> use the phone?
<b>On a le droit de</b> se servir du barbecue?	<b>Are we allowed to</b> use the barbecue?
<b>On a le droit d'</b> emmener	<b>Are we allowed to</b> bring

notre chien?

our dog?

## SAYING WHAT YOU LIKE, DISLIKE, PREFER

When talking about what you like, use **j'aime bien** (*I like*), which is not as strong as **j'aime** or **j'adore** (*I love*). To say what you don't like, just use **je n'aime pas** (*I don't like*). These come from the verb **aimer**. For more information on **aimer**, see [here](#).

### I like...

<b>J'aime bien</b> les petits hôtels.	<b>I like</b> small hotels.
<b>J'aime bien</b> les campings de montagne.	<b>I like</b> campsites in the mountains.
<b>J'adore</b> cette pension de famille.	<b>I love</b> this guest house.

### I don't like...

<b>Je n'aime pas</b> cet hôtel.	<b>I don't like</b> this hotel.
<b>On n'aime pas</b> tout prévoir à l'avance.	<b>We don't like</b> to plan everything in advance.
<b>Je déteste</b> cette décoration.	<b>I hate</b> this decor.

If you want to say what you prefer, use **je préfère** (*I prefer*) or **je préférerais** (*I'd prefer*). To say that you prefer A to B, use **je préfère A à B**. These come from the verb **préférer**. For more information on **-er** verbs like **préférer**, see [here](#).

### I prefer...

--	--

**Je préfère** cet hôtel.

**Je préfère** loger chez l'habitant.

**Je préférerais ne pas** attendre pour réserver un hôtel.

**On préfère** l'auberge de jeunesse **au** camping.

**I prefer** this hotel.

**I prefer** to stay with a family.

**I'd prefer not to** wait to book a hotel.

**We prefer** youth hostels **to** campsites.

### **I'd rather...**

**J'aimerais mieux** être dans le centre ville.

**J'aimerais mieux** être en colocation **que de** vivre seul.

**On aimerait mieux** vivre à la campagne **que d'**avoir un appartement en ville.

**I'd rather** be in the town centre.

**I'd rather** share a flat **than** live on my own.

**We'd prefer to** live in the country **than** have a flat in town.

## **EXPRESSING OPINIONS**

You may well be asked what you think of your accommodation. Whether it's perfect or not up to scratch, you can use **je trouve** to say what you think. This comes from the verb **trouver**. For more information on **-er** verbs like **trouver**, see [here](#).

### **I think...**

**Je trouve** la chambre un peu petite.

**Je trouve** la maison très

**I think** the bedroom's a bit small.

**I think** the house is very

accueillante.	welcoming.
<b>J'ai trouvé</b> le service excellent.	<b>I thought</b> the service was excellent.
<b>Je trouve qu'</b> il y a trop de bruit la nuit.	<b>I find that</b> there's too much noise at night.

**In my opinion...**

<b>À mon avis</b> , c'est trop cher pour ce que c'est.	<b>In my opinion</b> , it's too expensive for what it is.
<b>À mon avis</b> , c'est parfait pour ce dont on a besoin.	<b>In my opinion</b> , it's perfect for our needs.
<b>À mon avis</b> , la chambre est trop petite.	<b>In my opinion</b> , the room is too small.
<b>À mon avis</b> , c'est complètement inacceptable.	<b>In my view</b> , it's completely unacceptable.

**MAKING SUGGESTIONS**

If you would like to suggest that you do something, use **je peux** (*I can*) followed by the infinitive and **si vous voulez** (*if you like*) – or **si tu veux** for a person you know well – at the end. **peux** comes from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [here](#).

**I can... if you like**

<b>Je peux</b> confirmer les dates demain, <b>si vous voulez</b> .	<b>I can</b> confirm the dates tomorrow, <b>if you like</b> .
<b>Je peux</b> vous envoyer un acompte, <b>si vous voulez</b> .	<b>I can</b> send you a deposit, <b>if you like</b> .
<b>On peut</b> chercher un autre	<b>We can</b> look for another

hôtel, **si tu veux**.

hotel, **if you like**.

If you wish to ask what someone would like you to do, you can use **Vous voulez que je...?** (*Would you like me to...?*) followed by a verb in the subjunctive, which you can find out more about [here](#).

### Would you like me to...?

<b>Vous voulez que je</b> vous paye en liquide?	<b>Would you like me to</b> pay cash?
<b>Vous voulez que je</b> vous montre ma réservation?	<b>Would you like me to</b> show you my booking?
<b>Tu veux que je</b> prenne le lit du haut?	<b>Would you like me to</b> take the top bunk?
<b>Est-ce que vous voulez qu'on</b> vous laisse nos passeports?	<b>Would you like to</b> keep our passports?

## ASKING FOR SUGGESTIONS

You may want to ask for advice or a recommendation concerning your accommodation. To ask for advice, use **Est-ce que vous me conseillez de...?** (*Would you advise...?*). This comes from the verb **conseiller**. For more information on **-er** verbs like **conseiller**, see [here](#).

### Would you advise...?

<b>Est-ce que vous me conseillez de</b> réserver à l'avance?	<b>Would you advise me to</b> book in advance?
<b>Est-ce que vous nous conseillez d'</b> amener des	<b>Would you advise us to</b> bring sleeping bags?

sacs de couchage?

**Vous me conseillez  
d'amener de quoi  
manger?**

**Would you advise me to  
bring something to eat?**

### Would you recommend...?

**Est-ce que vous  
recommandez** cet hôtel?

**Would you recommend**  
this hotel?

**Est-ce que vous  
recommandez** cette  
agence immobilière?

**Would you recommend**  
this estate agency?

**Est-ce que vous nous  
recommandez de** louer à  
la semaine?

**Would you recommend**  
**that we** rent by the week?

**Vous nous recommandez  
de** prendre un  
appartement en ville?

**Would you recommend us**  
**to** take a flat in town?

## SAYING WHAT YOU HAVE TO DO

If you want to say that you have to do something with regard to your accommodation in French, you use **il faut que je** (*I have to*) or **il faudrait que je** (*I ought to*) and then the verb in the subjunctive, which you can find out about [here](#).

### I have to...

**Il faut que je** passe à la  
réception pour payer.

**I have to** go to the  
reception to pay.

**Il faut que je** note  
l'adresse de l'hôtel.

**I have to** write down the  
address of the hotel.

**Il faut qu'on** parte à six heures demain matin.

**We have to** leave at six tomorrow morning.

### I ought to...

<b>Il faudrait que je</b> fasse une lessive.	<b>I ought to</b> do a load of washing.
<b>Il faudrait que je</b> décharge la voiture.	<b>I ought to</b> unload the car.
<b>Il faudrait qu'on</b> se lève avant sept heures.	<b>We ought to</b> be up by seven am.
<b>Il faudrait qu'on</b> ait le double des clefs.	<b>We ought to</b> have a spare set of keys.

Alternatively, you can use **je dois** (*I must*), from the verb **devoir**. For more information on **devoir**, see [here](#).

### I must...

<b>Je dois</b> me lever tôt demain.	<b>I must</b> get up early tomorrow.
<b>Je dois</b> rendre les clés au propriétaire.	<b>I must</b> give the keys back to the owner.
<b>On doit</b> absolument trouver un logement avant la fin du mois.	<b>We</b> absolutely <b>must</b> find accommodation by the end of the month.

In French you can tell somebody what you need by using **j'ai besoin de** (*I need*).

### I need...

<b>J'ai besoin d'un</b> lit	<b>I need</b> a cot.
-----------------------------	----------------------

d'enfant. <b>J'ai besoin de</b> téléphoner en Écosse.	<b>I need</b> to call Scotland.
<b>Nous avons besoin d'</b> une chambre au rez-de-chaussée.	<b>We need</b> a room on the ground floor.

You can use **Est-ce qu'il faut que...?** (*Do I have to...?*) followed by the verb in the subjunctive to ask about what you have to do. For more information on the subjunctive, see [here](#).

### Do I have to...?

<b>Est-ce qu'il faut que je</b> laisse la clef à la réception quand je sors?	<b>Do I have to</b> leave the key at the reception when I go out?
<b>Est-ce qu'il faut qu'on</b> emmène des sacs de couchage?	<b>Do we need to</b> bring sleeping bags?
<b>Est-ce qu'il faut</b> vous prévenir quand on quitte l'hôtel?	<b>Do we have to</b> let you know when we leave the hotel?
<b>Qu'est-ce qu'il faut que</b> j'emmène?	<b>What do I need to</b> bring?
<b>Quand est-ce qu'il faut qu'on</b> libère la chambre?	<b>When do we have to</b> vacate the room?

Alternatively, you can use **Est-ce que je dois...?** (*Do I need to...?*)

### Do I need to...?

<b>Est-ce que je dois</b> faire le ménage dans	<b>Do I need to</b> clean the flat before leaving?
--	--



l'appartement avant de partir?

**Est-ce que je dois** réserver?

**Est-ce qu'on doit** laisser un pourboire à la femme de chambre?

**Do I need to** book?

**Do we need to** leave a tip for the housekeeper?

## TALKING ABOUT YOUR PLANS

When you are talking about your plans for where you're going to stay, in French, as in English, the present tense is very often used to talk about things that have been arranged and are definite. For more on the present tense, see [here](#).

### **I'm staying...**

<p><b>Je loge</b> en auberge de jeunesse la première semaine.</p> <p><b>Je loge</b> chez l'habitant le premier soir.</p> <p>... ensuite <b>je dors</b> à l'hôtel.</p>	<p><b>I'm staying</b> in a youth hostel the first week.</p> <p><b>I'm staying</b> with a host family the first night.</p> <p>... then <b>I'm staying</b> in a hotel.</p>
---	--

Alternatively, you can use the future tense in French, as in English.

### **I'll...**

<p><b>Je serai</b> à l'hôtel à dix-sept heures.</p> <p><b>Je paierai</b> le loyer à</p>	<p><b>I'll be</b> at the hotel at five pm.</p> <p><b>I'll pay</b> the rent in</p>
---	---

l'avance. <b>On arrivera</b> dans la soirée.	advance. <b>We'll arrive</b> in the evening.
---	---

In English we often say *I'm going to* to talk about the future. French works the same way. To say that you're going to do something, put **je vais** (*I'm going to*) or **on va** (*we're going to*) before the verb. **vais** and **va** come from the verb **aller**. For more information on **aller**, see [here](#).

### I'm going to...

<b>Je vais</b> loger à Biarritz.	<b>I'm going to</b> stay in Biarritz.
<b>Je vais</b> louer un chalet à la montagne.	<b>I'm going to</b> rent a chalet in the mountains.
<b>On va</b> faire du camping.	<b>We're going to</b> camp.

If you want to say that you intend to do something, you can use **j'ai l'intention de** or **je compte** (*I intend to*).

### I intend to...

<b>J'ai l'intention de</b> louer un appartement.	<b>I intend to</b> rent a flat.
<b>J'ai l'intention de</b> trouver un gîte.	<b>I intend to</b> find a gîte.
<b>Je compte</b> rester jusqu'à vendredi.	<b>I intend to</b> stay until Friday.
<b>On compte</b> partir demain après le petit déjeuner.	<b>We intend to</b> leave after breakfast tomorrow.

## [COMPLAINING](#)

Unfortunately the service you get in your accommodation may not always be perfect. A very simple way of complaining is to say what the problem is using **il y a**, which means both *there is* and *there are* or **il n'y a pas de** which means *there isn't* or *there aren't*.

### There's...

<b>Il y a</b> trop de bruit.	<b>There's</b> too much noise.
<b>Il y a</b> une fuite au plafond.	<b>There's</b> a leak in the ceiling.
<b>Il y a</b> des cafards dans l'appartement.	<b>There are</b> cockroaches in the apartment.

### There isn't...

<b>Il n'y a pas d'</b> eau chaude.	<b>There isn't</b> any hot water.
<b>Il n'y a pas de</b> serviettes propres dans la chambre.	<b>There aren't</b> any clean towels in the room.
La chambre <b>n'a pas de</b> balcon.	The room <b>doesn't have</b> a balcony.
L'appartement <b>n'a pas</b> la climatisation.	The apartment <b>doesn't have</b> air-conditioning.

You can also use the verb **être** (*to be*) to describe what the problem is.

### It's...

L'appartement <b>est</b> sale.	The apartment's dirty.
L'eau de la piscine <b>n'est pas</b> très propre.	The water in the swimming pool <b>isn't</b> very clean.
Cet hôtel <b>est</b> trop bruyant.	This hotel's too noisy.
<b>Il fait</b> trop chaud ici.	<b>It's</b> too hot in here.

## BON À SAVOIR!

Remember that in French to talk about the weather, you use the verb **faire**. For more information on this use of **faire**, see [here](#).

## LISTEN OUT FOR

Here are some phrases you are likely to hear when you're looking for somewhere to stay.

Vous cherchez quel type de logement?	What type of accommodation are you looking for?
La réservation est à quel nom?	Whose name is the booking in?
Pour combien de nuits?	For how many nights?
Pour combien de personnes?	For how many people?
Le petit déjeuner est inclus dans le prix.	Breakfast is included in the price.
Je peux voir votre passeport, s'il vous plaît?	Can I see your passport, please?
Nous sommes complets.	We're full.
Il y a une caution de 300 euros.	There's a 300 euro deposit.
Vous êtes joignable à quel numéro?	What number can we contact you on?
Les chiens ne sont pas admis.	We don't allow dogs.
Vous voulez régler comment?	How would you like to pay?
Remplissez ce formulaire,	Please fill in this form.

s'il vous plaît.

Signez ici, s'il vous plaît.

Vous pouvez épeler votre  
nom, s'il vous plaît?

Please sign here.

Can you spell your name  
for me, please?

## Lifestyle Tips

- The proportion of **propriétaires** (*homeowners*) in France is much lower than it is in Britain. People tend to rent a lot more. Long-term rented accommodation is usually unfurnished; **locataires** (*tenants*) often even have to supply their own **appareils ménagers** (*white goods*) and **meubles de cuisine** (*kitchen units*).
- It is not as common for professionals to share a flat – **être en colocation** – in France as it is in Britain, although high rents have changed this over the past few years, especially in cities.
- If you're flat-hunting in France, you will hear flats described as **F1, F2, F3** and so on. These refer to the number of rooms in a flat, not including the bathroom and kitchen. A **studio** is a studio, an **F1** is a one-room flat, an **F2** is a two-room flat, and so on.
- One good way of getting to know an area and its locals is to stay in a **gîte rural** – a cottage or apartment in the country. Some offer self-catering facilities, but others give you the chance to stay in an apartment within the house of the host family.
- The equivalent of B&Bs in France are **chambres d'hôte**, usually a room in someone's house. Some of these places also offer **table d'hôte**, which means that they will provide a meal using local produce, or even food grown on the farm. If there aren't any vacancies you will see a "**Complet**" ("*Full*") sign.

- When staying in a **camping** (*campsite*), you will have to pay **des arrhes** (*a deposit*) which is part of the full amount you will pay at the end of your stay. When renting accommodation you may also have to pay **une caution** (*a security deposit*).

# Wining and dining

## Bon appétit! – Enjoy your meal!

If you're going out for a meal in France either in a local café or in a fancy restaurant, the phrases in this unit will give you the confidence to talk to the waiter and chat with your French friends in easy, natural French. We'll also give you some tips on getting advice about what to order, and a few key phrases the waiters are likely to use.

### MAKING ARRANGEMENTS

If you want to make arrangements such as where and when to meet when you go out for a meal with French-speaking people, you can ask **Où est-ce que...?** (*Where...?*) or **À quelle heure...?** (*What time...?*).

#### **Where...?**

<b>Où est-ce qu'on se</b> retrouve?	<b>Where</b> shall we meet?
<b>Où est-ce que</b> tu veux que je vienne te prendre?	<b>Where</b> do you want me to pick you up?
<b>Où est-ce qu'on</b> pourrait aller manger?	<b>Where</b> shall we go to eat?



## What time...?

<b>À quelle heure est-ce qu'on se retrouve?</b>	<b>What time</b> shall we meet?
<b>À quelle heure est-ce qu'elle va arriver?</b>	<b>What time</b> is she going to get here?
Tu as réservé une table <b>pour quelle heure?</b>	<b>What time</b> did you book the table <b>for?</b>
Vous servez <b>jusqu'à quelle heure?</b>	<b>What time</b> do you serve <b>till?</b>
On peut arriver <b>à partir de quelle heure?</b>	<b>How early</b> can we come?

If you want to check that the arrangements suit your friends or colleagues, you can use **Ça te va si...?** or **Ça vous va si...?** (*Will it be all right if...?*).

## Will it be all right if...?

<b>Ça te va si</b> on va au restaurant demain soir?	<b>Will it be all right if</b> we go to the restaurant tomorrow night?
<b>Ça te va si</b> on se retrouve à sept heures?	<b>Will it be all right if</b> we meet up at seven pm?
<b>Ça vous va si</b> on vous rejoint là-bas?	<b>Will it be all right if</b> we meet you there?

## Is it better to...?

<b>Est-ce qu'il vaut mieux réserver?</b>	<b>Is it better to</b> book?
<b>Est-ce qu'il vaut mieux arriver en avance?</b>	<b>Is it better to</b> arrive early?

**Est-ce qu'il vaudrait mieux** changer notre réservation?

**Est-ce que ça t'irait mieux** samedi soir?

**Would it be better to** change our reservation?

**Would Saturday evening suit you better?**

**It would suit me best to...**

**Ça m'arrangerait de** vous retrouver sur place.

**Ça m'arrangerait d'y** aller à huit heures.

**Ça nous arrangerait d'y** aller en voiture.

**It'd suit me best to** meet you there.

**It'd suit me best to** be there for eight.

**It'd be better for us to** go there by car.

## ASKING FOR INFORMATION

When you're going out for a meal you'll need to ask for various pieces of information, such as where things are and how much they cost. To ask where something is, you can use **Où se trouve...?** (*Where is...?*), and to ask how much it costs, use **C'est combien...?** (*How much is...?*).

**Where's...?**

**Où se trouve** le restaurant?

**Où se trouve** le coin change-bébé?

Excusez-moi, **où se trouvent** les toilettes?

**Where is** the restaurant?

**Where's** the baby changing area?

Excuse me, **where are** the toilets?

**How much...?**

**C'est combien** une  
bouteille de blanc du  
pays?

**C'est combien** une petite  
salade?

**Il est à combien,** le menu?

**How much is** a bottle of  
local white wine?

**How much is** it for a side  
salad?

**How much is** the set  
menu?

### What...?

**Qu'est-ce qu'il** y a comme  
dessert?

**Qu'est-ce qu'il** y a dans le  
cassoulet?

**Qu'est-ce qu'il** y a comme  
garniture?

**What** is there for dessert?

**What** is in a "cassoulet"?

**What** does it come with?

Many of the questions you will be asking can be answered by *yes* or *no*. You can either put **est-ce que** before what you want to know or alternatively you can raise the tone of your voice at the end of the sentence – this will make you sound more informal.

### Is it...?

**Est-ce que c'est** un plat  
typique de la région?

**Est-ce que c'est** compris  
dans le menu à 15 euros?

**Est-ce qu'il est** cher, ce  
restaurant?

**Ça convient aux**  
végétariens?

**Is it** a local dish?

**Is it** included in the 15 €  
set menu?

**Is it** an expensive  
restaurant?

**Is it ok for** vegetarians?

## ASKING FOR THINGS

When you're out in a French restaurant you will need to be able to ask for what you want. If you want to ask for something in French, use **je voudrais** (*I'd like*) or **on voudrait** (*we'd like*). **voudrais** and **voudrait** come from the verb **vouloir**. For more information on **vouloir**, see [here](#).

### **I'd like...**

<b>Je voudrais</b> du pain, s'il vous plaît.	<b>I'd like</b> some bread, please.
<b>Je voudrais</b> une carafe d'eau, s'il vous plaît.	<b>I'd like</b> a jug of water, please.
<b>On voudrait</b> une autre bouteille de vin.	<b>We'd like</b> another bottle of wine.
Une table pour deux personnes, <b>s'il vous plaît</b> .	A table for two, <b>please</b> .

When the waiter approaches and you want to say that you're not ready to order, use **je n'ai pas encore décidé**. Alternatively, if your order has already been taken, you can say **on a déjà commandé, merci** (*someone's already taken our order, thanks*).

### **I'll have...**

Comme entrée, <b>je vais prendre</b> la terrine de lapin.	As a starter, <b>I'll have</b> the rabbit terrine.
Comme plat principal, <b>je vais prendre</b> le saumon.	For the main course, <b>I'll have</b> salmon.
<b>Je vais prendre</b> la mousse au chocolat comme dessert.	For dessert, <b>I'll have</b> the chocolate mousse.

Comme boisson, **nous allons prendre** une bouteille d'eau pétillante.  
Je ne sais pas quoi **prendre**.

**We'll have** sparkling water to drink.  
I don't know what **to have**.

When you want to find out if something is available, use **Est-ce que vous avez...?** or **Vous avez...?** (*Have you got...?*). **avez** comes from the verb **avoir**. For more information on **avoir**, see [here](#).

### Have you got...?

<b>Est-ce que vous avez</b> un menu enfants?	<b>Have you got</b> a children's menu?
<b>Est-ce que vous avez</b> une table en terrasse?	<b>Do you have</b> a table outside?
<b>Vous avez</b> une carte des vins?	<b>Do you have</b> a wine list?
<b>Vous avez</b> une chaise pour bébé?	<b>Have you got</b> a high chair?

If you want to ask someone, for example the waiter, for something in French, use **Je peux avoir...?** (*Can I have...?*) or **Je pourrais avoir...?** (*Could I have...?*). **peux** and **pourrais** come from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [here](#).

### Can I have...?

<b>Je peux avoir</b> une autre fourchette, s'il vous plaît?	<b>Can I have</b> another fork, please?
<b>Je peux avoir</b> la carte des desserts, s'il vous plaît?	<b>Can I have</b> the dessert menu, please?
<b>On peut avoir</b> du pain, s'il	<b>Can we have</b> some bread,

vous plaît?	please?
<b>Je pourrais avoir</b> l'addition, s'il vous plaît?	<b>Could I have</b> the bill, please?
<b>Est-ce que je pourrais</b> <b>avoir</b> de la moutarde, s'il vous plaît?	<b>Could I have</b> some mustard, please?

If you want to ask someone such as a friend or a close colleague to do something for you, use **Tu pourrais...?** (*Could you...?*). When you're talking to the waiter, use **Vous pourriez...?** instead. **pourrais** and **pourriez** come from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [here](#).

### Could you...?

<b>Tu pourrais</b> me passer le sel, s'il te plaît?	<b>Could you</b> pass me the salt, please?
<b>Tu pourrais</b> me donner du pain, s'il te plaît?	<b>Could you</b> give me some bread, please?
<b>Vous pourriez</b> prendre notre commande, s'il vous plaît?	<b>Could you</b> take our order, please?
<b>Est-ce que vous pourriez</b> nous apporter notre café, s'il vous plaît?	<b>Could you</b> bring us our coffee, please?
<b>Est-ce que vous pourriez</b> revenir dans cinq minutes?	<b>Could you possibly</b> come back in five minutes?

### Would you mind...?

<b>Est-ce que ça vous</b> <b>ennuierait</b> de prendre ma veste?	<b>Would you mind</b> hanging up my jacket?
---	---

**Est-ce que ça vous ennuerait** de fermer la fenêtre?

**Est-ce que ça t'ennuerait** de changer de place avec moi?

**Would you mind** closing the window?

**Would you mind** swapping seats with me?

## SAYING WHAT YOU WANT TO DO

If you want to say what you'd like to do when you're eating out, use either **je voudrais** or **j'aimerais** (*I'd like*) followed by the infinitive. They come from the verbs **vouloir** and **aimer**. For more information on **vouloir** and **aimer**, see [here](#) and [here](#).

### **I'd like to...**

<b>J'aimerais</b> commander, s'il vous plaît.	<b>I'd like to</b> order, please.
<b>J'aimerais</b> voir la carte des desserts.	<b>I'd like to</b> see the dessert menu.
<b>Je voudrais</b> réserver une table, s'il vous plaît.	<b>I'd like to</b> book a table, please.
<b>Nous voudrions</b> commander du vin, s'il vous plaît.	<b>We'd like to</b> order some wine, please.
<b>Nous aimerions</b> payer par carte.	<b>We'd like to</b> pay by card.

You can also say what you feel like doing in French, by using **j'ai envie de** (*I feel like*) with the infinitive.

### **I feel like...**

<b>J'ai envie de</b> prendre la fondue savoyarde.	<b>I feel like</b> having the cheese fondue.
<b>J'ai envie de</b> manger chinois, pour changer.	<b>I feel like</b> having Chinese food for a change.
<b>Je n'ai pas envie de</b> prendre d'entrée.	<b>I don't feel like</b> a starter.
<b>Tu as envie de</b> goûter ma glace?	<b>Would you like</b> to try my ice cream?

## SAYING WHAT YOU LIKE, DISLIKE, PREFER

When you're out wining and dining you will probably want to talk about what you like or dislike, especially when it comes to food. To say what you like, you can use **j'aime bien** (*I like*), which is not as strong as **j'aime** or **j'adore** (*I love*). If you want to say that you don't like something, you can use **je n'aime pas**.

### **I like...**

<b>J'aime bien</b> le fromage.	<b>I like</b> cheese.
<b>J'aime bien</b> les asperges.	<b>I like</b> asparagus.
<b>J'adore</b> les fruits de mer.	<b>I love</b> seafood.
<b>Tu aimes</b> les artichauts?	<b>Do you like</b> artichokes?
<b>Vous aimez</b> la cuisine thaïlandaise?	<b>Do you like</b> Thai food?

### **I don't like...**

<b>Je n'aime pas</b> les olives.	<b>I don't like</b> olives.
<b>Je n'aime pas trop</b> la cuisine mexicaine.	<b>I'm not too keen on</b> Mexican food.



**J'ai horreur des abats.**

**Tu n'aimes pas les champignons?**

**I can't stand offal.**

**Don't you like mushrooms?**

In French when you talk about things that you like in general, you need to say **j'aime bien le fromage** (*I like the cheese*), **je n'aime pas les olives** (*I don't like the olives*) instead of *I like cheese, I don't like olives*.

### **I'd rather...**

<b>Je préfère</b> goûter un plat typique d'ici.	<b>I'd rather</b> try a local dish.
<b>Je préfère</b> qu'on partage l'addition.	<b>I'd rather</b> we split the bill.
<b>Je préfère</b> prendre une entrée <b>plutôt qu'</b> un dessert.	<b>I'd rather</b> have a starter <b>than</b> a dessert.
<b>Est-ce que tu préférerais</b> aller ailleurs?	<b>Would you rather</b> go somewhere else?

If you have special dietary needs, you can bring these into the conversation by using **je suis** (*I'm*).

### **I'm...**

<b>Je suis</b> allergique aux œufs.	<b>I'm</b> allergic to eggs.
<b>Je suis</b> végétarien.	<b>I'm</b> a vegetarian.

## **ASKING FOR SUGGESTIONS**

If you want to ask the waiter or other people at your table to recommend something, you can use **Qu'est-ce que vous me conseillez?** or **Qu'est-ce que tu me conseilles?** (*What do you recommend?*).

### What do you recommend...?

<b>Qu'est-ce que vous me conseillez</b> comme entrée?	<b>What do you recommend</b> as a starter?
<b>Qu'est-ce que vous nous conseillez</b> comme vin?	<b>Which wine do you recommend?</b>
<b>Qu'est-ce que tu me conseilles</b> de prendre?	<b>What would you recommend me</b> to have?
<b>Est-ce que vous pouvez me recommander</b> un plat de la région?	<b>Can you recommend</b> a local dish?

If you want to ask whether you should do something, use **Tu crois que je devrais...?** or **Vous croyez que je devrais...?** (*Do you think I should...?*).

### Do you think I should...?

<b>Tu crois que je devrais</b> prendre la tarte?	<b>Do you think I should</b> have the tart?
<b>Tu crois que je devrais</b> goûter les escargots?	<b>Do you think I should</b> try the snails?
<b>Vous croyez que je devrais</b> prendre du vin rouge avec ce plat?	<b>Do you think I should</b> have red wine with this dish?
<b>Tu crois qu'on devrait</b> laisser un pourboire?	<b>Do you think we should</b> leave a tip?

## [MAKING SUGGESTIONS](#)

You may wish to make a suggestion to your colleagues or friends in French. One way of doing this is to use **on pourrait** (*we could*). This comes from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [here](#).

### We could...

<b>On pourrait</b> se mettre ici.	<b>We could</b> sit here.
<b>On pourrait</b> juste prendre une salade.	<b>We could</b> just have a salad.
<b>On pourrait</b> se mettre dehors, <b>si vous voulez</b> .	<b>We could</b> sit outside, <b>if you prefer</b> .

If you want to make a suggestion using *let's*, you can use the **nous** form of the imperative in French. For more information on the imperative, see [here](#).

### Let's...

<b>Asseyons-nous</b> dehors.	<b>Let's</b> sit outside.
<b>Prenons</b> la fondue.	<b>Let's</b> have the fondue.
<b>Ne prenons pas</b> d'entrée.	<b>Let's not</b> bother with a starter.

If you are asking someone whether they feel like having or doing something, use **Ça te dit de...?** (*Do you fancy...?*).

### Do you fancy...?

<b>Ça te dit de</b> prendre un café?	<b>Do you fancy</b> a coffee?
<b>Ça te dit de</b> goûter ma soupe? Elle est délicieuse.	<b>Do you fancy</b> trying my soup? It's delicious.
<b>Ça vous dit de</b> prendre un	<b>Do you fancy</b> some

dessert? <b>Ça vous dit de commander</b> une deuxième bouteille?	dessert? <b>Do you fancy</b> ordering a second bottle?
--	--

### You can have...

<b>Prends</b> une entrée, si tu veux.	<b>You can have</b> a starter, if you like.
<b>Prenez</b> un digestif, si vous voulez.	<b>You can have</b> a liqueur, if you like.
<b>Prenez</b> le menu à 20 euros, si vous préférez.	<b>You can have</b> the 20 € set menu, if you like.

Another very simple way of making suggestions is to ask a question starting with **on** and followed by a verb in the present tense. This is a fairly informal way of making a suggestion. For more information on the present tense, see [here](#).

### How about...?

<b>On prend</b> un apéritif?	<b>How about</b> having a drink first?
<b>On commande</b> une autre bouteille?	<b>How about</b> we order another bottle?
<b>On demande</b> l'addition?	<b>How about</b> asking for the bill?

## LISTEN OUT FOR

Here are some key phrases you are likely to hear when you're eating out.

--	--

Tu veux que je vienne te prendre?

Tu es libre samedi?

Vous avez réservé?

Je suis désolé, nous sommes complets.

Par ici, s'il vous plaît.

Suivez-moi, s'il vous plaît.

Voici la carte des vins.

Le plat du jour est écrit au tableau.

Je vous recommande la *tarte tatin*.

C'est une spécialité de la région.

Vous avez choisi?

Désirez-vous un apéritif?

Et comme boisson?

Désirez-vous du fromage ou un dessert?

Vous désirez autre chose?

Je suis à vous dans un instant.

Je vous l'apporte tout de suite.

C'est moi qui vous invite.

C'est offert par la maison.

Do you want me to pick you up?

Are you busy on Saturday?

Have you got a reservation?

Sorry, we're full.

This way please.

Follow me please.

Here's the wine list.

Today's special is on the board.

I'd recommend the *tarte tatin*.

It's a local speciality.

Are you ready to order?

Would you like a drink first?

What will you have to drink?

Would you like the cheese board or a dessert?

Would you like anything else?

I'll be right with you.

I'll bring it right away.

It's on me.

This is on the house.

## *Lifestyle Tips*

- To attract the waiter's attention, you just need to say **s'il vous plaît?** or **monsieur/mademoiselle/madame, s'il vous plaît?**. The word **Garçon!** that most people will have learnt at school is considered rude and offensive by waiters now and shouldn't be used.
- You'll always be served **du pain** (*bread*) with your meal, and you won't be charged for it. Most French people wouldn't contemplate having a meal without bread.
- While service charges are usually included on restaurant bills, it is still very common to leave **un pourboire** (*a tip*) of a few euros in a restaurant, especially if the service has been good. In bars, people tend to leave a few cents (**centimes d'euro**) in small change when buying drinks.
- Children are welcome in French restaurants, even in the evening. If you need a high chair, you can ask **Est-ce que vous avez une chaise haute?**. Many restaurants will have **un menu enfant** (*a children's menu*).
- When serving you your food waiters will often say **Bon appétit!** (*Enjoy your meal!*) at the start of the meal, and sometimes **Bonne continuation!** when bringing the second course. You should reply **Merci!**. If people you are eating with or other diners in the restaurant say this to you, the correct response is: **Merci, vous aussi!** (*The same to you!*).



# Hitting the town

## Amusez-vous bien! – Enjoy yourselves!

This unit will help you to feel confident in all kinds of social situations in French. Whether you are going to a concert, the theatre or cinema, going to watch a sports match, going to a bar, or throwing or being invited to a party, these phrases will ensure that your French sounds natural.

### MAKING SUGGESTIONS

When you're planning to go out with French-speaking friends or colleagues you may want to suggest what you could do. One good way of making a suggestion is to use **on peut** (*we can*) or **on pourrait** (*we could*). These are from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [here](#).

**We can...**

**On peut** aller boire un verre, **si tu veux**.

**On peut** aller au théâtre, **si vous voulez**.

**On pourrait** aller à un concert, **si tu veux**.

**We can** go and have a drink, **if you like**.

**We can** go to the theatre, **if you like**.

**We could** go to a concert, **if you like**.



Another way of making a suggestion is by using **on va** (*let's*) followed by the infinitive.

### Let's...

<b>On va</b> prendre un verre?	<b>Let's</b> go out for a drink.
<b>On va</b> voir si on peut avoir des billets pour le match de samedi?	<b>Let's</b> see if we can get tickets for the match on Saturday.
<b>On va</b> s'asseoir?	<b>Shall we</b> go and sit down?
<b>On commande</b> une autre bouteille de vin?	<b>Let's</b> order another bottle of wine.

You can also ask someone what they would like to do by asking **Tu veux...?** or **Vous voulez...?** (*Do you want to...?*).

### Do you want to...?

<b>Tu veux</b> aller prendre un café samedi après-midi?	<b>Do you want to</b> go for a coffee on Saturday afternoon?
<b>Tu veux</b> aller au café après le cinéma?	<b>Do you want to</b> go to a bar after the movie?
J'organise une soirée. <b>Tu veux</b> venir?	I'm having a party. <b>Do you want to</b> come?
<b>Vous voulez</b> nous retrouver au café demain soir?	<b>Do you want to</b> meet us in the bar tomorrow night?
<b>Vous voulez</b> venir manger chez nous demain soir?	<b>Do you want to</b> come for dinner tomorrow night?

**BON À SAVOIR!**

When talking about *tonight* and *tomorrow night*, use **ce soir** and **demain soir**.

### Do you fancy...?

<b>Ça te dirait d'</b> aller boire un pot?	<b>Do you fancy</b> going for a drink?
<b>Ça te dirait d'</b> aller au cinéma?	<b>Do you fancy</b> going to the cinema?
<b>Ça vous dirait d'</b> aller prendre un café quelque part?	<b>Do you fancy</b> going for a coffee somewhere?
<b>Ça vous dirait d'</b> aller voir un match de foot?	<b>Do you fancy</b> going to a football match?

### BON À SAVOIR!

The French expressions for *going for a drink* are **boire un verre** or **boire un pot**. These expressions are quite informal, and are used with friends and people you know well.

### TALKING ABOUT YOUR PLANS

If you want to talk about the plans you've made for social activities, you can say **je vais** (*I'm going to*) or **on va** (*we're going to*).

### I'm going to...

<b>Je vais</b> inviter des amis pour mon anniversaire.	<b>I'm going to</b> have some friends over for my birthday.
<b>Je vais</b> aller à la soirée de	<b>I'm going to</b> Laurent's

Laurent samedi prochain.  
**On va** dîner chez des amis  
ce soir.

party next Saturday.  
**We're going to** have  
dinner at our friends'  
house tonight.

### Are you going to...?

**Vous allez** inviter  
beaucoup de personnes?  
**Tu vas** aller à la soirée de  
Susie?  
Quand est-ce que **tu vas**  
**pouvoir** venir?

**Are you going to** invite  
many people?  
**Are you going to** Susie's  
party?  
When **will you be able to**  
come?

### Perhaps I'll...

**Je vais peut-être** y aller.  
**Je vais peut-être** reprendre  
un dernier verre.  
**Je vais peut-être** organiser  
une soirée.

**Perhaps I'll** go.  
**Perhaps I'll** have another  
drink.  
**I may** have a party.

## ASKING FOR INFORMATION

When you're planning to go out socially, you will need to ask for some information about what's available or what's on. To ask questions that can be answered *yes* or *no*, just put **est-ce que** before what you want to know.

### Is there...?

**Est-ce qu'il y a** un cinéma  
ici?

**Is there** a cinema here?

**Est-ce qu'il y a** des concerts gratuits ce week-end?

**Est-ce qu'il y a** un match de rugby cet après-midi?

**Est-ce qu'il y a** des réductions pour les étudiants?

**Are there** any free concerts on this weekend?

**Is there** a rugby match on this afternoon?

**Is there** a discount for students?

## BON À SAVOIR!

Both *Is there...?* and *Are there...?* are translated by **Est-ce qu'il y a...?**.

To ask someone whether they have something, for example, in a bar or at the theatre, use **Est-ce que vous avez...?** (*Do you have...?*).

## Do you have...?

**Est-ce que vous avez** une carte des cocktails?

**Est-ce que vous avez** des programmes?

**Est-ce que vous avez** de la bière pression?

**Do you have** a cocktail menu?

**Do you have** any programmes?

**Do you have** beer on draught?

To obtain specific information, for example, what time something starts or finishes or how much it costs, you can use phrases such as **À quelle heure...?** (*What time...?*) and **Combien coûte...?** (*How much...?*).

## What...?

Ils jouent **quel** genre de musique?

**What** kind of music do they play?

Tu vas dans **quel** bar?

Tu as des billets pour  
**quelle** séance?

**Qu'est-ce qu'**il passe au  
cinéma en ce moment?

**What** bar are you going to?

**What** showing have you  
got tickets for?

**What's** on at the cinema at  
the moment?

### What time...?

**À quelle heure** commence  
le film?

**À quelle heure** finit le  
concert?

On a commandé le taxi  
**pour quelle heure**?

**What time** does the film  
start?

**What time** does the  
concert finish?

**What time** is the taxi  
ordered for?

### How much...?

**Combien coûte** l'entrée?

**Combien coûte** un billet  
pour la représentation de  
ce soir?

**Combien coûte** le  
programme?

**How much** does it cost to  
get in?

**How much** is a ticket for  
this evening's  
performance?

**How much** is it for a  
programme?

### How long...?

**Combien de temps** dure  
l'opéra?

Vous allez être dans ce bar  
pendant **combien de**  
**temps**?

**How long** does the opera  
last?

**How long** are you going to  
be in this bar?

On met **combien de temps**  
pour aller au stade?

**How long** does it take to  
get to the stadium?

## ASKING FOR THINGS

When you're asking for things, the easiest way to say what you want is to use **je voudrais** (*I'd like*) or **on voudrait** (*we'd like*). **voudrais** and **voudrait** are from the verb **vouloir**. For more information on **vouloir**, see [here](#).

### I'd like...

<b>Je voudrais</b> une vodka orange, s'il vous plaît.	<b>I'd like</b> a vodka and orange, please.
<b>Je voudrais</b> deux tickets pour « Saint Laurent ».	<b>I'd like</b> two tickets for 'Saint Laurent'.
<b>Je voudrais</b> un billet pour le match Rouen-Cherbourg.	<b>I'd like</b> a ticket for the Rouen-Cherbourg match.
<b>On voudrait</b> payer, s'il vous plaît.	<b>We would like</b> to settle the bill, please.
<b>J'aimerais</b> une place à l'orchestre.	<b>I'd like</b> a seat in the stalls.

### I'll have...

<b>Je vais prendre</b> un thé au lait.	<b>I'll have</b> a cup of tea.
<b>Je vais prendre</b> un gin tonic.	<b>I'll have</b> a G & T.
<b>On va prendre</b> une autre bouteille de vin blanc de	<b>We'll have</b> another bottle of house white.

la maison.

To ask someone for something, use **Est-ce que je peux avoir...?** (*Can I have...?*).

### Can I have...?

<b>Est-ce que je peux avoir</b> une carafe d'eau?	<b>Can I have</b> a jug of water?
<b>Est-ce que je peux avoir</b> un billet pour le spectacle?	<b>Can I have</b> a ticket for the show?
<b>Est-ce qu'on peut avoir</b> l'addition?	<b>Can we have</b> the bill?

## SAYING WHAT YOU LIKE, DISLIKE, PREFER

When you're out socializing you will probably want to say what you like or dislike. To say what you like, you can use **j'aime bien** (*I like*) which isn't as strong as **j'aime** or **j'adore** (*I love*). If you want to say that you don't like something, use **je n'aime pas** (*I don't like*).

### I like...

<b>J'aime bien</b> les films d'horreur.	<b>I like</b> horror films.
<b>J'aime bien</b> la techno.	<b>I like</b> techno music.
<b>J'adore</b> l'opéra.	<b>I love</b> opera.

### I don't like...

<b>Je n'aime pas</b> aller au	<b>I don't like</b> going to the
-------------------------------	----------------------------------

théâtre.

**J'ai horreur** du pastis.

theatre.

**I can't stand** pastis.

To talk about what you prefer, use **je préfère** (*I prefer*). **préfère** comes from the verb **préférer**. For more information on **-er** verbs like **préférer**, see [here](#).

### I prefer...

**Je préfère** les films d'art et d'essai.

**Je préfère** aller voir un film **plutôt qu'**un concert.

**Je préfère** le vin à la bière.

**Je préfère** y aller un autre jour.

**Tu préfères** les films français **ou** américains?

**I prefer** arthouse films.

**I'd rather** see a film **than** go to a concert.

**I prefer** wine **to** beer.

**I'd rather** go another day.

**Do you prefer** French **or** American films?

If you want to ask other people what they like, use **Tu aimes...?** (*Do you like...?*) for someone you know well, and **Vous aimez...?** for someone you do not know well, or for more than one person.

### Do you like...?

**Tu aimes** les comédies musicales?

**Vous aimez** aller au cinéma?

**Tu n'aimes pas** le football?

**Do you like** musicals?

**Do you like** going to the cinema?

**Don't you like** football?



If you want to ask someone whether they enjoyed a play, film and so on, you can ask **Ça t'a plu?** (*Did you enjoy it?*).

### Did you enjoy it?

<b>Ça t'a plu?</b>	<b>Did you enjoy it?</b>
<b>Ça m'a vraiment plu.</b>	<b>I really enjoyed it.</b>
<b>Ça ne m'a pas plu du tout.</b>	<b>I didn't enjoy it at all.</b>

## EXPRESSING OPINIONS

If you want to express your opinion of something you've seen or of somewhere you've been, you can use the verbs **croire** and **penser** to say what you think.

### I think...

<b>Je pense que</b> ça va te plaire.	<b>I think</b> you'll like it.
<b>Je pense qu'</b> ils vont gagner.	<b>I think</b> they'll win.
<b>Tu ne penses pas que</b> la pièce était un peu longue?	<b>Don't you think</b> the play was a bit long?
<b>Je crois que</b> c'est une actrice formidable.	<b>I think</b> she is a fantastic actress.
<b>Je crois que</b> c'est un bon film.	<b>I think</b> it's a good film.

## BON À SAVOIR!

Remember that you have to use **que** (*that*) in French, even though it's optional in English.

### In my opinion...

<p><b>À mon avis</b>, Spielberg est un metteur en scène formidable.</p> <p><b>À mon avis</b>, cette salle de concert est sans pareille.</p> <p><b>À mon avis</b>, la fin laissait vraiment à désirer.</p>	<p><b>In my opinion</b>, Spielberg is a wonderful director.</p> <p><b>In my opinion</b>, this concert hall is second to none.</p> <p><b>In my view</b>, the ending was very weak.</p>
---	---

### What do you think of...?

<p><b>Qu'est-ce que vous pensez de ses films?</b></p> <p><b>Qu'est-ce que tu penses du rap?</b></p> <p><b>Qu'est-ce que tu en dis, de ce café?</b></p>	<p><b>What do you think of his films?</b></p> <p><b>What do you think of rap music?</b></p> <p><b>What do you make of this bar?</b></p>
--	---

If you want to agree or disagree with someone, you can say **je suis d'accord** (*I agree*) or **je ne suis pas d'accord** (*I don't agree*).

### I agree...

<p><b>Je suis d'accord.</b></p> <p><b>Je suis d'accord</b> avec toi.</p> <p><b>Je suis</b> totalement <b>d'accord</b> avec ce que vous dites.</p>	<p><b>I agree.</b></p> <p><b>I agree</b> with you.</p> <p><b>I totally agree</b> with what you say.</p>
---	---

Non, **je ne suis pas d'accord.**

**Je ne suis pas du tout d'accord.**

No, **I don't agree.**

**I don't agree at all.**

## ASKING FOR PERMISSION

When you're out, you may want to ask someone if it's OK for you to do something. One useful way of asking for permission is to use **Est-ce que je peux...?** (*Can I...?*) or **Est-ce qu'on peut...?** (*Can we...?*). **peux** and **peut** are from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [here](#).

### Can I...?

<b>Est-ce que je peux</b> m'asseoir n'importe où?	<b>Can I</b> sit anywhere?
<b>Est-ce que je peux</b> payer par carte?	<b>Can I</b> pay by card?
<b>Est-ce que je peux</b> prendre cette chaise?	<b>Can I</b> take this chair?
<b>Est-ce qu'on peut</b> s'installer en terrasse?	<b>Can we</b> sit outside?
<b>Est-ce qu'on peut</b> fumer en terrasse?	<b>Can we</b> smoke on the terrace?

### Do you mind...?

<b>Ça vous dérange</b> si je fume?	<b>Do you mind</b> if I smoke?
<b>Ça vous dérange</b> si on s'asseyait ici?	<b>Do you mind</b> if we sit here?
<b>Vous permettez</b> que je me	<b>Do you mind</b> if I join you?

joigne à vous?

## LISTEN OUT FOR

Here are some key phrases you are likely to hear when you're going out.

Où voulez-vous vous asseoir?	Where would you like to sit?
Vos billets, s'il vous plaît.	Can I see your tickets, please?
Voulez-vous acheter un programme?	Would you like to buy a programme?
Ça vous dérange d'échanger de place avec moi?	Would you mind swapping places?
Tu es libre demain?	Are you free tomorrow?
Je ne suis pas libre la semaine prochaine.	I'm busy next week.
Quand est-ce que ça t'arrange?	When would be a good time for you?
Je t'offre un verre.	Let me get you a drink.
C'est moi qui offre.	This is on me.
Tu as passé une bonne soirée?	Did you have a good time tonight?
Merci de m'avoir invité.	Thank you for inviting me.
Merci, vous n'auriez pas dû.	Thank you, you shouldn't have.
Qu'est-ce que je vous sers?	What can I get you?

## Lifestyle Tips

### In a café or bar:

- You generally don't need to go to the bar to be served. The waiter will come to you. In small towns, the waiter will just leave **l'addition** (*the bill*) on your table, and you pay when you're ready. In busy places, they might ask you to pay as soon as you get your drinks.
- If you ask for **un café**, you will be given an espresso. You need to specify if you want a large coffee **un grand café** or **un café allongé**. A white coffee is **un café au lait**.
- You need to specify that you want your tea with milk, otherwise it will be served black or with lemon. Ask for **un thé au lait**.
- The price of drinks is cheaper at the bar than sitting inside, which in turn is less expensive than sitting outside (**en terrasse**).
- Expressions for *Cheers!* in French include **À votre santé!** (shortened to **Santé!**), **À la vôtre!** and **Tchin-tchin!** To one person you know well, you will say **À ta santé!** or **À la tienne!**

### At somebody's house:

- You may be invited for **le dîner** (*dinner*), **le déjeuner** (*lunch*), or sometimes just **l'apéritif** – a drink before a meal. If you don't know someone very well (new neighbours for example), it's a good way of getting to know them without having to spend too long with them!

- When invited to someone's house for dinner, French people usually bring flowers or chocolates rather than wine as a present. If a French-speaking person brings you a gift, you can always say **merci, tu n'aurais pas dû** (*thank you, you shouldn't have*).

### **At the cinema:**

- New films come out on a Wednesday (**mercredi**) in France (because French school kids are usually off on a Wednesday afternoon).

### **Closing times:**

- Times may vary a little depending on the area of France you're in, but usually **bars** close around 1 am – **à une heure du matin**. **Les boîtes de nuit** (*clubs*) tend to close between 3 and 5.

# Museums, monuments and much more

## Passez une bonne journée! – Have a nice day!

If you're planning to see the sights in a French-speaking city or country, the phrases in this unit will give you the confidence to ask where you can go, what you can do there and how much it will cost using natural French.

### SAYING WHAT YOU WANT TO DO

You may need to be able to say what you'd like to do in French. To do this, you can use **je voudrais** (*I'd like*). **voudrais** comes from the verb **vouloir**. For more information on **vouloir**, see [here](#).

#### **I'd like to...**

<b>Je voudrais</b> monter au clocher.	<b>I'd like to</b> go up the church tower.
<b>Je voudrais</b> prendre des photos de ce tableau, si c'est possible.	<b>I'd like to</b> take some pictures of this painting, if that's OK.
<b>On voudrait</b> aller à la cathédrale en bus.	<b>We'd like to</b> take the bus to the cathedral.

**On voudrait** visiter  
l'exposition de peintures.

**We'd like to** see the art  
exhibition.

You may also want to show your enthusiasm about doing something. To say *I'd love to*, you can use **j'aimerais vraiment**, or **ça me plairait vraiment de** followed by a verb in the infinitive.

### **I'd love to...**

<b>J'aimerais vraiment</b> voir la grotte de Lascaux.	<b>I'd love to</b> see the cave paintings of Lascaux.
<b>J'aimerais vraiment</b> emmener les enfants au parc Astérix.	<b>I'd love to</b> take the kids to the Astérix theme park.
<b>Elle aimerait vraiment</b> voir le Mont Saint- Michel.	<b>She'd love to</b> see the Mont Saint-Michel.
<b>Ça me plairait vraiment</b> <b>de</b> faire un baptême de parapente.	<b>I'd love to</b> try paragliding.

## **TALKING ABOUT YOUR PLANS**

It is very likely that you will want to talk about what you are planning to do on your trip. In English we often say *I'm going to* to talk about the future. French works the same way. To say that you're going to do something, use **je vais** (*I'm going to*) or **on va** (*we're going to*) followed by a verb. **vais** and **va** come from the verb **aller**. For more information on **aller**, see [here](#).

### **I'm going to...**

<b>Je vais</b> visiter le château de	<b>I'm going to</b> visit the
--------------------------------------	-------------------------------



Versailles. <b>Je vais</b> téléphoner pour savoir si c'est ouvert le dimanche.	Palace of Versailles. <b>I'm going to</b> phone to find out if it's open on Sundays.
<b>On va</b> emmener les enfants avec nous.	<b>We're going to</b> take the kids with us.
<b>Est-ce que tu vas</b> faire toute la visite guidée?	<b>Are you going to</b> do the whole guided tour?

You can use both **je compte** and **j'ai l'intention de** to talk about what you intend to do.

### I intend to...

<b>Je compte</b> y aller avec un guide de haute montagne.	<b>I intend to</b> go with a mountain guide.
<b>On compte</b> faire le tour des volcans d'Auvergne cet été.	<b>We intend to</b> do the Auvergne volcano trail this summer.
<b>Est-ce que vous comptez</b> y passer beaucoup de temps?	<b>Do you intend to</b> spend much time there?
<b>J'ai l'intention de</b> retourner au musée d'Art et d'Industrie la prochaine fois.	<b>I intend to</b> go back to the musée d'Art et d'Industrie next time.
Qu'est-ce que <b>vous avez l'intention de</b> visiter en premier?	What <b>do you plan to</b> visit first?

If you want to talk about the plans that have been made, you can use **je dois** followed by the infinitive, which is the equivalent of *I'm to*. **dois** comes from **devoir**. For more information on **devoir**, see [here](#).

## I'm to...

<p><b>Je dois</b> retrouver le groupe à quatre heures.</p> <p><b>On doit</b> passer la nuit dans un refuge et atteindre le sommet le lendemain.</p> <p><b>On doit</b> visiter les jardins l'après-midi.</p> <p>À quelle heure <b>est-ce qu'on doit</b> arriver?</p>	<p><b>I'm to</b> meet up with the group at four.</p> <p><b>We're to</b> spend the night in a mountain hut and reach the summit the following day.</p> <p><b>We're to</b> visit the grounds in the afternoon.</p> <p>What time <b>are we supposed to</b> get there?</p>
---	--

## MAKING SUGGESTIONS

You may wish to make a suggestion to your colleagues or friends in French. One way of doing this is to use **je propose de** (*I suggest*) followed by the verb in the infinitive. **propose** comes from the verb **proposer**. For more information on **-er** verbs like **proposer**, see [here](#).

## I suggest...

<p><b>Je propose de</b> visiter l'écomusée.</p> <p><b>Je propose de</b> pique-niquer dans le parc.</p> <p><b>Je propose de</b> reporter la visite du zoo à lundi.</p> <p><b>Qu'est-ce que vous proposez</b> comme activité?</p>	<p><b>I suggest</b> we visit the heritage centre.</p> <p><b>I suggest</b> we have a picnic in the park.</p> <p><b>I say</b> we postpone the trip to the zoo until Monday.</p> <p><b>What do you suggest</b> we do?</p>
---	--

## BON À SAVOIR!

Don't worry, you won't be proposing to anyone by using **je propose!** The French expression for *to propose to somebody* is **demander quelqu'un en mariage.**

You can make a suggestion using the phrase **Pourquoi ne pas...?** (*Why don't...?*). You will notice that French speakers very often omit **ne** to make sentences shorter.

### Why don't...?

<b>Pourquoi ne pas</b> faire le tour de la vieille ville à pied?	<b>Why don't</b> we walk round the old town?
<b>Pourquoi tu ne prends pas</b> des photos depuis la tour?	<b>Why don't</b> you take some pictures from the tower?
<b>Pourquoi pas</b> louer une carriole pour voir la ville?	<b>Why don't</b> we hire a horse-drawn carriage to see the town?
<b>Pourquoi tu prends pas</b> le métro pour aller à Montmartre?	<b>Why don't</b> you take the underground to go to Montmartre?

Another way of making suggestions is to say **on devrait** (*we should*). **devrait** comes from the verb **devoir**. For more information on **devoir**, see [here](#).

### We should...

<b>On devrait</b> monter en téléphérique.	<b>We should</b> take the cable car to the top.
<b>On devrait</b> revenir demain pour voir le reste.	<b>We should</b> come back tomorrow to see the rest.

**Tu devrais** aller voir le spectacle son et lumière ce soir.

**Vous devriez** louer un vélo pour faire le tour de l'île.

**You should** go to the sound and light show tonight.

**You should** hire a bike to cycle round the island.

## ASKING FOR INFORMATION

If you need some information, many of the questions you will be asking can be answered by *yes* or *no*. You can either put **est-ce que** before what you want to know or alternatively you can raise the tone of your voice at the end of the sentence – this will make you sound more informal.

**Is...?**

<b>Est-ce que</b> le château <b>est</b> intéressant?	<b>Is</b> the castle interesting?
<b>Est-ce que</b> la visite <b>est</b> guidée?	<b>Is</b> it a guided tour?
L'entrée du musée <b>est</b> gratuite ou est-ce qu'il faut payer?	<b>Is</b> the museum free or do you have to pay?
<b>Est-ce que c'est</b> une balade difficile?	<b>Is it</b> a difficult walk?
<b>Est-ce que c'est</b> accessible aux personnes handicapées?	<b>Is there</b> easy access for disabled people?

You may also need to ask if something is available in the place you're visiting. Use **Est-ce qu'il y a...?** to ask both *Is there...?* and *Are there...?*

**Is there...?**

<b>Est-ce qu'il y a</b> un office de tourisme dans cette ville?	<b>Is there</b> a tourist information office in this town?
<b>Est-ce qu'il y a</b> quelque chose à voir à Montauban?	<b>Is there</b> anything to see in Montauban?
<b>Est-ce qu'il y a</b> des prix pour les seniors?	<b>Is there</b> a discount for pensioners?
<b>Est-ce qu'il y a</b> des momies dans le musée?	<b>Are there</b> any mummies in the museum?
<b>Qu'est-ce qu'il y a</b> à voir à Lille? Ça mérite d'être visité?	<b>What is there</b> to see in Lille? Is it worth a visit?

In order to obtain more specific information, you can use **quel** (*what*) for a masculine noun and **quelle** (*what*) for a feminine noun.

### What...?

<b>Quel</b> est le meilleur moment pour y aller?	<b>What's</b> the best time to go?
<b>Quelle</b> est la station la plus proche de l'Arc de Triomphe?	<b>What</b> is the nearest station to the Arc de Triomphe?
<b>Quelles</b> sont les heures d'ouverture?	<b>What</b> are the opening hours?
C'est <b>quel</b> genre de peinture?	<b>What</b> type of painting is it?
Le dépliant est écrit <b>en quelle</b> langue?	<b>What</b> language is the leaflet written <b>in</b> ?

### What time...?

<b>À quelle heure est-ce qu'on se retrouve au bus?</b>	<b>What time</b> do we meet at the bus?
<b>À quelle heure</b> ferme le parc d'attractions?	<b>What time</b> does the theme park close?
<b>À quelle heure</b> est la prochaine visite guidée?	<b>What time</b> is the next guided tour?
<b>À quelle heure est-ce qu'on arrive?</b>	<b>What time</b> do we get there?

To ask how much something is, use **Combien coûte...?** (*How much is...?*). To ask how much it costs to do something, use **Ça coûte combien de...?** and then the verb in the infinitive. These come from the verb **coûter**. To find out more about **-er** verbs like **coûter**, see [here](#).

### How much is...?

<b>Combien coûte</b> cette carte postale, s'il vous plaît?	<b>How much is</b> this postcard, please?
<b>Combien coûte</b> un ticket au tarif étudiant?	<b>How much is</b> a student ticket?
<b>Combien coûte</b> la traversée en bateau?	<b>How much is</b> the ferry crossing?
<b>Ça coûte combien de</b> faire une excursion à Pérouges?	<b>How much is it</b> to take a trip to Pérouges?
<b>Ça coûte combien d'y</b> aller en avion?	<b>How much is it</b> to fly there?

### How long...?

<b>Combien de temps</b> dure la visite?	<b>How long</b> does the tour last?
<b>Combien de temps</b> dure la	<b>How long</b> does the boat

promenade en bateau? <b>Combien de temps</b> ça prend pour y aller?	trip last? <b>How long</b> does it take to get there?
--	--

To ask how you do something, you can use **Comment est-ce qu'on...?** (*How do you...?*) followed by the verb in the present tense or **Comment est-ce qu'on fait pour...?** followed by the verb in the infinitive. For more information about the present tense, see [here](#).

### How do you...?

<b>Comment est-ce qu'on</b> va dans la vieille ville?	<b>How do you</b> get to the old town?
<b>Comment est-ce qu'on</b> accède au deuxième étage?	<b>How do you</b> get to the second floor?
<b>Comment est-ce qu'on fait pour</b> choisir la langue du commentaire?	<b>How do you</b> choose which language the commentary's read in?
<b>Comment est-ce qu'on fait pour</b> acheter des tickets?	<b>How do you</b> buy tickets?

## ASKING FOR THINGS

When you're out and about in a French-speaking city or country, you will want to be able to ask for things in French. Use **Est-ce que je peux avoir...?** (*Can I have...?*) or **Est-ce que je pourrais avoir...?** (*Could I have...?*).

### Can I have...?

--	--

**Est-ce que je peux avoir**  
deux entrées pour le  
musée, s'il vous plaît?

**Est-ce que je peux avoir**  
le programme du concert  
de ce soir?

**Est-ce que je pourrais**  
**avoir** un casque pour le  
commentaire?

**Est-ce que je pourrais**  
**avoir** un plan du musée?

**Can I have** two tickets for  
the museum, please?

**Can I have** the programme  
for this evening's concert?

**Could I have** some  
headphones to hear the  
commentary?

**Could I have** a map of the  
museum?

Very often you will want to say that you need something in particular. To do this use **il me faut** or **il me faudrait** (*I need*) – remember that **faudrait** sounds more polite than **faut**.

### I need...

**Il me faut** l'adresse du  
musée.

**Il lui faut** deux tickets de  
plus.

**Il me faudrait** un plan de  
la ville.

**Il nous faudrait** un guide  
qui parle anglais.

**I need** the address of the  
museum.

**She needs** two more  
tickets.

**I need** a street map of the  
city.

**We need** a guide who can  
speak English.

If you want to find out if something is available, use **Est-ce que vous avez...?** or **Est-ce que vous auriez...?** (*Do you have...?* or *Would you have...?*). **avez** and **auriez** are from the verb **avoir**. For more information on **avoir**, see [here](#).

### Do you have...?



<b>Est-ce que vous avez</b> des dépliants en anglais?	<b>Do you have</b> any brochures in English?
<b>Est-ce que vous avez</b> des audioguides dans d'autres langues?	<b>Do you have</b> any audio guides in other languages?
<b>Vous avez</b> un journal local, s'il vous plaît?	<b>Have you got</b> a local newspaper, please?
<b>Vous auriez</b> de la documentation sur les circuits touristiques de la région?	<b>Would you have</b> any information on trips in this area?

When you want to ask if someone can do something for you, use **Est-ce que vous pouvez...?** or **Est-ce que vous pourriez...?** (*Can you...?* or *Could you...?*). These come from the verb **pouvoir**, about which you can find out more [here](#).

### Can you...?

<b>Est-ce que vous pouvez</b> nous prendre en photo?	<b>Can you</b> take a picture of us?
<b>Est-ce que vous pouvez</b> me dire quels sont les horaires de visite?	<b>Can you</b> tell me what the opening hours are?
<b>Est-ce que vous pourriez</b> me faire passer par la vieille ville?	<b>Could you</b> take me through the old town?
<b>Est-ce que vous pourriez</b> m'aider, s'il vous plaît?	<b>Could you</b> help me, please?

## [ASKING FOR PERMISSION](#)

There may be occasions where you want to ask for permission to do something. To do this, use **Est-ce que je peux...?** (*Can I...?*) or **Est-ce que je pourrais...?** (*Could I...?*). **peux** and **pourrais** come from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [here](#).

### Can I...?

<b>Est-ce que je peux</b> prendre des photos?	<b>Can I</b> take pictures?
<b>Est-ce que je peux</b> entrer avec mon sac?	<b>Can I</b> take my bag in?
<b>Est-ce qu'on peut</b> garer la voiture ici?	<b>Can we</b> park our car here?
<b>Est-ce que je pourrais</b> vous emprunter votre guide une seconde?	<b>Could I</b> borrow your guidebook for a second?

Another way of asking for permission is to use **Est-ce que ça vous dérange si...?** (*Do you mind if...?*).

### Do you mind if...?

<b>Est-ce que ça vous dérange si</b> j'entre avec mon sac?	<b>Do you mind if</b> I take my bag inside with me?
<b>Est-ce que ça vous dérange si</b> on s'assoit dans l'herbe?	<b>Do you mind if</b> we sit on the grass?
<b>Est-ce que ça vous dérange si</b> je laisse la poussette ici?	<b>Do you mind if</b> I leave the pushchair here?

### Is it a problem if...?

<b>Est-ce que ça pose un problème si je fume?</b>	<b>Is it a problem if I smoke?</b>
Excusez-moi, <b>est-ce que ça pose un problème si je prends des photos?</b>	Excuse me, <b>is it a problem if I take pictures?</b>
<b>Est-ce que ça vous pose un problème si je paye par carte bleue?</b>	<b>Is it a problem for you if I pay by card?</b>

## **SAYING WHAT YOU LIKE, DISLIKE, PREFER**

If you want to talk about what you like, use **j'aime bien** (*I like*) which is not as strong as **j'aime** or **j'adore** (*I love*). You can also substitute **bien** with **beaucoup** (*a lot*), **vraiment** (*really*) and **assez** (*quite*). To say what you don't like, just use **je n'aime pas**. These come from the verb **aimer**. For more information on **aimer**, see [here](#).

### **I like...**

<b>J'aime bien</b> visiter les galeries d'art moderne.	<b>I like</b> visiting modern art galleries.
<b>J'aime bien</b> les feux d'artifice.	<b>I like</b> firework displays.
<b>J'aime beaucoup</b> cette sculpture.	<b>I like</b> this sculpture <b>a lot</b> .
<b>J'adore</b> les petits villages de Provence.	<b>I love</b> the small villages of Provence.
<b>Tu aimes bien</b> ce genre d'architecture?	<b>Do you like</b> this type of architecture?

### **I don't like...**

---

**Je n'aime pas** les excursions en bus.

**Je n'aime pas** les montagnes russes.

**Je n'aime pas du tout** faire la queue.

**I don't like** bus tours.

**I don't like** roller-coasters.

**I don't like** having to queue **at all**.

If you want to say what you prefer, you can use **je préfère** (*I prefer*). If you want to say that something would suit you better, use **je préférerais** or **j'aimerais mieux** (*I'd rather*).

### I prefer...

**Je préfère** les musées **aux** édifices religieux.

**Je préfère** éviter ce quartier.

**On préfère** y aller à pied **que** de prendre le bus.

**I prefer** museums **to** religious buildings.

**I prefer to** avoid that area.

**We'd rather** walk **than** take the bus.

### I'd rather...

**J'aimerais mieux** passer toute la semaine à Marseille.

**Je préférerais** prendre le funiculaire.

**On aimerait mieux** rejoindre le groupe plus tard.

**On préférerait** profiter du beau temps et aller au musée un autre jour.

**I'd rather** spend the whole week in Marseille.

**I'd rather** take the funicular railway.

**We'd rather** meet up with the group later.

**We'd rather** enjoy the nice weather and go to the museum another day.

## COMPLAINING

You may have to complain about something which you're unhappy with. To do this, you can say **excusez-moi** or **pardon, je voudrais me plaindre** (*excuse me, I wish to complain*) and go on to describe what you're unhappy about.

### **I'm not happy...**

<b>Je ne suis pas content de</b> notre guide.	<b>I'm not happy with</b> our guide.
<b>Je ne suis pas content</b> <b>d'avoir payé si cher pour</b> ça.	<b>I'm not happy that</b> I had to pay so much for it.

### **I'm disappointed...**

<b>Je suis déçu de</b> notre sortie.	<b>I'm disappointed with</b> our trip.
<b>Je suis déçu de</b> la façon dont on nous a traités.	<b>I'm disappointed with</b> the way we were treated.
Les enfants <b>sont déçus de</b> ne pas avoir vu les clowns.	The children <b>were</b> <b>disappointed that</b> they didn't get to see the clowns.

To say what you think of something, use **je trouve que**. The verb **trouver** on its own means *to find*, but when it is followed by **que** it means *to think*. Don't forget to add **que** (*that*) after **trouver**. It's optional in English, but not in French. For more information on **-er** verbs like **trouver**, see [here](#).

### **I think...**

--	--

**Je trouve que** c'est un peu cher pour ce que c'est.

**On trouve que** le guide ne donne pas assez d'explications.

**Je trouve que** ce n'est pas très bien organisé.

**Je n'ai pas trouvé** le musée très intéressant.

**I think** it's a bit expensive for what it is.

**We think that** the guide doesn't explain things clearly enough.

**I don't think** it's very well organized.

**I didn't think** the museum was very interesting.

Another way of expressing your disappointment is to use **c'est dommage que** (*it's a shame that*). The verb that follows is in the subjunctive, which you can find out more about [here](#).

### It's a shame that...

**C'est dommage qu'il n'y ait rien** pour les enfants.

**C'est dommage que** le dépliant ne soit qu'en français.

**C'est dommage que** le bâtiment principal ne soit pas ouvert.

**It's a shame that** there's nothing for children.

**It's a shame that** the leaflet is only in French.

**It's a shame that** the main building isn't open.

### There's...

**Il y a** très peu d'information sur l'histoire de ce lieu.

**Il y a** beaucoup de bruit dans le musée.

**Il n'y a pas**

**There's** very little information about the history of this place.

**There's** a lot of noise in the museum.

**There are no** facilities for

d'aménagements pour les  
handicapés.

the disabled.

## BON À SAVOIR!

Remember that **il y a** translates as both *there is* and *there are*.

## LISTEN OUT FOR

Here are some key phrases you're likely to hear when you're sightseeing.

En quelle langue est-ce que vous voudriez avoir les informations?	What language would you like the information in?
Voici un dépliant en anglais.	Here's a leaflet in English.
Vous avez une carte d'étudiant?	Do you have a student card?
Le musée est ouvert de neuf heures à trois heures.	The museum's open from nine to three.
La galerie est fermée le dimanche.	The gallery's closed on Sundays.
La prochaine visite guidée est à dix heures.	The next guided tour's at ten.
Combien de tickets est-ce que vous voudriez?	How many tickets would you like?
C'est huit euros par personne.	It's eight euros each.
Les photos sont interdites.	You're not allowed to take pictures.
Est-ce que je peux fouiller	Can I search your bag?

vosre sac?

Laissez vosre sac et vosre  
manteau au vestiaire.

Est-ce que ça vous a plu?

Please leave your bag and  
coat in the cloakroom.

Did you enjoy it?



## *Lifestyle Tips*

- The **Journées du Patrimoine** are two days (at the weekend) in mid-September during which you can visit monuments and museums for free. You can find useful information about this event on the website of the French Ministry of Culture (**le ministère de la Culture**) at the following address: <http://www.culture.gouv.fr>.
- Another French cultural event is **la Fête de la musique**. It is a music festival held on the first day of summer (21 June). Throughout France, amateur and professional musicians perform for free in parks, streets and squares.
- In the high season there is often a lot going on; local newspapers are a good way of keeping you informed about social and cultural events and telling you what there is to see in a given area. Remember to have a look at the **marchand de journaux** (*newsagent's*) – you may even find some local newspapers in English!
- If you're planning to go to a French museum or art gallery on a Monday or Tuesday, check that it will be open first, as many of them have their **fermeture hebdomadaire** (*weekly day off*) on these days.
- Unlike many museums in Britain, which are free, French ones are mostly not. A lot of public museums and galleries are free for everyone on the first Sunday of every month (**le 1er dimanche du mois**), however expect long queues!



# Retail therapy.

## Je peux vous aider? – Can I help you?

Whether you're planning to shop for clothes or household items, get in your groceries or just pick up a postcard, this unit will help give you the confidence to find the best bargains and shop till you drop using typical natural French.

### ASKING FOR THINGS

When you're shopping in a French-speaking country, you may be asked **On s'occupe de vous?** (*Are you being attended to?*). If you're just browsing, say **je regarde seulement** (*I'm just browsing*), or if someone else is already serving you, you can say **on s'occupe de moi, merci.** (*I'm already being served, thanks*). Alternatively, if you know what you want, use **je voudrais** (*I'd like*). **voudrais** is from the verb **vouloir** (*to want*). For more information on **vouloir**, see [here](#).

**I'd like...**

<p><b>Je voudrais</b> deux kilos de pommes de terre, s'il vous plaît.</p>	<p><b>I'd like</b> two kilos of potatoes, please.</p>
---	---

**Je voudrais** une carte mémoire pour mon appareil photo numérique.

**Je voudrais** un melon bien mûr, s'il vous plaît.

**Je voudrais** essayer ces chaussures en 38.

**J'en veux** deux de plus, s'il vous plaît.

**I'd like** a memory card for my digital camera.

**I'd like** a melon that's nice and ripe, please.

**I'd like** to try a 38 in these shoes.

**I want** two more of these, please.

### Could I have...?

**Est-ce que je pourrais avoir** un kilo d'oranges, s'il vous plaît?

**Est-ce que je pourrais avoir** un carnet de timbres?

**Est-ce que je pourrais avoir** un sac, s'il vous plaît?

**Could I have** a kilo of oranges, please?

**Could I have** a book of stamps?

**Could I have** a carrier bag, please?

You can also say what you are looking for by using **je cherche** or **je suis à la recherche de** (*I'm looking for*).

### I'm looking for...

**Je cherche** de la coriandre fraîche.

**Je cherche** du tofu.

**Je cherche** un short pour mon fils qui a dix ans.

**Je suis à la recherche**

**I'm looking for** fresh coriander.

**I'm looking for** tofu.

**I'm looking for** shorts for my ten-year-old son.

**I'm looking for** a present

d'un cadeau pour un tout-petit.

for a toddler.

At the market or in shops where an assistant is serving you, you can ask for something by saying **donnez-moi** (*give me*) followed by the amount that you want and **s'il vous plaît**. This comes from the verb **donner** (*to give*) in the imperative. For more information on the imperative, see [here](#).

### Give me...

<b>Donnez-moi</b> une baguette bien cuite, s'il vous plaît.	<b>Give me</b> one well-fired baguette, please.
<b>Donnez-moi</b> deux bouteilles de pineau, s'il vous plaît.	<b>Give me</b> two bottles of pineau, please.
<b>Donnez-moi</b> cinq cent grammes de marrons.	<b>Give me</b> half a kilo of chestnuts.
<b>Mettez-moi</b> deux douzaines d'huîtres, s'il vous plaît.	<b>Give me</b> two dozen oysters, please.

When you've chosen what you want to buy, you can say **je vais prendre**, (*I'll take*). If you haven't made up your mind, say **je ne suis pas encore décidé** (*I haven't decided yet*).

### I'll take...

<b>Je vais prendre</b> ces deux cartes postales.	<b>I'll take</b> these two postcards.
<b>Je vais prendre</b> les bleues à la place des marron.	<b>I'll take</b> the blue ones instead of the brown ones.
<b>Je vais prendre</b> le sac que vous m'avez montré en	<b>I'll take</b> the bag you first showed me.

premier.

**Je ne vais pas prendre** le jean finalement.

**I won't take** the jeans after all.

## SAYING WHAT YOU HAVE TO DO

Shopping isn't always what you'd choose to do, is it? To say that you have to buy something or that you have to do something in French, you can use **il faut que** (*I have to*) and then the verb in the subjunctive. For more information on the subjunctive, see [here](#).

### **I have to...**

<b>Il faut que</b> j'achète de nouvelles chaussures.	<b>I have to</b> buy some new shoes.
<b>Il faut que</b> je passe à la boulangerie.	<b>I have to</b> stop at the baker's.
<b>Il faut que</b> tu demandes à la vendeuse pour essayer.	<b>You have to</b> ask the shop assistant if you want to try things on.
<b>Il faut qu'</b> on achète un nouvel aspirateur.	<b>We have to</b> buy a new vacuum cleaner.

### **I must...**

<b>Je dois</b> trouver une robe pour la fête de samedi.	<b>I must</b> find a dress for the party on Saturday.
<b>Je dois</b> trouver un cadeau d'anniversaire pour ma sœur.	<b>I must</b> find a birthday present for my sister.
<b>Je dois</b> acheter un costume pour mon entretien.	<b>I must</b> buy a suit for the interview.

To talk about things you need, use **il me faut** or **il me faudrait** (*I need*).

### **I need...**

<b>Il me faut</b> des lunettes de ski.	<b>I need</b> some ski goggles.
<b>Il me faut</b> des croissants. Il vous en reste?	<b>I need</b> some croissants. Do you have any left?
<b>Il me faudrait</b> des piles pour mon réveil.	<b>I need</b> some batteries for my alarm clock.
<b>Qu'est-ce qu'il te faut</b> pour les vacances?	What <b>do you need</b> for your holidays?

## **TALKING ABOUT YOUR PLANS**

You may want to talk about what you're thinking of buying or where you're thinking of going. French uses the phrase **je pense** (*I'm thinking*) followed by a verb in the infinitive.

### **I'm thinking of...**

<b>Je pense</b> aller au marché demain.	<b>I'm thinking of</b> going to the market tomorrow.
<b>Je pense</b> faire les boutiques à Paris.	<b>I'm thinking of</b> going shopping in Paris.
<b>On ne pense pas</b> aller en ville ce week-end.	<b>We don't think we'll</b> go into town this weekend.
<b>Tu penses</b> passer au supermarché en rentrant?	<b>Do you think you'll</b> stop at the supermarket on your way home?

### **I'm going to...**

<b>Je vais</b> acheter un nouveau maillot de bain.	<b>I'm going to</b> buy a new swimming costume.
<b>Je vais</b> faire les soldes ce week-end.	<b>I'm going to</b> go to the sales this weekend.
<b>On va</b> acheter un nouveau lit.	<b>We're going to</b> buy a new bed.

### **I hope to...**

<b>J'espère</b> trouver quelque chose à moins de 20 euros.	<b>I hope to</b> find something for under 20 euros.
<b>J'espère</b> trouver un canapé à moitié prix pendant les soldes.	<b>I hope to</b> get a half-price sofa in the sales.
<b>On espère</b> trouver un cadeau pour Laurent et Mélanie.	<b>We hope to</b> find a present for Laurent and Mélanie.

## **EXPRESSING OPINIONS**

As you look at items for sale, you may well want to make comments to a French-speaking friend or to the shop assistant. To give your opinion, use **je trouve** (*I think*). This comes from the verb **trouver**. For more information on **-er** verbs like **trouver**, see [here](#).

### **I think...**

<b>Je trouve</b> cette armoire vraiment belle.	<b>I think</b> this wardrobe is really beautiful.
<b>Je trouve</b> ce magasin beaucoup trop cher.	<b>I think</b> this shop is far too expensive.



**Je trouve que** ce pull n'est pas assez chaud.

**Comment est-ce que tu trouves** cette chemise?

**I don't think** this jumper is warm enough.

**What do you think of** this shirt?

### In my opinion...

**À mon avis**, cette robe est un peu trop longue.

**À mon avis**, ce rouge à lèvres est légèrement trop foncé.

**À votre avis**, lequel de ces deux pantalons me va le mieux?

J'ai besoin de **ton avis sur** des appareils photos numériques.

**In my opinion**, this dress is a bit too long.

**In my opinion**, this lipstick is slightly too dark.

**In your opinion**, which of these two pairs of trousers suits me better?

I need **your opinion on** some digital cameras.

You can use **je dirais que** (*I'd say that*) to give your opinion about something. **dirais** comes from the verb **dire**. Here, it is in the conditional, which can be used to say things in a less categorical way.

### I'd say...

**Je dirais que** c'est un peu serré pour moi.

**Moi, je dirais que** ce cadeau va lui plaire.

**Je dirais que** c'est une affaire.

**Qu'est-ce que tu dis de** cette lampe?

**I'd say** it's a bit tight for me.

**I'd say that** she's going to like this present.

**I'd say that** it's a bargain.

**What do you think of** this lamp?

If you want to ask for someone's opinion or advice, you can use **Vous me conseillez de...?** (*Do you think I should...?*). For more information on **-er** verbs like **conseiller**, see [here](#).

### Do you think I should...?

<b>Vous me conseillez de</b> prendre le bleu ou le rouge?	<b>Do you think I should</b> take the blue one or the red one?
Lequel <b>est-ce que tu me</b> <b>conseilles d'acheter?</b>	Which <b>do you think I</b> <b>should</b> buy?
Qu' <b>est-ce que vous me</b> <b>conseilleriez?</b>	What <b>would you</b> <b>recommend?</b>

## ASKING FOR INFORMATION

If you're in a strange town, you may want to ask for some information, for example if there is a particular shop in the area. Simple! Both *Is there...?* and *Are there...?* are **Est-ce qu'il y a...?** in French.

### Is there...?

<b>Est-ce qu'il y a un</b> supermarché près d'ici?	<b>Is there</b> a supermarket near here?
<b>Est-ce qu'il y a un parking</b> près du marché?	<b>Is there</b> a car park near the market?
<b>Est-ce qu'il y a un rayon</b> bio?	<b>Is there</b> an organic food section?
<b>Est-ce que qu'il y a une</b> garantie?	<b>Is there</b> a guarantee?
<b>Il y a des caddies?</b>	<b>Are there</b> any trolleys?

## Is this...?

<b>C'est</b> le seul modèle que vous avez?	<b>Is this</b> the only model you stock?
<b>C'est</b> la plus grande taille que vous avez?	<b>Is this</b> the biggest size you have?
<b>C'est</b> tout ce que vous avez comme couleurs?	<b>Are these</b> the only colours you have?
<b>C'est</b> le prix à la pièce ou au kilo?	<b>Is this</b> the price for one or per kilo?

To find out if something's available, you'll need to use the question **Est-ce que vous avez...?** (*Do you have...?*) or **Est-ce que vous auriez...?** (*Would you have...?*). **avez** and **auriez** are from the verb **avoir**. For more information on **avoir**, see [here](#).

## Do you have...?

<b>Est-ce que vous avez</b> d'autres modèles?	<b>Do you have</b> any other models?
<b>Est-ce que vous l'avez</b> en plus petit?	<b>Do you have it</b> in a smaller size?
<b>Est-ce que vous l'auriez</b> dans une autre couleur?	<b>Would you have it</b> in another colour?
<b>Est-ce que vous faites</b> le même modèle en vert?	<b>Do you do</b> the same model in green?
<b>Est-ce que vous faites</b> des vêtements pour enfants?	<b>Do you do</b> children's clothes?

In order to obtain specific information, for example, where something is, which item you should buy or when something will happen, you may want to ask **Où...?** (*Where...?*), **Quel...?** (*Which...?*) or **Quand...?** (*When...?*).

## Where...?

<p><b>Où</b> est le distributeur le plus proche, s'il vous plaît?</p> <p><b>Où</b> est la caisse, s'il vous plaît?</p> <p>Est-ce que vous pouvez me dire <b>où</b> est le rayon cosmétiques, s'il vous plaît?</p> <p>Vous pouvez me dire <b>où</b> se trouve l'accueil, s'il vous plaît?</p> <p><b>Où est-ce qu'</b>on peut trouver des lunettes de soleil?</p>	<p><b>Where's</b> the nearest cash point, please?</p> <p><b>Where's</b> the cash desk, please?</p> <p>Can you tell me <b>where</b> the cosmetics department is, please?</p> <p>Can you tell me <b>where</b> customers services are, please?</p> <p><b>Where</b> can I find sunglasses?</p>
---	--

## Which...?

<p><b>Quelle</b> marque <b>est-ce que</b> vous conseillez?</p> <p><b>Quelles</b> piles <b>est-ce qu'</b>il faut que j'achète pour mon appareil photo?</p> <p><b>À quel</b> étage est le rayon vêtements pour hommes?</p> <p>Le marché se tient <b>quel jour</b>?</p> <p><b>Lequel est-ce que</b> tu vas prendre?</p> <p><b>Laquelle</b> de ces deux webcams est la moins</p>	<p><b>Which</b> brand do you recommend?</p> <p><b>Which</b> batteries do I need to buy for my camera?</p> <p><b>Which</b> floor is the menswear department <b>on</b>?</p> <p><b>What day's</b> market day?</p> <p><b>Which one</b> are you going to get?</p> <p><b>Which one</b> of these two webcams is the cheapest?</p>
--	--

chère?

## BON À SAVOIR!

To say *which one* use **lequel** for masculine singular nouns and **laquelle** for feminine singular things. To say *which ones* use **lesquels** for masculine plural things and **lesquelles** for feminine plural things.

### When...?

<b>Quand est-ce que</b> vous fermez pour la pause déjeuner?	<b>When</b> do you close for lunch?
<b>Quand est-ce que</b> les soldes commencent?	<b>When</b> do the sales start?

### What time...?

<b>À quelle heure est-ce que</b> vous ouvrez le matin?	<b>What time</b> do you open in the morning?
<b>À quelle heure est-ce que</b> vous arrivez sur le marché?	<b>What time</b> do you arrive on the market?

To be able to ask the price of something you can use either **Combien coûte...?** or **À combien est...?** (*How much is...?*). If you're asking about more than one thing, use **Combien coûtent...?** or **À combien sont...?** (*How much are...?*).

### How much is...?

<b>Combien coûte</b> une bouteille de jus d'orange?	<b>How much is</b> a bottle of orange juice?
---	--

<b>Combien coûtent</b> les figues, s'il vous plaît?	<b>How much are</b> the figs, please?
<b>À combien est</b> cet abat-jour?	<b>How much is</b> this lamp shade?
<b>À combien sont</b> les cerises au kilo?	<b>How much are</b> cherries per kilo?
Je vous dois <b>combien</b> ?	<b>How much</b> do I owe you?

To ask whether you can do something, use **Est-ce que je peux...?** (*Can I...?*).

### Can I...?

<b>Est-ce que je peux</b> payer par carte?	<b>Can I</b> pay by credit card?
<b>Est-ce que je peux</b> avoir un paquet-cadeau?	<b>Can I</b> have it gift-wrapped?
<b>Est-ce que vous pouvez</b> me faire un prix?	<b>Can you</b> give me a discount?

## SAYING WHAT YOU LIKE, DISLIKE, PREFER

To say that you like something, you can say **ça me plaît** (literally, *this pleases me*). You use **me plaît** with singular words and **me plaisent** with plural ones.

### I like...

Cette boutique <b>me plaît</b> .	<b>I like</b> this shop.
Ces chaussures <b>me plaisent</b> beaucoup.	<b>I like</b> these shoes very much.

Achète-le, si **ça te plaît**.

**J'aime bien** les antiquaires.

**J'adore** faire les soldes avec une copine.

Get it if **you like it**.

**I like** antique shops.

**I love** going to the sales with a friend.

### **I don't like...**

Ce style **ne me plaît pas**.

Ces gants **me plaisent moins**.

**Je n'aime pas** les grands magasins.

**On n'aime pas** faire la queue.

**I don't like** this style.

**I don't like** these gloves as much.

**I don't like** big stores.

**We don't like** queuing.

Of course you might not just want to say what you like and what you don't like when out shopping, you may also want to talk about what you prefer. To say that you prefer A to B, use **je préfère A à B**. For more information on à followed by **le** or **les**, see [here](#).

### **I prefer...**

**Je préfère** le vert.

**Je préfère** les petites boutiques **aux** supermarchés.

**On préfère** les produits frais **aux** surgelés.

**Je préfère** faire mes achats en ligne **plutôt que** d'aller dans les magasins.

**I prefer** the green one.

**I prefer** small shops **to** supermarkets.

**We prefer** fresh produce **to** frozen.

**I prefer to** buy online **rather than** go to the shops.

## I'd rather...

<b>J'aimerais mieux</b> quelque chose de plus classique.	<b>I'd rather</b> go for something more classic.
<b>J'aimerais mieux</b> du café équitable.	<b>I'd rather</b> have fairtrade coffee.
<b>J'aimerais mieux</b> essayer avant d'acheter.	<b>I'd rather</b> try before I buy.
<b>On aimerait mieux</b> n'acheter que des produits locaux.	<b>We'd rather</b> buy only local produce.

## MAKING SUGGESTIONS

On shopping expeditions you may well want to make suggestions about what to choose or what to do next. You can do this by putting **Et si...?** (*How about...?*) at the beginning of a sentence. The verb that follows is in the imperfect. You can find out more about the imperfect [here](#).

## How about...?

<b>Et si</b> on faisait les boutiques une autre fois?	<b>How about</b> we go shopping another time?
<b>Et si</b> on essayait cette nouvelle librairie?	<b>How about</b> trying that new bookshop?
<b>Et si</b> on l'achetait sur Internet?	<b>How about</b> we buy it online?

To suggest what you and your friends could do, you can use **on pourrait** (*we could*).

## We could...



<b>On pourrait</b> aller voir dans un autre magasin.	<b>We could</b> have a look in another shop.
<b>On pourrait</b> leur demander de nous le commander.	<b>We could</b> ask them to order it for us.
<b>Tu pourrais</b> leur demander un rabais.	<b>You could</b> ask them for a discount.

Another simple way of making suggestions is to raise the tone of your voice at the end of a sentence. This will make you sound slightly more informal.

### Shall I...

<b>Je prends</b> du pain?	<b>Shall I get</b> some bread?
<b>J'achète</b> un gâteau pour ce soir?	<b>Shall I get</b> a cake for tonight?
<b>On achète</b> des timbres?	<b>Shall we buy</b> some stamps?
<b>On va</b> au supermarché?	<b>Shall we go</b> to the supermarket?

When offering to do something, you can say **laisse-moi** or **laissez-moi** (*let me*). It's followed by a verb in the infinitive.

### Let me...

<b>Laisse-moi</b> payer.	<b>Let me</b> pay for this.
<b>Laisse-moi</b> porter les paquets.	<b>Let me</b> carry the shopping.
<b>Laissez-moi</b> vous aider.	<b>Let me</b> help you.

## ASKING FOR PERMISSION

To ask if you can do something, such as try on an item of clothing, use **Est-ce que je peux...?** (*Can I...?*) or **Est-ce que je pourrais...?** (*Could I...?*). These come from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [here](#).

### Can I...?

<b>Est-ce que je peux</b> essayer cette jupe?	<b>Can I</b> try on this skirt?
<b>Est-ce que je peux</b> garder le cintre?	<b>Can I</b> keep the hanger?
<b>Je peux</b> les essayer?	<b>Can I</b> try them on?
<b>Je pourrais</b> réfléchir encore quelques minutes?	<b>Could I</b> think about it for another few minutes?

### I'll... if you don't mind

<b>Je vais</b> réessayer l'autre pantalon, <b>si ça ne vous dérange pas.</b>	<b>I'll</b> try the other trousers on again, <b>if you don't mind.</b>
<b>Je vais</b> regarder les autres modèles, <b>si ça ne vous dérange pas.</b>	<b>I'll</b> have a look at the other models, <b>if you don't mind.</b>
<b>Je vais</b> repasser samedi, <b>si ça ne vous fait rien.</b>	<b>I'll</b> come back on Saturday, <b>if you don't mind.</b>

To ask for permission, you can use **Est-ce que vous permettez que...** (*May I...?*) followed by the verb in the subjunctive. You can find out more about the subjunctive [here](#).

## May I...?

<p><b>Est-ce que vous permettez que je</b> regarde de plus près?</p> <p><b>Vous permettez que je</b> goûte une de vos oranges?</p> <p><b>Vous permettez qu'on</b> sorte le réveil de son emballage?</p> <p><b>Vous permettez que ma fille</b> essaie la veste qui est en vitrine?</p>	<p><b>May I</b> have a closer look?</p> <p><b>May I</b> try one of your oranges?</p> <p><b>Can my daughter</b> try on the jacket that's in the window?</p> <p><b>May we</b> take the alarm clock out of its box?</p>
---	--

## LISTEN OUT FOR

Here are some key phrases you may hear when out shopping.

<p>On s'occupe de vous?</p> <p>Est-ce que je peux vous aider?</p> <p>Vous faites quelle taille?</p> <p>Vous avez besoin d'une plus petite taille?</p> <p>Vous voulez que j'aille chercher la taille au-dessus?</p> <p>Vous l'aimeriez en quelle couleur?</p> <p>Vous pensiez mettre combien?</p>	<p>Are you being served?</p> <p>Can I help you?</p> <p>What size are you?</p> <p>Do you need a smaller size?</p> <p>Shall I look for a larger size for you?</p> <p>What colour would you like it in?</p> <p>How much were you thinking of spending?</p>
--	---

On n'en a pas en rayon  
pour l'instant.

Et avec ceci?

C'est pour offrir?

Je vous fais un paquet-  
cadeau?

Malheureusement, on  
n'accepte que les espèces.

Je regrette, mais on ne  
prend pas les cartes de  
crédit.

Tapez votre code, s'il vous  
plaît.

We don't have any in stock  
just now.

Anything else?

Is it a present for someone?

Shall I giftwrap it for you?

It's cash only, I'm afraid.

I'm afraid we don't take  
credit cards.

Your PIN number, please.

## *Lifestyle Tips*

- When entering and leaving a shop in France, you usually say **Bonjour/Au revoir, monsieur/madame/messieurs-dames** (*hello/goodbye*) to the shopkeeper and the people in the shop, especially in small towns and villages where there is less anonymity.
- In an attempt to be more environmentally-friendly, many supermarkets have stopped providing plastic bags and expect their customers to re-use those they have at home. If you forget yours, you can still buy one from the cashier. You can ask for **un sac réutilisable** (*a reusable shopping bag*).
- You may have to take a ticket to get a place in the queue at the meat or cheese counters in some supermarkets. If you can't see where to get your ticket from, try asking **Où est-ce qu'on prend son ticket?** (*Where do I get my ticket?*).
- At the market and in the countryside, you might hear people use an old weight unit called **la livre**, which means half a kilo (**une livre de tomates, s'il vous plaît**).
- Most sellers on vegetable stalls at French markets will give you **un bouquet de persil** (*a bunch of parsley*) with the fruit and vegetables you buy.
- If you're looking for bargains at the market, your best bet is to go at around noon, when **les marchands** (*sellers*) begin to clear

their stalls. They often have goods that won't keep and that they'll be happy to sell you for next to nothing.

- In independent shops selling gift items and in most shops around Christmas, you may be asked whether your item is a present for someone (**C'est pour offrir?**) and if you want it gift-wrapped (**Je vous fais un paquet-cadeau?**).

## Service with a smile

### Service irréprochable! – Excellent service!

The phrases in this unit will help you make sure you communicate your needs when you're in a French-speaking country in natural French. You could be at the bank or police station, the hairdresser's, looking for insurance or seeking advice on any other kind of service – the language you need is covered here.

#### GREETINGS

It is crucial if you want to sound natural in French that you greet people correctly. Say **bonjour**, **monsieur/madame/mademoiselle** to someone you've never met; to someone you know a little, you can just say **bonjour**. Note that there is no equivalent in French for *good morning*, or *good afternoon* to say hello – French-speaking people just say **bonjour** during the day and **bonsoir** in the evening.

#### **Have a good...!**

<b>Bonne</b> journée!	<b>Have a good</b> day!
<b>Bon</b> week-end!	<b>Have a good</b> weekend!
<b>Bon</b> après-midi!	<b>Good</b> afternoon!

**Bonne** fin de journée!

**Bonne** soirée!

**Good** afternoon!

**Good** evening!

## **BON À SAVOIR!**

When entering public places or shops, especially in smaller towns and villages, it's quite common to acknowledge the shopkeeper and/or the customers and say **bonjour, messieurs-dames** (*if both male and female*) or **bonjour, messieurs** (*to gents*) or **bonjour, mesdames** (*to ladies*), depending on who is there.

When you want to say *goodbye*, use **au revoir**. To say *See you...!*, use **à** followed by **demain** (*tomorrow*), **plus tard** (*later*), **ce soir** (*tonight*) and so on.

### **See you...!**

À demain!	<b>See you</b> tomorrow!
À plus tard!	<b>See you</b> later!
À ce soir!	<b>See you</b> tonight!
À lundi!	<b>See you</b> on Monday!
À dans deux semaines!	<b>See you</b> in two weeks!

## **TALKING ABOUT YOURSELF**

Very often you will need to give personal details and some information about where you're staying and so on. To say what your name is, use **je m'appelle** (*my name is*) and then your name. **appelle** comes from the verb **appeler**. For more information on **-er** verbs like **appeler**, see [here](#).

### **My name is...**

---



**Je m'appelle** Richard Davidson.

**Je m'appelle** Mary Rogers.

**Mon mari s'appelle** Olivier Dauga.

**My name is** Richard Davidson.

**My name is** Mary Rogers.

**My husband's name is** Olivier Dauga.

### **I'm staying...**

**Je loge** à l'hôtel.

**Je loge** chez l'habitant.

**On loge** dans une maison de location.

**Je réside** en France.

**I'm staying** at a hotel.

**I'm staying** with a host family.

**We're staying** in a rented house.

**I live** in France.

### **My address is...**

**Mon adresse** en France, c'est 7, rue de la Boule, 17000 la Rochelle.

**Mon adresse fixe**, c'est 29, Kelvin Close, L3 0QT Liverpool.

**L'adresse de** mon hôtel, c'est Hôtel des Rois, 7, avenue Foch à Aix.

**My address** in France is 7 rue de la Boule, 17000 La Rochelle.

**My permanent address is** 29 Kelvin Close, L3 0QT Liverpool.

**The address of** my hotel is Hôtel des Rois, 7 avenue Foch in Aix.

To say where you're from and how long you're staying, you can use **je suis**. **suis** comes from the verb **être**. For more information on **être**, see [here](#).

### **I am...**

---

**Je suis** anglais.

**Je suis d'**Aberdeen en Écosse.

**Je suis** en vacances.

**On est** ici pour trois semaines.

**I'm** English.

**I'm from** Aberdeen in Scotland.

**I'm** on holiday.

**We're** here for three weeks.

## SAYING WHAT YOU HAVE TO DO

When you're dealing with one kind of service or another, you may want to say that you have to do something in French. To do this, you use **il faut que** (*I have to*) and then the subjunctive, which you can find out more about [here](#).

### **I have to...**

**Il faut que** je passe au pressing.

**Il faut que** je prenne les références de ce produit.

**Il va falloir que** je recharge mon portable.

**Je ne suis pas obligé d'**aller à la banque aujourd'hui.

**I have to** call in at the dry-cleaner's.

**I have to** take down the details of this product.

**I'm going to have to** charge my phone.

**I don't have to** go to the bank today.

### **BON À SAVOIR!**

To say *I don't have to* use **je ne suis pas obligé de**. Don't use **il ne faut pas que** as it means *I mustn't*.

## I need to...

<b>Il faudrait que</b> je passe au pressing.	<b>I need to</b> go to the dry cleaner's.
<b>Il faudrait que</b> je me renseigne sur les polices d'assurances.	<b>I need to</b> find out about insurance policies.
<b>Il faudrait que</b> je fasse réparer mon appareil photo.	<b>I need to</b> have my camera repaired.

You can also say what you have to do using **je dois** (*I must*) and **j'ai besoin de** (*I need*) with the infinitive form of the verb. **dois** comes from the verb **devoir**. For more information on **devoir**, see [here](#).

## I must...

<b>Je dois</b> m'arranger pour faire récupérer mon repassage.	<b>I must</b> phone to arrange for my ironing to be picked up.
<b>Je dois</b> trouver un logement.	<b>I must</b> find somewhere to live.
<b>On doit</b> passer à l'agence immobilière pour rendre les clefs.	<b>We must</b> call at the estate agent's to return the keys.
<b>Il ne faut pas que j'</b> oublie de prendre rendez-vous chez l'esthéticienne.	<b>I mustn't</b> forget to make an appointment at the beautician's.

## BON À SAVOIR!

To say *I mustn't* use **il ne faut pas que** with the subjunctive. For more information on the subjunctive, see [here](#).

## I need...

<b>J'ai besoin d'</b> un conseil.	<b>I need</b> a piece of advice.
<b>J'ai besoin de</b> télécharger un document.	<b>I need to</b> download a document.
<b>J'ai besoin de</b> faire des photocopies couleur.	<b>I need to</b> make some colour photocopies.
<b>Nous avons besoin d'y</b> réfléchir.	<b>We need to</b> think about it.

## SAYING WHAT YOU WANT TO DO

To say what you would like to do in French, use **je voudrais** or **j'aimerais** (*I'd like*). **voudrais** comes from **vouloir** and **aimerais** comes from **aimer**. For more information on these verbs, see [here](#) and [here](#).

## I'd like to...

<b>Je voudrais</b> acheter une carte SIM avec/sans abonnement.	<b>I'd like to</b> buy a SIM card with/without a contract.
<b>Je voudrais</b> signaler un problème.	<b>I'd like to</b> report a problem.
<b>J'aimerais</b> prendre rendez-vous pour me faire couper les cheveux.	<b>I'd like to</b> make an appointment to get my hair cut.
<b>J'aimerais</b> connaître les horaires de train pour Dijon.	<b>I'd like to</b> know the train times to Dijon.

**je souhaite** or **je souhaiterais** (*I wish*) are polite ways of saying what you want to do. They come from the verb **souhaiter**. For more information on –

er verbs like **souhaiter**, see [here](#).

### I wish to...

<b>Je souhaite</b> faire un virement.	<b>I wish to</b> transfer money.
<b>Je souhaite</b> faire une réclamation.	<b>I wish to</b> make a complaint.
<b>Je souhaite</b> parler au directeur de la banque.	<b>I wish to</b> speak to the bank manager.

If you want to have something done, put **faire** before the main verb of the sentence; for instance, *I want to have this watch strap replaced* is **je veux faire remplacer ce bracelet de montre**.

### I want to have...

<b>Je veux faire</b> remplacer ce bracelet de montre.	<b>I want to have</b> this watch strap replaced.
<b>Je veux faire</b> nettoyer ma veste.	<b>I want to have</b> my jacket dry-cleaned.

## ASKING FOR INFORMATION

When you're asking for information about particular services, you can ask someone if they know something by asking **Est-ce que vous savez...?** or **Est-ce que vous sauriez...?** (*Do you know...?*) followed by **où** (*where*), **quand** (*when*), **comment** (*how*) and so on.

### Do you know...?

<b>Est-ce que vous savez où</b>	<b>Do you know</b> where I can
---------------------------------	--------------------------------

je peux faire faire un double de clefs, s'il vous plaît?	have a second key cut?
<b>Vous savez</b> à quel ordre je dois faire le chèque?	<b>Do you know</b> who I should make the cheque payable to?
<b>Vous savez</b> quand vous aurez la pièce?	<b>Do you know</b> when you'll have the spare part?
<b>Est-ce que vous sauriez</b> où je peux recharger ma carte?	<b>Do you know</b> where I can top up my phone?

You can use **Est-ce qu'il y a...?** to ask both *Is there...?* and *Are there...?*

### Is there...?

<b>Est-ce qu'il y a</b> un cybercafé dans le quartier?	<b>Is there</b> a café with wi-fi in the area?
<b>Est-ce qu'il y a</b> un bon coiffeur en ville?	<b>Is there</b> a good hairdresser in town?
<b>Il y a</b> des ordinateurs à la bibliothèque?	<b>Are there</b> computers in the library?

Key questions you'll want to ask when finding out about services is how much something costs and how long it will take. Use **combien** to ask these questions.

### How much is it...?

<b>C'est combien</b> pour une coupe et un brushing?	<b>How much is it</b> for a cut and blow-dry?
<b>C'est combien</b> pour faire	<b>How much is it</b> to have my

débloquer mon téléphone?	phone unlocked?
<b>Il faut compter combien</b> pour faire nettoyer cette veste?	<b>How much would it be to</b> have this jacket dry- cleaned?

### How long does it take...?

<b>Ça prend combien de</b> <b>temps</b> pour avoir l'argent?	<b>How long does it take</b> for the money to come through?
<b>Il vous faut combien de</b> <b>temps</b> pour imprimer ces documents?	<b>How long does it take you</b> to print these documents?
<b>Il faut compter combien</b> <b>de temps</b> pour ouvrir un compte en banque?	<b>How long does it take</b> to open a bank account?

Use **Comment on fait pour...?** (*How do you...?*) followed by the verb in the infinitive to ask how you do something.

### How do you...?

<b>Comment on fait pour</b> ouvrir un compte en banque?	<b>How do you</b> open a bank account?
<b>Comment on fait pour</b> agrandir un document?	<b>How do you</b> enlarge a document?
<b>Comment on fait pour</b> envoyer de l'argent au Royaume-Uni?	<b>How do you</b> send money to the UK?

If you want to ask when something will be ready or available, use **Quand...?** (*When...?*).

## When...?

<b>Quand est-ce que</b> les documents seront prêts?	<b>When</b> will the documents be ready?
<b>Quand est-ce qu'</b> il faut que je passe prendre le linge?	<b>When</b> should I pick up the laundry?
<b>Quand est-ce que</b> vous pouvez nous voir?	<b>When</b> are you available to see us?
<b>À quelle heure est-ce que</b> vous fermez?	<b>When</b> do you close?

## ASKING FOR THINGS

To get something done the way you like it, you'll need to say what you'd like and how you want it done. To say what you'd like, you can use **j'aimerais** or **je voudrais** (*I'd like*) which come from the verbs **aimer** and **vouloir**. For more information on these verbs, see [here](#) and [here](#).

## I'd like...

<b>J'aimerais</b> avoir un formulaire, s'il vous plaît.	<b>I'd like</b> an application form, please.
<b>J'aimerais</b> transférer de l'argent.	<b>I'd like</b> to transfer some money.
<b>Je voudrais</b> prendre un rendez-vous pour mardi après-midi.	<b>I'd like</b> to make an appointment for Tuesday afternoon.
<b>Je voudrais</b> un soin du visage, s'il vous plaît.	<b>I'd like</b> a facial, please.



Questions beginning with **Est-ce que...?** tend to sound more polite than simpler ones like **Vous pouvez...?**, so it is better to use them when asking someone to do something for you; for example, **Est-ce que vous pouvez...?** (*Can you...?*) or **Est-ce que vous pourriez...?** (*Could you...?*) followed by the verb in the infinitive. **pouvez** and **pourriez** come from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [here](#).

### Can you...?

<p><b>Est-ce que vous pouvez</b> me donner un reçu, s'il vous plaît?</p>	<p><b>Can you</b> give me a receipt, please?</p>
<p><b>Est-ce que vous pouvez</b> m'appeler quand ce sera réparé?</p>	<p><b>Can you</b> ring me when it's fixed?</p>
<p><b>Vous pouvez</b> me faire un devis?</p>	<p><b>Can you</b> give me an estimate?</p>
<p><b>Est-ce que vous pourriez</b> jeter un œil à mon appareil photo?</p>	<p><b>Could you</b> have a look at my camera?</p>
<p><b>Vous pourriez</b> me dire si c'est réparable, s'il vous plaît?</p>	<p><b>Could you</b> tell me if it can be repaired, please?</p>

### Would you mind...?

<p><b>Est-ce que ça vous dérangerait d'</b>attendre pour encaisser le chèque?</p>	<p><b>Would you mind</b> waiting before cashing the cheque?</p>
<p><b>Est-ce que ça vous dérangerait de</b> me donner une photocopie du contrat?</p>	<p><b>Would you mind</b> giving me a photocopy of the contract?</p>

**Est-ce que ça vous dérangerait de** me l'envoyer par e-mail?

**Would you mind** sending it to me by email?

### Could you possibly...?

**Est-ce qu'il vous serait possible de** me recevoir cet après-midi?

**Could you possibly** see me this afternoon?

**Est-ce qu'il vous serait possible de** mettre ces photos sur un CD?

**Could you possibly** put these photos on a CD?

**Est-ce qu'il vous serait possible de** prolonger la garantie?

**Could you possibly** extend the guarantee?

When you want to find out if something is available, use **Est-ce que vous avez...?** or **Est-ce que vous auriez...?** (*Do you have...?*) to ask someone if they have something. **avez** and **auriez** come from the verb **avoir**. For more information on **avoir**, see [here](#).

### Do you have...?

**Est-ce que vous avez** de la documentation sur vos polices d'assurance?

**Do you have** any documentation about your insurance policies?

**Est-ce que vous avez** une connexion Internet/le Wi-Fi?

**Do you have** an internet connection/Wi-Fi?

**Est-ce que vous auriez** des piles AA?

**Would you have** any AA batteries?

**Est-ce que vous avez de quoi** enlever cette tache?

**Do you have something to** remove this stain?

## Do you sell...?

<b>Vous vendez</b> des kits mains libres?	<b>Do you sell</b> hands-free kits?
<b>Vous vendez</b> des piles?	<b>Do you sell</b> batteries?
<b>Est-ce que vous vendez</b> des lentilles jetables?	<b>Do you sell</b> disposable contact lenses?

## ASKING FOR SUGGESTIONS

You may want to ask for advice or a recommendation. To ask for suggestions, use **Vous me conseillez de...?** (*Do you think I should...?*). **conseillez** comes from the verb **conseiller**. For more information on **-er** verbs like **conseiller**, see [here](#).

## Do you think I should...?

<b>Vous me conseillez de</b> changer mon argent à la banque ou au bureau de change?	<b>Do you think I should</b> change money at the bank or the bureau de change?
<b>Vous me conseillez d'ouvrir</b> un compte épargne?	<b>Do you think I should</b> open a savings account?
<b>Vous nous conseillez de</b> changer les serrures?	<b>Do you think we should</b> change the locks?
<b>Qu'est-ce que vous me conseillez?</b>	<b>What do you think I should do?</b>

## Would you recommend...?

<b>Vous nous recommandez</b>	<b>Would you recommend</b>
------------------------------	----------------------------

ce modèle?	this model to us?
<b>Vous recommandez</b> ce produit?	<b>Would you recommend</b> this product?
<b>Vous nous recommandez de</b> prendre une assurance tous risques?	<b>Would you recommend that we</b> take out comprehensive insurance?

You can use **Est-ce qu'il faut que...?** (*Should I...?*) with the subjunctive to ask whether you should do something. For more information on the subjunctive, see [here](#).

### Should I...?

<b>Est-ce qu'il faut que</b> j'appelle le plombier?	<b>Should I</b> call the plumber?
<b>Est-ce qu'il faut que</b> je prévienne ma banque?	<b>Should I</b> advise my bank?
<b>Est-ce qu'il faut</b> demander un devis?	<b>Do I need to</b> ask for an estimate?
<b>Qu'est-ce qu'il faut que</b> je fasse?	<b>What should I</b> do?

## MAKING SUGGESTIONS

Occasionally you might want to make a suggestion with regard to a particular service. To do this you can use **je pourrais** (*I could*).

### I could...

<b>Je pourrais</b> contacter ma banque au Royaume-Uni.	<b>I could</b> contact my bank in the UK.
<b>Je pourrais</b> remettre le	<b>I could</b> change the

rendez-vous à vendredi.  
**On pourrait** revenir plus tard.

appointment to Friday.  
**We could** come back later.

### Can we agree on...?

<b>On peut se mettre d'accord sur</b> un prix?	<b>Can we agree on</b> a price?
<b>On peut se mettre d'accord sur</b> une heure de rendez-vous?	<b>Can we agree on</b> a time to meet up?
<b>On peut se mettre d'accord sur</b> une date?	<b>Can we agree on</b> a date?

To ask whether you had better do something, use **Est-ce qu'il vaut mieux que...?** (*Is it better...?*) or **Est-ce qu'il vaudrait mieux que...?** (*Would it be better...?*) followed by the subjunctive, which you can find out more about [here](#).

### Is it better...?

<b>Est-ce qu'il vaut mieux que</b> je vienne le matin?	<b>Is it better if</b> I come in the morning?
<b>Est-ce qu'il vaut mieux que</b> je m'adresse à un revendeur certifié?	<b>Is it better if</b> I go to a certified dealer?
<b>Est-ce qu'il vaudrait mieux</b> appeler l'après-midi?	<b>Would it better to</b> phone in the afternoon?

## [MAKING ARRANGEMENTS](#)

When you're dealing with services, you'll need to make arrangements with people. A simple way of asking someone what suits them, is to use **Ça vous va si...?** (*Is it all right with you if...?*). **va** comes from the verb **aller**. For more information on **aller**, see [here](#).

### Is it all right with you if...?

<b>Est-ce que ça vous va si je repasse à cinq heures?</b>	<b>Is it all right with you if I come back at five pm?</b>
<b>Est-ce que ça vous va si je passe à votre bureau demain?</b>	<b>Is it all right with you if I call at your office tomorrow?</b>
<b>Ça vous va si j'envoie le document par e-mail?</b>	<b>Is it all right with you if I send the document by email?</b>

To discuss what the best arrangement is, you can use **Est-ce que ça vous arrangerait de...?** (*Would it be better for you if...?*) followed by the verb in the infinitive.

### Would it be better for you if...?

<b>Est-ce que ça vous arrangerait d'attendre un peu?</b>	<b>Would it be better for you if we waited a little?</b>
<b>Est-ce que ça vous arrangerait de faire un accord écrit?</b>	<b>Would it be better for you if we had a written agreement?</b>
<b>Ça vous arrangerait qu'on vous verse un acompte?</b>	<b>Would it be better for you if we gave you a deposit?</b>

...would be best for me.

<b>Le mieux pour moi serait</b> dix heures à votre agence.	Ten o'clock in your office <b>would be best for me.</b>
<b>Le mieux pour moi serait</b> un rendez-vous dans l'après-midi.	An afternoon appointment <b>would be best for me.</b>
<b>Le mieux pour moi serait</b> d'être livré à domicile.	Home delivery <b>would be best for me.</b>

## TALKING ABOUT YOUR PLANS

In English, we often say *I'm going to* to talk about the future. French works the same way. To say that you're going to do something, put **je vais** (*I'm going to*) or **on va** (*we're going to*) before the verb. **vais** and **va** come from the verb **aller**. For more information on **aller**, see [here](#).

### **I'm going to...**

<b>Je vais</b> acheter une nouvelle carte SIM.	<b>I'm going to</b> buy a new SIM card.
<b>Je vais</b> me renseigner auprès de ma banque en Grande-Bretagne.	<b>I'm going to</b> ask my bank in Britain.
<b>On va</b> vous payer en liquide.	<b>We're going to</b> pay you in cash.
<b>Je vois</b> mon banquier cet après-midi.	<b>I'm going to see</b> my bank manager this afternoon.
<b>Nous visitons</b> un appartement cette semaine.	<b>We're visiting</b> a flat this week.

French speakers often use **je compte** or **j'ai l'intention de** to say *I intend to*. **compte** comes from the verb **compter**, and **ai** comes from **avoir**. For

more information on **avoir** and **-er** verbs like **compter**, see [here](#) and [here](#).

### I intend to...

<b>Je compte</b> m'installer définitivement ici.	<b>I intend to</b> relocate here permanently.
<b>Je compte</b> ouvrir un nouveau compte.	<b>I intend to</b> open a new account.
<b>J'ai l'intention d'</b> investir dans un appareil photo plus perfectionné.	<b>I intend to</b> buy a more sophisticated camera.

### I'm hoping to...

<b>J'espère</b> recevoir les documents la semaine prochaine.	<b>I'm hoping to</b> receive the documents next week.
<b>J'espère</b> terminer les travaux avant décembre.	<b>I'm hoping to</b> have the work finished by December.
<b>Nous espérons</b> pouvoir emménager le plus vite possible.	<b>We're hoping</b> we can move in as quickly as possible.

You can use **Est-ce que vous allez...?** (*Are you going to...?*) to ask people if they're going to do something. **allez** comes from the verb **aller** (*to go*). For more information on **aller**, see [here](#).

### Are you going to...?

<b>Est-ce que vous allez</b> changer l'objectif?	<b>Are you going to</b> change the lens?
<b>Est-ce que vous allez</b> faire	<b>Are you going to</b> charge



payer la main d'œuvre?	for labour?
<b>Est-ce que vous allez</b> pouvoir enlever cette tache?	<b>Are you going to</b> be able to remove this stain?

To ask what someone is going to do, use **Qu'est ce que vous allez...?** (*What are you going to...?*). For questions asking when or how somebody is going to do something, just replace **qu'** with **quand** (*when*), **comment** (*how*), and so on. For more information on **aller**, see [here](#).

### What are you going to...?

<b>Qu'est-ce que vous allez</b> faire?	<b>What are you going to</b> do?
<b>Qu'est-ce que vous allez</b> dire aux assureurs?	<b>What are you going to</b> tell the insurance company?
<b>Quand est-ce que vous</b> <b>allez</b> terminer les réparations?	<b>When are you going to</b> finish the repair work?
<b>Comment est-ce que vous</b> <b>allez</b> me dédommager?	<b>How are you going to</b> compensate me?

## [SAYING WHAT YOU LIKE, DISLIKE, PREFER](#)

To say what you like, use **j'aime bien** (*I like*). To say what you don't like, just use **je n'aime pas**. These come from the verb **aimer**. For more information on **aimer**, see [here](#).

### I like...

<b>J'aime bien</b> aller au cinéma.	<b>I like</b> going to the cinema.
--	------------------------------------

**J'aime bien** avoir les cheveux courts.

**J'aime beaucoup** me faire faire les ongles.

**I like to** keep my hair short.

**I really like** getting my nails done.

### I don't like...

**Je n'aime pas** avoir trop d'argent liquide sur moi.

**Je n'aime pas trop** laisser ma voiture chez le garagiste.

**J'ai horreur de** cette sonnerie de téléphone.

**I don't like** carrying too much cash on me.

**I don't really like** leaving my car at the garage.

**I can't stand** this ringtone.

If you want to say what you prefer, use **je préfère** (*I prefer*). To say that you prefer A to B, use **je préfère A à B**. **préfère** comes from the verb **préférer**. For more information on **préférer**, see [here](#).

### I prefer...

**Je préfère** un contrat écrit.

**Je préfère** payer en plusieurs fois.

**On préfère ne rien** signer pour l'instant.

**Je préfère** les photos en noir et blanc **aux** photos couleur.

**Je préfère** un abonnement à une carte.

**I prefer** a written contract.

**I prefer** to pay in instalments.

**We prefer not** to sign **anything** for now.

**I prefer** black and white photos **to** colour ones.

**I prefer** a contract **to** a top-up card.

Use **j'aimerais mieux que** (*I'd rather*) followed by the verb in the subjunctive to say that you'd rather someone did something. For more information on the subjunctive, see [here](#).

### **I'd rather...**

<b>J'aimerais mieux que</b> vous me remboursiez.	<b>I'd rather</b> you refunded me.
<b>J'aimerais mieux que</b> vous m'envoyiez le dossier par e-mail.	<b>I'd rather</b> you sent me the file by email.
<b>J'aimerais mieux que</b> vous téléphoniez avant de passer.	<b>I'd rather</b> you phoned before calling in.

### **LISTEN OUT FOR**

Here are some key phrases you are likely to hear when dealing with services.

Je peux vous renseigner?	Can I help you?
Ce sera prêt demain.	It'll be ready tomorrow.
Ce n'est pas encore prêt.	It's not ready yet.
Vous avez votre reçu?	Do you have your receipt?
Vous avez besoin d'un reçu?	Do you need a receipt?
Vous avez une pièce d'identité?	Do you have some identification?
Quelle heure vous conviendrait le mieux?	What time of day would suit you best?
Vous avez rendez-vous?	Do you have an

Veillez rappeler demain.

Comment voudriez-vous régler?

appointment?

Please ring back tomorrow.

How would you like to pay?

## *Lifestyle Tips*

- When getting things done, you'll need to know about **horaires d'ouverture** (*opening times*). Shops and businesses such as hairdresser's, dry cleaner's and so on usually open at around nine in the morning and close at seven in the evening in France. In smaller towns, it is common for small shops to close between 12 and 2 for lunch. Except in the bigger towns, most businesses close on Sundays, and many on Mondays too, so that their employees can have a two-day break. As for public services, they tend to close at five at the latest.
- **cartes à puce** (*chip and PIN cards*) have been in use since the early 90s in France, although they were introduced in the UK almost a decade later. You may be asked to **Tapez votre code!** (*Type in your PIN!*).
- Many banks have security doors with an entry bell which the customers ring to be let in. You will probably see the following instructions on such doors: **Sonnez** (*ring*), **Patiencez** (*wait*) and **Entrez** (*enter*).
- If you want to make an appointment at the hairdresser's and so forth, the word for an appointment is **rendez-vous**. For instance you could say **je voudrais prendre rendez-vous pour jeudi matin** (*I'd like to make an appointment for Thursday morning*).

# Ouch!

## Rétablis-toi vite! – Get well soon!

If you happen to be taken ill, have an accident, get toothache or need some other medical advice while in a French-speaking country, the phrases in this unit will give you the confidence to talk to a doctor, dentist or pharmacist to help you get what you need.

### DESCRIBING THE PROBLEM

You may find yourself in a situation where you have to describe what the problem is. To do this, you can use **j'ai**. This comes from the verb **avoir**. For more information on **avoir**, see [here](#).

#### **I've got a...**

<b>J'ai</b> de la fièvre.	<b>I've got</b> a temperature.
<b>J'ai</b> des plaques.	<b>I've got</b> a rash.
<b>J'ai</b> des palpitations.	<b>I've been having</b> palpitations.
Je ne sais pas ce que <b>j'ai</b> .	I don't know <b>what's wrong with me</b> .
Mon fils <b>est</b> cardiaque.	My son <b>has</b> a heart

**Je fais de** l'hypertension.

condition.

**I have** high blood pressure.

If you want to say which bit of you hurts, and to talk about aches and pains, you use **j'ai mal à**. Remember that **j'ai mal à** followed by **le** becomes **j'ai mal au**, and **j'ai mal aux** when it is followed by **les**. For more information on **à** followed by **le** and **les**, see [here](#).

### I've got a... ache

<b>J'ai mal à</b> la tête.	<b>I've got</b> a headache.
<b>J'ai mal à</b> l'estomac.	<b>I've got</b> stomachache.
<b>Elle a mal aux</b> dents.	<b>She's got</b> toothache.
<b>J'ai mal au</b> dos.	<b>My back is</b> sore.
<b>J'ai mal</b> ici.	<b>It hurts</b> here.

### I feel...

<b>Je me sens</b> fatigué tout le temps.	<b>I feel</b> tired all the time.
<b>Je me sens</b> mieux maintenant.	<b>I'm feeling</b> better now.
<b>Je ne me sens</b> pas bien du tout.	<b>I feel</b> awful.
<b>Je me sentais</b> bien hier.	<b>I felt</b> fine yesterday.

### I'm...

<b>Je suis</b> allergique à la pénicilline.	<b>I'm</b> allergic to penicillin.
<b>Je suis</b> sous	<b>I'm</b> on antidepressants.

antidépresseurs.

**Je suis** diabétique.

**Il est** sous analgésiques.

**I'm** diabetic.

**He's** on painkillers.

## SAYING WHAT HAPPENED

If you've had some kind of accident, you will probably need to explain what happened. You can use **j'ai** or **je suis** followed by the form of the verb called the past participle. **ai** and **suis** come from the verbs **avoir** and **être**. For more information on the past tense, see [here](#).

### **I've...**

<b>J'ai eu</b> un accident.	<b>I've had</b> an accident.
<b>J'ai perdu</b> un plombage.	<b>I've lost</b> a filling.
<b>Je suis tombé</b> dans les escaliers.	<b>I fell down</b> the stairs.
<b>Je me suis cogné</b> la tête.	<b>I've bumped</b> my head.
<b>Elle s'est brûlée</b> sur la cuisinière.	<b>She burnt herself</b> on the stove.

### **I've never...**

<b>Je n'ai jamais eu</b> un mal de tête pareil.	<b>I've never had</b> such a bad headache.
<b>Il n'a jamais eu</b> d'attaque.	<b>He's never had</b> a fit <b>before</b> .
<b>Je ne me suis jamais sentie</b> aussi mal.	<b>I've never felt</b> so ill.
<b>Ça ne m'est encore jamais arrivé.</b>	<b>It's never happened to me before.</b>



You may be unlucky enough to have had a more serious accident. To say that you have broken something, use **je me suis cassé** (*I've broken*).

### I've broken...

Je crois que <b>je me suis cassé</b> le bras.	I think <b>I've broken</b> my arm.
<b>Je me suis cassé</b> la clavicule l'année dernière.	<b>I broke</b> my collar bone last year.
<b>Il s'est cassé</b> la jambe.	<b>He's broken</b> his leg.
<b>Elle s'est cassé</b> une dent.	<b>She's broken</b> a tooth.
<b>Je me suis foulé</b> la cheville.	<b>I've sprained</b> my ankle.

### BON À SAVOIR!

French speakers say *I have broken the leg* and so on instead of *I have broken my leg* and so on.

## ASKING FOR INFORMATION

When you are asking for information you may need to get someone's attention in order to ask them a question. To do this you can use either **pardon** or **excusez-moi**.

### Is there...?

Pardon, <b>est-ce qu'il y a</b> un hôpital par ici?	Excuse me, <b>is there</b> a hospital nearby?
<b>Est-ce qu'il y a</b> une pharmacie de garde près d'ici?	<b>Is there</b> a chemist's open near here?

Est-ce que vous savez s'il y a un dentiste par ici?	Do you know if <b>there's</b> a dentist in the area?
Pardon, où est-ce que je peux trouver un médecin?	Excuse me, <b>where can I find</b> a doctor?
Excusez-moi, où est-ce que je peux trouver un poste de secours?	Excuse me please, <b>where can I find</b> a first-aid post?

### BON À SAVOIR!

You use **Est-ce qu'il y a...?** to ask both *Is there...?* or *Are there...?* in French.

When you need an explanation of what something is exactly, or what it's for, use **Qu'est-ce que c'est que...?** (*What is...?*). For more general questions asking for information, use **quel** before a masculine word or **quelle** before a feminine word.

### What's...?

<b>Qu'est-ce que c'est que</b> ce médicament?	<b>What is</b> this medicine?
<b>Qu'est-ce que c'est que</b> ces comprimés?	<b>What are</b> these tablets?
<b>Quel est</b> le numéro pour avoir une ambulance?	<b>What's</b> the number to call for an ambulance?
<b>Quelle est</b> l'adresse de l'hôpital?	<b>What's</b> the address of the hospital?
<b>À quoi servent</b> ces comprimés?	<b>What are</b> these tablets <b>for</b> ?

### Which...?

---

Je peux prendre rendez-vous avec <b>quel</b> docteur?	<b>Which</b> doctor can I get an appointment with?
Dans <b>quelle</b> rue est la clinique?	<b>Which</b> street is the clinic in?
Est-ce que vous pouvez me dire dans <b>quelle</b> salle elle est?	Can you tell me <b>which</b> ward she's in?
<b>Quelle</b> est la meilleure clinique?	<b>Which</b> clinic is the best?

In order to get more specific information, you may need to ask questions such as **Comment...?** (*How...?*) or **Quand...?** (*When...?*).

**How...?**

<b>Comment est-ce qu'</b> on prend rendez-vous avec le chiropracteur?	<b>How</b> do you make an appointment with the chiropractor?
<b>Comment est-ce qu'</b> on prend ce médicament?	<b>How</b> do you take this medicine?
<b>Comment est-ce qu'</b> on s'inscrit à la Sécurité Sociale?	<b>How</b> do we register with Social Security?

**When...?**

<b>Quand est-ce qu'</b> il faut que je me fasse faire ma piqûre?	<b>When</b> do I have to have my injection?
<b>Quand est-ce que</b> le médecin va venir?	<b>When</b> is the doctor coming?
<b>Quand</b> commencent les visites?	<b>When</b> does visiting time start?

**Quand est-ce que** je dois prendre les comprimés?

**À quelle heure** ouvre le cabinet médical?

**When** do I have to take the tablets?

**What time** does the doctor's surgery open?

Many of the questions you will be asking can be answered by *yes* or *no*. You can either put **est-ce que** before what you want to know or alternatively you can raise the tone of your voice at the end of the sentence.

**Is...?**

**Est-ce que c'est** grave?

**Est-ce que** l'hôpital est loin?

Le centre de santé est ouvert l'après-midi?

**Is it** serious?

**Is** the hospital far?

**Is** the health centre open in the afternoon?

## ASKING FOR THINGS

When you want to find out if something is available, use **Est-ce que vous avez...?** or **Vous avez...?** (*Do you have...?*). **avez** comes from the verb **avoir**. For more information on **avoir**, see [here](#).

**Do you have...?**

**Est-ce que vous avez** quelque chose contre le mal de tête?

**Est-ce que vous avez** quelque chose contre le rhume des foins?

**Vous avez** un numéro

**Do you have** anything for a headache?

**Do you have** anything for hay fever?

**Do you have** an emergency

d'urgence?

**Vous avez** du paracétamol  
pour bébés?

telephone number?

**Do you have** infant  
paracetamol?

If you want to ask for something in French, use **Est-ce que je peux avoir...?** or **Je peux avoir...?** (*Can I have...?*). **peux** comes from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [here](#).

### Can I have...?

**Est-ce que je peux avoir**  
un rendez-vous pour  
demain, s'il vous plaît?

**Est-ce que je peux avoir**  
de l'aspirine, s'il vous  
plaît?

**Je peux avoir** un  
pansement de rechange?

**Can I have** an appointment  
for tomorrow, please?

**Can I have** a packet of  
aspirin, please?

**Can I have** a spare  
bandage?

### Can I...?

**Est-ce que je peux** voir un  
dentiste ce matin?

**Est-ce que je peux** parler à  
un pédiatre tout de suite?

**Est-ce que je peux** boire  
de l'alcool avec ce  
médicament?

Quand **est-ce qu'on peut**  
passer prendre les  
résultats?

**Can I** see the dentist this  
morning?

**Can I** talk to a  
paediatrician right away?

**Can I** drink alcohol with  
this medicine?

When **can we** collect the  
results?

If you are asking someone whether they can do something for you, you should use **Est-ce que vous pouvez...?** (*Can you...?*) or **Est-ce que vous pourriez...?** (*Could you...?*). **pouvez** and **pourriez** come from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [here](#).

### Can you...?

<b>Est-ce que vous pouvez</b> me prescrire quelque chose pour les maux d'oreille, s'il vous plaît?	<b>Can you</b> prescribe something for earache, please?
<b>Est-ce que vous pouvez</b> envoyer une ambulance immédiatement?	<b>Can you</b> send an ambulance straightaway?
<b>Est-ce que vous pouvez</b> appeler un médecin, s'il vous plaît?	<b>Can you</b> call a doctor, please?
<b>Est-ce que vous pouvez</b> <b>me donner</b> quelque chose pour mon bébé qui fait ses dents?	<b>Can you give me</b> something for my baby who's teething?

### Could you...?

<b>Est-ce que vous pourriez</b> nous emmener à l'hôpital le plus proche?	<b>Could you</b> take us to the nearest hospital?
<b>Est-ce que vous pourriez</b> me prendre la tension?	<b>Could you</b> check my blood pressure?
<b>Est-ce que ça vous dérangerait de</b> me trouver une infirmière qui parle anglais?	<b>Would you mind</b> finding me an English-speaking nurse?

**Vous voulez bien** me donner un rendez-vous pour une visite de contrôle?

**Would you mind** giving me an appointment for a checkup?

## SAYING WHAT YOU WANT TO DO

If you want to say what you'd like to do in French, use either **je voudrais** or **j'aimerais** (*I'd like*). They come from the verbs **vouloir** and **aimer**. For more information on **vouloir** and **aimer**, see [here](#) and [here](#).

### **I'd like to...**

<b>Je voudrais</b> prendre rendez-vous avec le médecin.	<b>I'd like to</b> make an appointment with the doctor.
<b>Je voudrais</b> voir un dentiste tout de suite.	<b>I'd like to</b> see a dentist straightaway.
<b>Je voudrais</b> acheter quelque chose contre la toux.	<b>I'd like to</b> buy something for a cough.
<b>J'aimerais</b> me faire faire un plombage.	<b>I'd like to</b> have a tooth filled.

### **I'd rather...**

<b>J'aimerais mieux</b> aller dans un hôpital privé.	<b>I'd rather</b> go to a private hospital.
<b>J'aimerais mieux</b> aller chez un médecin femme <b>qu'</b> un médecin homme.	<b>I'd rather</b> see a female doctor <b>than</b> a male one.
<b>Je préférerais</b> prendre des	<b>I'd rather</b> take tablets

comprimés **que de** me  
faire faire une piqûre.

**On préfère** les remèdes  
naturels.

**than** have an injection.

**We prefer** natural  
remedies.

In French you can tell somebody what you need by using **j'ai besoin de** (*I need*).

**I need...**

**J'ai besoin de** la pilule du  
lendemain.

**J'ai besoin d'**un médecin  
qui puisse venir ici.

**On a besoin d'**une  
ambulance de toute  
urgence.

**Est-ce que j'ai besoin**  
**d'**une ordonnance?

**I need** the morning-after  
pill.

**I need** a doctor who can  
come here.

**We urgently need** to call an  
ambulance.

**Do I need** a prescription?

## MAKING SUGGESTIONS

You may wish to make a suggestion in French. One way of doing this is to use **on pourrait** (*we could*). This comes from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [here](#).

**We could...**

**On pourrait** demander au  
pharmacien.

**On pourrait** prendre des  
analgésiques chez le

**We could** ask the  
pharmacist.

**We could** get some  
painkillers at the



pharmacien.

**On pourrait** téléphoner à sa famille.

chemist's.

**We could** phone his family.

Another way of making suggestions in French is to ask **Pourquoi ne pas...?** (*Why don't...?*).

### Why don't...?

**Pourquoi ne pas** appeler un médecin?

**Pourquoi ne pas** demander un rendez-vous avec le cardiologue?

**Pourquoi pas** demander comment se prennent ces antibiotiques?

**Pourquoi tu n'**expliques **pas** le problème au médecin?

**Why don't** we call a doctor?

**Why don't** we ask for an appointment with the heart specialist?

**Why don't** we ask how the antibiotics should be taken?

**Why don't** you explain the problem to the doctor?

### **BON À SAVOIR!**

You may have noticed that **ne** can be (and often is) omitted – this is mainly in spoken French.

### **LISTEN OUT FOR**

Here are some key phrases you are likely to hear at the doctor's or the hospital.

--	--

Comment allez-vous?

How are you?

Qu'est-ce qui vous arrive?

What seems to be the problem?

Cela fait combien de temps que vous vous sentez comme ça?

How long have you been feeling like this?

Est-ce que vous avez des problèmes de santé?

Do you have any existing medical conditions?

Est-ce que vous prenez d'autres médicaments?

Are you on any other medication?

Est-ce que vous avez la nausée?

Do you feel sick?

Est-ce que vous avez des vertiges?

Do you feel dizzy?

Où est-ce que vous avez mal?

Where does it hurt?

Ne buvez pas d'alcool tant que vous prenez ce médicament.

Don't drink alcohol while you're taking this medicine.

Remplissez ce formulaire, s'il vous plaît.

Please fill in this form.

Je peux avoir les informations concernant votre assurance maladie?

Can I have your medical insurance details?

Les résultats sont bons.

The results are fine.

## *Lifestyle Tips*

- If you think you need a doctor, you can go to **les urgences** – the A&E department of a hospital.
- You need to pay a fee – **les honoraires** – when you visit the doctor or dentist. Even among state health professionals, some charge more than others. You may be given **une ordonnance** (*a prescription*) to take to **la pharmacie** (*the chemist's*). There isn't a flat fee for medicines, so the price you'll pay will vary according to the medicine you've been prescribed. Unlike in Britain, in France, you can go directly to a specialist without being referred by a GP. Specialists' fees can be higher than GPs'.
- When going to a state health professional (**médecin conventionné**) in France, you will be asked for your **carte européenne d'assurance maladie** – your *European Health Insurance Card*. This card aims to make access to healthcare in any EU country hassle-free for all citizens of EU member states.
- In France, **pharmacies** (*chemists*) are easily recognizable from a distance thanks to the **croix verte** (*green cross*) sign displayed outside them.
- There is always a **pharmacie de garde** (*duty chemist's*) open when other chemists are shut. Its address will be prominently displayed outside all the other local pharmacies as well as in local newspapers.

• The mobile emergency medical service is called **SMUR** or **SAMU**. Its phone number is 15. If you think you need an ambulance in France, call this number and they'll decide what the best course of action is.

• In France when someone sneezes, you can say **À tes souhaits!** (*Bless you!* or literally *To your wishes!*), or **À vos souhaits!** to someone you don't know so well. If the person sneezes a second time, you can then say **À tes (or vos) amours! (Qu'elles durent toujours)** which literally means *To your love! (May it last forever)*.

# Help!

## Ne vous en faites pas! – Don't worry!

If you find yourself in a situation in France in which you need help, for example if you break down, are involved in an accident or are robbed, or even if you simply can't get the heating to come on, this unit will give the language to help you cope with confidence.

### DESCRIBING THE PROBLEM

If you are asking somebody for help of some kind, you will need to be able to describe what the problem is. Use **il y a** to mean both *there is* and *there are*, and **il n'y a pas de** to say *there isn't any* or *there aren't any*.

#### **There is...**

<b>Il y a</b> une odeur de gaz dans ma chambre.	<b>There's</b> a smell of gas in my room.
<b>Il y a</b> des cafards dans l'appartement.	<b>There are</b> cockroaches in the apartment.
<b>Il n'y a pas de</b> savon dans la salle de bain.	<b>There isn't any</b> soap in the bathroom.
<b>Il n'y a pas de</b> serviettes	<b>There aren't any</b> towels in

dans ma chambre. <b>Il y a eu</b> un accident.	my room. <b>There's been</b> an accident.
---	--

You may need to explain exactly what the problem is. To do this you can often use **j'ai** (*I've got*) or **je n'ai pas de** (*I haven't got*). **ai** comes from the verb **avoir**. For more information on **avoir**, see [here](#).

### I've got...

<b>J'ai</b> un problème.	<b>I've got</b> a problem.
<b>J'ai</b> un pneu à plat.	<b>I've got</b> a flat tyre.
<b>Je n'ai pas de</b> pompe.	<b>I haven't got</b> a pump.
On nous a volé et <b>nous n'avons pas</b> assez <b>d'argent</b> pour rentrer chez nous.	We've been robbed and <b>we haven't got</b> enough money to get back home.

The problem you are having may be because you are not able to do something. In French you can use **je n'arrive pas à** to say what you can't do.

### I can't...

<b>Je n'arrive pas à</b> faire démarrer la voiture.	<b>I can't</b> get the car to start.
<b>Je n'arrive pas à</b> allumer le chauffe-eau – il est cassé.	<b>I can't</b> light the boiler – it's broken.
<b>On n'arrive pas à</b> ouvrir la porte de la chambre.	<b>We can't</b> open the door to the bedroom.

It may be the case, however, that you do not know how to do something. In French you would use **je ne sais pas** to talk about what you don't know

how to do.

### I can't...

<b>Je ne sais pas</b> changer un pneu.	<b>I can't</b> change a tyre.
<b>Je ne sais pas</b> conduire.	<b>I can't</b> drive.
<b>Je ne sais pas</b> très bien parler français.	<b>I can't</b> speak French very well.

If you want to say that you don't understand something, use **je ne comprends pas**.

### I don't understand...

<b>Je ne comprends pas</b> ce que vous voulez dire.	<b>I don't understand</b> what you mean.
Je suis désolé, mais <b>je ne comprends pas</b> le mode d'emploi.	I'm sorry but <b>I don't understand</b> the instructions.
<b>On ne comprend pas</b> pourquoi ça	<b>We can't understand</b> why it doesn't work.

## SAYING WHAT HAPPENED

You will probably need to explain to somebody what happened. You can use **j'ai** (or sometimes **je suis**) followed by the past participle. **ai** and **suis** come from the verbs **avoir** and **être**. For more information on forming the past tense, see [here](#).

### I have...

---

**J'ai perdu** mon passeport.

**J'ai eu** un accident.

**Nous avons enfermé** les clés dans l'appartement.

Ma valise **n'est pas arrivée**.

**On est tombé** en panne.

**Nous sommes** en panne d'essence.

**I've lost** my passport.

**I've had** an accident.

**We've locked** ourselves out of the apartment.

My case **hasn't arrived**.

**We've broken down**.

**We've run out** of petrol.

### **I've been...**

**J'ai été** agressé.

**J'ai été** cambriolé.

Ma voiture **a été** forcée.

**On nous a** trop fait payer.

**On m'a** arraché mon sac.

**I've been** mugged.

**I've been** burgled.

My car's **been** broken into.

**We've been** overcharged.

My bag's **been** snatched.

## **DESCRIBING PEOPLE AND THINGS**

If you have some kind of problem in France you may need to be able to give a description of someone or something. To do this you can simply use **est** (*is*) followed by an adjective. **est** comes from the verb **être**. For more information on **être**, see [here](#).

### **It is...**

**C'est** un break noir.

**C'est** un iPhone®.

**Ce sont** des bijoux de très grande valeur.

**It's** a black estate car.

**It's** an iPhone®.

**They're** very valuable jewels.



Le sac <b>est</b> rouge.	The bag's red.
La valise <b>est</b> verte avec des roulettes.	The suitcase <b>is</b> green with wheels.
Mon portefeuille <b>est en</b> cuir.	My wallet's <b>made of</b> leather.
<b>Il est</b> grand et assez jeune.	<b>He's</b> tall and quite young-looking.

You may also be asked to give more details about yourself or somebody else, for example, age, hair colour and so on. To do this, use **il a** or **elle a** (literally *he has* or *she has*). **a** comes from the verb **avoir**. For more information on **avoir**, see [here](#).

### He's...

<b>Il a</b> cinq ans.	<b>He's</b> five years old.
<b>Elle a</b> huit ans.	<b>She's</b> eight.
<b>J'ai</b> trente ans.	<b>I'm</b> thirty.

### BON À SAVOIR!

When talking about your or someone else's age, you must say **ans** in French.

### He's got...

<b>Il a</b> les cheveux blonds et courts.	<b>He's got</b> short blond hair.
<b>Elle a</b> les cheveux bruns.	<b>She's got</b> brown hair.
<b>Elle a</b> les yeux verts.	<b>She's got</b> green eyes.
<b>Ils ont</b> les yeux marron tous les deux.	<b>They both have</b> brown eyes.

## She's wearing...

<b>Elle porte</b> un jean et un tee-shirt vert.	<b>She's wearing</b> jeans and a green T-shirt.
<b>Elle porte</b> une robe orange.	<b>She's wearing</b> an orange dress.
<b>Il portait</b> un pull en laine et un pantalon noir.	<b>He was wearing</b> a woolly jumper and black trousers.

## ASKING FOR INFORMATION

When you are asking for information you may need to get someone's attention in order to ask them a question. To do this you can use either **pardon** or **excusez-moi**.

## Is there...?

Excusez-moi, <b>est-ce qu'il y a</b> un garage par ici?	Excuse me, <b>is there</b> a garage around here?
Pardon, <b>est-ce qu'il y a</b> un électricien dans le quartier?	Excuse me, <b>is there</b> an electrician in the area?
<b>Est-ce qu'il y a</b> des hôtels à proximité?	<b>Are there</b> any hotels nearby?

## BON À SAVOIR!

Both *Is there...?* and *Are there...?* are **Est-ce qu'il y a...?** in French.

## Which...?

<b>Quel</b> plombier me	<b>Which</b> plumber do you
-------------------------	-----------------------------

recommandez-vous?	recommend?
Excusez-moi, il faut faire <b>quel</b> numéro pour appeler la police?	Excuse me, <b>what</b> number do you dial for the police?
<b>Quels</b> documents est-ce que je dois présenter?	<b>Which</b> documents do I need to show?

In order to obtain specific information, for example, how to do something, when something will happen or how much it will cost, you may want to ask **Comment...?** (*How...?*), **Quand...?** (*When...?*) or **Combien...?** (*How much...?*).

### How...?

<b>Comment est-ce qu'on</b> fait pour avoir une ligne extérieure?	<b>How</b> do I get an outside line?
<b>Comment est-ce qu'on</b> fait pour signaler un vol?	<b>How</b> do we report a theft?
Excusez-moi, <b>comment est-ce qu'on</b> va au garage?	Excuse me, <b>how</b> do we get to the garage?
Est-ce que vous pouvez me dire <b>comment</b> récupérer la valise?	Can you tell me <b>how</b> we can get the suitcase back?

### When...?

<b>Quand est-ce que</b> vous allez venir réparer la climatisation?	<b>When</b> will you come to fix the air-conditioning?
<b>Quand est-ce que</b> vous allez livrer la valise?	<b>When</b> will you deliver the suitcase?

**Quand est-ce que** je peux amener la voiture au garage?

Est-ce que vous savez **quand** on pourra voir l'avocat?

**When** can I bring the car to the garage?

Do you know **when** we'll be able to see the lawyer?

### How much...?

**Combien est-ce que** ça va coûter de réparer la voiture?

Vous pouvez me dire **combien** va coûter la réparation?

**Combien** coûtent les frais de dossier?

**How much** will it be to repair the car?

Can you tell me **how much** you will charge me to fix this?

**How much** are the registration fees?

## ASKING FOR THINGS

If you want to ask for something in French, use **Est-ce que je peux avoir...?** or **Je peux avoir...?** (*Can I have...?*). **peux** comes from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [here](#).

### Can I have...?

**Est-ce que je peux avoir** votre numéro de téléphone?

**Est-ce que je peux avoir** un autre formulaire?

**Je peux avoir** une autre

**Can I have** your phone number?

**Can I have** another form?

**Can I have** another

couverture, s'il vous plaît?

**Est-ce que je peux emprunter** votre portable pour passer un coup de fil urgent?

blanket, please?

**Can I borrow** your mobile to make an urgent call?

If you want to find out if something is available, use **Est-ce que vous avez...?** (*Do you have...?*).

### Do you have...?

**Est-ce que vous avez** des câbles de démarrage?

Excusez-moi, **est-ce que vous avez** un bureau des objets trouvés?

Pardon, **est-ce que vous avez** ce document en anglais?

**Do you have** jump leads?

Excuse me, **do you have** a lost property office?

Excuse me, **do you have** this document in English?

If you are asking someone whether they can do something for you, you should use **Est-ce que vous pouvez...?** (*Can you...?*) or **Est-ce que vous pourriez...?** (*Could you...?*). **pouvez** and **pourriez** come from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [here](#).

### Can you...?

**Est-ce que vous pouvez** m'aider, s'il vous plaît?

**Est-ce que vous pouvez** appeler la police?

**Est-ce que vous pourriez**

**Can you** help me, please?

**Can you** call the police?

**Could you** recommend an

recommander un  
électricien?

**Est-ce que vous pourriez**  
me montrer comment  
fonctionne la douche?

electrician?

**Could you** show me how  
the shower works?

## SAYING WHAT YOU WANT TO DO

You may need to be able to say what you want or what you'd like to do in French. To do this, you can use either **je veux** (*I want*) or **je voudrais** (*I'd like*). **veux** and **voudrais** are both from the verb **vouloir**. For more information on **vouloir**, see [here](#).

### **I'd like to...**

<b>Je voudrais</b> signaler un vol.	<b>I'd like to</b> report a theft.
<b>Je voudrais</b> téléphoner.	<b>I'd like to</b> make a call.
<b>Je voudrais</b> parler à un avocat.	<b>I'd like to</b> speak to a lawyer.

### **I don't want to...**

<b>Je ne veux pas</b> rester dans cette chambre.	<b>I don't want to</b> stay in this room.
<b>Je ne veux pas</b> laisser ma voiture ici.	<b>I don't want to</b> leave my car here.
<b>Nous ne voulons pas</b> aller à l'hôtel sans nos bagages.	<b>We don't want to</b> go to the hotel without our luggage.

If you want to say what your preference is, use **j'aimerais mieux** (*I'd rather*).

## I'd rather...

<p><b>J'aimerais mieux</b> faire appel à un avocat qui parle anglais.</p> <p><b>J'aimerais mieux</b> être au rez-de-chaussée <b>qu'</b>au premier étage.</p> <p><b>On préférerait</b> lire les documents en anglais, si possible.</p>	<p><b>I'd rather</b> hire a lawyer who can speak English.</p> <p><b>I'd rather</b> stay on the ground floor <b>than</b> on the first floor.</p> <p><b>We'd rather</b> read the documents in English, if possible.</p>
---	---

## SAYING WHAT YOU HAVE TO DO

You may want to say what you have to do in French. Use **il faut que** (*I have to*) with the subjunctive or **j'ai besoin de** (*I need*). For more information on the subjunctive, see [here](#).

## I have to...

<p><b>Il faut que j'</b>aille à l'ambassade britannique.</p> <p><b>Il faut que je</b> recharge la batterie de mon téléphone.</p> <p><b>Il faut que je</b> parle à un avocat.</p>	<p><b>I have to</b> go to the British embassy.</p> <p><b>I have to</b> charge up my phone.</p> <p><b>I must</b> speak to a lawyer.</p>
--	--

## I need...

<p><b>J'ai besoin d'</b>un pneu neuf.</p> <p><b>J'ai besoin de</b> téléphoner.</p>	<p><b>I need</b> a new tyre.</p> <p><b>I need to</b> make a call.</p>
--	---

**J'ai besoin d'**appeler un électricien.

**I need to** call an electrician.

## MAKING SUGGESTIONS

You may wish to make a suggestion to your French-speaking acquaintances. One way of doing this is to use **on pourrait** (*we could*). **pourrait** comes from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [here](#).

### **We could...**

<b>On pourrait</b> appeler un serrurier.	<b>We could</b> call a locksmith.
<b>On pourrait</b> demander le numéro d'un électricien à quelqu'un.	<b>We could</b> ask someone for the number of an electrician.
<b>On pourrait</b> toujours aller au bureau des objets trouvés.	<b>We could</b> always go to the lost property office.
<b>Si tu préfères, on peut</b> aller voir le gérant et expliquer le problème.	<b>If you prefer, we could</b> go to the manager and explain the problem.

You can also use **Et si...?** followed by a verb in the imperfect tense to suggest doing something. For more information on the imperfect, see [here](#).

### **How about...?**

<b>Et si</b> on parlait à un avocat?	<b>How about</b> talking to a lawyer?
<b>Et si</b> on appelait ton consulat?	<b>How about</b> calling your consulate?



**Et si** on signalait le problème à la réception?

**How about** reporting the fault to reception?

Another way of making suggestions is to ask **Pourquoi est-ce qu'on ne... pas?** (*Why don't...?*).

### Why don't...?

<b>Pourquoi est-ce qu'on ne</b> demande <b>pas</b> de l'aide aux voisins?	<b>Why don't we</b> ask the neighbours for help?
<b>Pourquoi est-ce qu'on</b> n'appelle <b>pas</b> la réception?	<b>Why don't we</b> call reception?
<b>Pourquoi tu ne</b> vas <b>pas</b> au commissariat pour signaler le vol?	<b>Why don't you</b> go to the police station to report the theft?

## TALKING ABOUT YOUR PLANS

In English we often say *I'm going to* to talk about the future. French works the same way. To say that you're going to do something, use **je vais** (*I'm going to*) or **on va** (*we're going to*) before the verb. **vais** and **va** come from the verb **aller**. For more information on **aller**, see [here](#).

### I'm going to...

<b>Je vais</b> appeler le garage.	<b>I'm going to</b> phone the garage.
<b>Je vais</b> signaler le vol à la police.	<b>I'm going to</b> report the theft to the police.
<b>Je vais</b> appeler au secours	<b>I'm going to</b> call for help

avec mon portable.

**On va** appeler un électricien pour qu'il répare l'installation électrique.

on my mobile.

**We're going to** phone an electrician to fix the wiring.

### **Are you going to...?**

**Est-ce que vous allez** remorquer notre voiture?

**Est-ce que vous allez** venir aujourd'hui?

**Vous allez** nous appeler quand ce sera prêt?

**Are you going to** tow our car back?

**Are you going to** come out today?

**Are you going to** call us when it's ready?

### **LISTEN OUT FOR**

Here are some key phrases you are likely to hear when you have some kind of problem.

Quel est le problème?

Qu'est ce qui s'est passé?

Est-ce que je peux avoir les coordonnées de votre assurance?

Qu'est-ce qui a été volé?

Est-ce que je peux avoir votre adresse, s'il vous plaît?

Vous êtes d'où?

Où est-ce que vous logez?

What's the problem?

What happened?

Can I have your insurance details?

What's been stolen?

Can I have your address, please?

Where are you from?

Where are you staying?

Est-ce que je peux voir  
votre permis de conduire?

Est-ce qu'il y avait des  
témoins?

Remplissez ce formulaire,  
s'il vous plaît.

Can I have your driving  
licence?

Were there any witnesses?

Please fill in this form.

## *Lifestyle Tips*

- If you have to report a crime to the police in France, you'll need to go to the **commissariat de police** (*police station*) where you'll have to **faire une déclaration** (*file a report*). In a big city, it is likely to be the **police nationale** (*national police*) you go to, though in rural areas it may be the **gendarmerie**, a police branch of the military.
- There are several types of police in France. There's the **police nationale** who are in charge of national security and public order in general. Then, there's the **police municipale** (*municipal police*) who mainly deal with traffic and minor crimes. There is also the **gendarmerie nationale** who look after rural policing and border patrols.
- As in the UK, if you're driving around France, you'll need to be careful where you park if you want to avoid paying a **contravention** (*fine*) or having your car towed away by the **camion-grue** (*tow truck*) and having to get it back at great expense from the **fourrière** (*pound*). Make sure you look at any signs and ask if you don't understand them. You can always ask **Que veut dire ce panneau?** (*What does this sign mean?*).

# Getting in touch

## Qui est à l'appareil? – Who's calling, please?

Talking on the phone is one of the hardest things to do in a foreign language, because you can't see the person you're speaking to, and therefore you can't rely on body language and facial expressions to help you understand and communicate. This unit gives you the language to overcome this and helps you to sound natural and confident when speaking on the telephone in French. It also covers different means of communication in French: email, texting, social media and the good old post.

### MAKING A TELEPHONE CALL

If you want to tell someone that you need to make a phone call, use **je dois** (*I need to*). **dois** comes from the verb **devoir**. For more information on **devoir**, see [here](#).

#### **I need to...**

<b>Je dois</b> téléphoner. <b>Je dois</b> téléphoner à ma femme.	<b>I need to</b> make a call <b>I need to</b> phone my wife.
---	---

**Je dois** passer un coup de fil à mon pote.

N'oublie pas que **tu dois** rappeler ta mère ce soir.

**I need to** give my mate a ring.

Don't forget **you need to** call your mum back tonight.

## BON À SAVOIR!

The French expressions for calling someone are **téléphoner** (*to phone*) and **passer un coup de fil** (*to ring*). The second one is less formal, just as it is in English.

Many of the questions you may want to ask can be answered by *yes* or *no*. To ask such questions, use **Est-ce que...?** with what you want to know. So, if you want to ask if someone has something, for example a telephone number, use **Est-ce que vous avez...?** (*Do you have...?*)

### Do you have...?

<b>Est-ce que vous avez</b> le numéro personnel de Madame Kay, s'il vous plaît?	<b>Do you have</b> Mrs Kay's home number, please?
<b>Est-ce que vous avez</b> une adresse e-mail?	<b>Do you have</b> an email address?
<b>Est-ce que tu as</b> un numéro de portable?	<b>Do you have</b> a mobile number?

You can ask for something such as a telephone number in French by using **Quel est...?** before a masculine noun and **Quelle est...?** before a feminine noun.

### What's...?

<b>Quel est</b> son numéro de téléphone?	<b>What's</b> her phone number?
<b>Quel est</b> le numéro des renseignements?	<b>What's</b> the number for directory enquiries?
<b>Quel est</b> l'indicatif de l'Irlande?	<b>What's</b> the dialling code for Ireland?
Je peux prendre <b>quelle</b> ligne pour appeler?	<b>What</b> line can I use to make a call?
Je dois faire <b>quel</b> numéro pour appeler à l'extérieur?	<b>What</b> number do I have to dial to get an outside line?

## WHEN THE PERSON YOU'RE CALLING ANSWERS

Once you've made the call and someone answers, you will need to say *hello* and tell them who's calling. The French expression **Allô?** is only used when speaking on the phone. You can say this whether you are making or receiving the call, and for any type of call, formal or informal. Always make sure you introduce yourself to the person who picks up the phone using **c'est** (*this is*).

### **Hello, this is...**

<b>Allô, c'est</b> Madame Devernois.	<b>Hello, this is</b> Mrs Devernois.
<b>Allô, Monsieur André, c'est</b> Monsieur Ronaldson à l'appareil.	<b>Hello</b> Mr André, <b>this is</b> Mr Ronaldson <b>speaking</b> .
<b>Bonsoir, Madame Paoletti, c'est</b> Madame Marsh à l'appareil.	<b>Good evening</b> Mrs Paoletti, <b>this is</b> Mrs Marsh <b>speaking</b> .
<b>Salut, Tarik, c'est</b> Flo.	<b>Hi</b> Tarik, Flo <b>here</b> .

**Bonjour**, Stéphanie est là?  
**C'est de la part de**  
Marie.

**Hello**, is Stéphanie in?  
**This is** Marie.

**I'm...**

<b>Je suis</b> une collègue de Nicole.	<b>I'm</b> a colleague of Nicole's.
<b>Je suis</b> un copain d'Émilie.	<b>I'm</b> a friend of Émilie's.
<b>Je suis</b> la fille de Monsieur Cadey.	<b>I'm</b> Mr Cadey's daughter.
Allô, <b>je suis</b> le locataire du 5 rue des Cèdres.	Hello, <b>I'm</b> the tenant of 5 rue des Cèdres.

If you want to ask for somebody in particular, use **Est-ce que... est là?** (*Is...there?*).

**Is...there?**

<b>Est-ce qu'Olivier est là</b> , s'il vous plaît?	<b>Is Olivier there</b> , please?
<b>Est-ce que</b> tes parents <b>sont là?</b>	<b>Are</b> your parents <b>in?</b>
Est-ce que vous pouvez me dire si Madame Revert <b>est là?</b>	Could you tell me whether Mrs Revert <b>is in?</b>

**BON À SAVOIR!**

If the person you want to speak to isn't in, the answer you may hear is **désolé, il n'est pas là** (*sorry, he's not in*).

**Is this...?**



<b>Est-ce que je suis bien au commissariat de police?</b>	<b>Is this the</b> police station?
<b>C'est bien</b> le numéro de la mairie?	<b>This is</b> the number for the town hall, <b>isn't it?</b>
<b>Je suis bien au</b> 08 13 76 89 98?	<b>Is this</b> 08 13 76 89 98?

### BON À SAVOIR!

French telephone numbers are read out in groups of two digits, so the number above would be read as: **zéro huit, treize, soixante-seize, quatre-vingt-neuf, quatre-vingt-dix-huit** (*zero eight, thirteen, seventy-six, eighty-nine, ninety-eight*).

There are several ways of asking whether you may do something. Starting your question with **puis-je** will make you sound very formal. **Est-ce que je pourrais...?** (*May I...?*) is much more frequent in everyday spoken French.

### May I...?

<b>Puis-je</b> parler au directeur, s'il vous plaît?	<b>May I</b> speak to the manager, please?
<b>Est-ce que je pourrais</b> parler à Cécile, s'il vous plaît?	<b>May I</b> speak to Cécile, please?
<b>Est-ce que je pourrais</b> avoir le numéro de l'hôtel Europa?	<b>May I</b> have the number of the Europa hotel?

One of the first things you may want to ask when you speak to someone is how they are. The French expressions **Comment ça va?** and **Ça va?** both mean the same thing – *How are you?*. You can also say **Comment vas-tu?**

to one person you know well, and **Comment allez-vous?** to several people or to someone you don't know so well.

### How are you?

<b>Ça va?</b>	<b>How are you?</b>
<b>Comment ça va?</b>	<b>How are you?</b>
<b>Ça va bien?</b>	<b>How are you?</b>

### How's...?

<b>Comment va?</b>	<b>How's life?</b>
<b>Comment va ton frère?</b>	<b>How is your brother?</b>
<b>Comment vont tes parents?</b>	<b>How are your parents?</b>

In response to being asked how you are, you can use several different phrases.

### Fine, thanks.

<b>Ça va bien, merci, et vous?</b>	<b>I'm fine, thanks, what about you?</b>
<b>Bien, merci, et toi?</b>	<b>I'm fine, thanks, and you?</b>
<b>Ça va pas mal, et toi?</b>	<b>Not bad. And yourself?</b>
<b>Ça ne va pas fort en ce moment.</b>	<b>I haven't been great lately.</b>

## SAYING WHY YOU'RE CALLING

In the course of the telephone call you will often want to explain to someone why you are calling or where you're calling from. To do this, you use the verb **appeler**. For more information on **-er** verbs like **appeler**, see [here](#).

### I'm phoning about...

<b>J'appelle à propos de</b> demain soir.	<b>I'm phoning about</b> tomorrow night.
<b>J'appelle à propos de</b> votre annonce dans le journal.	<b>I'm phoning about</b> your ad in the paper.
<b>J'appelle pour</b> parler à Marie.	<b>I'm phoning to</b> talk to Marie.
<b>J'appelle pour</b> avoir des détails sur vos tarifs.	<b>I'm phoning to</b> get further details on your rates.

### I'm calling from...

<b>J'appelle d'</b> une cabine.	<b>I'm calling from</b> a public phone.
<b>J'appelle de</b> mon portable.	<b>I'm calling from</b> my mobile.
<b>Je vous appelle de</b> mon travail.	<b>I'm calling you from</b> work.

If you want to ask whether you can do something, use **Est-ce que je peux...?** (*Can I...?*).

### Can I...?

<b>Est-ce que je peux</b> laisser un message?	<b>Can I</b> leave a message?
--	-------------------------------

**Est-ce que je peux**  
rappeler plus tard?

**Can I** call back later?

**Je peux** vous laisser un  
message à lui transmettre?

**Can you** pass on a  
message, please?

If you are asking someone whether they can do something for you, you should use **Est-ce que vous pouvez...?** (*Can you...?*) or **Est-ce que vous pourriez...?** (*Could you...?*). These come from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [here](#).

**Can you...?**

**Est-ce que vous pouvez**  
lui dire que Paul a appelé,  
s'il vous plaît?

**Can you** let him know that  
Paul rang, please?

**Est-ce que vous pouvez**  
me passer Johanna, s'il  
vous plaît?

**Can you** put me through to  
Johanna, please?

**Tu peux** lui faire la  
commission, s'il te plaît?

**Can you** pass the message  
on to him, please?

**Est-ce que vous pourriez**  
lui transmettre un  
message?

**Could you** give her a  
message?

**Vous pourriez** lui  
demander de me rappeler?

**Could you** ask her to call  
me, please?

## **GIVING INFORMATION**

When you make a phone call in French, you may well be asked to give certain pieces of information. To give your phone number or address, use **mon numéro, c'est** (*my number is*) and **mon adresse, c'est** (*my address is*).

## My number is...

<b>Mon numéro</b> de portable, c'est le... ...et <b>mon numéro</b> de fixe, c'est le... <b>Le numéro de téléphone de mon hôtel</b> , c'est le...	<b>My mobile number is...</b> ...and <b>my landline number is...</b> <b>My hotel phone number is...</b>
--	---

## My address is...

<b>Mon adresse</b> à Paris, c'est... <b>Mon adresse</b> en Angleterre, c'est... <b>J'habite le 6</b> , Maryhill Drive à Cork. <b>Je loge</b> à l'Hôtel Méditerranée.	<b>My address in Paris is...</b> <b>My address in England is...</b> <b>My address is 6 Maryhill Drive</b> , Cork. <b>I'm staying</b> at the Méditerranée Hotel.
---	--

To give details of where you can be contacted, use **vous pouvez me joindre** (*you can contact me*).

## You can contact me...

<b>Vous pouvez me joindre</b> au 09 98 02 46 23. <b>Tu peux me joindre</b> sur mon fixe. <b>Tu peux la joindre</b> entre midi et deux heures. <b>Tu peux</b> me laisser un	<b>You can contact me</b> on 09 98 02 46 23. <b>You can contact me</b> on my landline. <b>You can get her</b> between twelve and two. <b>You can</b> leave me a
---	--

message sur le répondeur.

message on my  
answerphone.

## ANSWERING THE TELEPHONE

You always answer the telephone with the same French expression **Allô?**. This is only used when speaking on the phone. You can say this whether you are making or receiving the call, and for any type of call, formal or informal.

### Hello?

<b>Allô?</b>	<b>Hello?</b>
<b>Allô, oui?</b>	<b>Hello?</b>
<b>Allô, j'écoute?</b>	<b>Hello?</b>

If the person on the other end of the line asks for you, you answer **elle-même** if you are a woman, and **lui-même** if you are a man. This is a formal way of saying *speaking*. If you want to be less formal but still polite, you can simply say **oui, c'est moi**.

### Speaking.

<b>Elle-même.</b>	<b>Speaking.</b>
<b>Lui-même.</b>	<b>Speaking.</b>
<b>Oui, c'est moi.</b>	<b>Yes, it's me.</b>

When you answer the telephone you often need to ask whether the caller would like to leave a message, call back later and so on. Use **Vous voulez...?** to someone you don't know well, or **Tu veux...?** to someone you know well to say *Would you like to...?.* **voulez** and **veux** both come from the verb **vouloir**. For more information on **vouloir**, see [here](#).

## Would you like to...?

<b>Vous voulez</b> laisser un message?	<b>Would you like to</b> leave a message?
<b>Vous voulez qu'</b> il vous rappelle?	<b>Would you like</b> him to call you back?
<b>Tu veux</b> rappeler un peu plus tard?	<b>Would you like to</b> call back a bit later?

## Would you mind...?

<b>Est-ce que ça vous dérangerait de</b> parler plus lentement, s'il vous plaît?	<b>Would you mind</b> speaking more slowly,
<b>Est-ce que ça vous dérangerait de</b> répéter, s'il vous plaît? Je vous entends mal.	<b>Would you mind</b> saying that again, please? I can't hear you very well.
<b>Est-ce que ça vous ennuerait de</b> l'épeler, s'il vous plaît?	<b>Would you mind</b> spelling it out, please?
<b>Ça t'ennuerait de</b> me rappeler demain?	<b>Would you mind</b> calling me back tomorrow?

## ENDING A TELEPHONE CALL

When you end a telephone call in French, you can say goodbye as you normally would face to face. Use **au revoir**, **madame/mademoiselle/monsieur** to say goodbye to people you don't know well. You can just say **au revoir** to the people you know, or **salut** if you want to sound more informal.

## Goodbye!

<b>Au revoir</b> , Laurent!	<b>Goodbye</b> Laurent!
<b>Au revoir</b> , Monsieur Blum!	<b>Goodbye</b> Mr Blum!
Allez, <b>salut</b> , Emma! On se rappelle !	Right, <b>bye</b> Emma! Talk to you later!

## Have a good...!

<b>Bonne</b> journée!	<b>Have a good</b> day!
<b>Bon</b> week-end!	<b>Have a good</b> weekend!
<b>Bonne</b> soirée!	<b>Have a good</b> evening!

To say *See you...!*, use **à** followed by **demain** (*tomorrow*), **plus tard** (*later*), **ce soir** (*tonight*) and so on.

## See you...!

<b>À</b> demain!	<b>See you</b> tomorrow!
<b>À</b> plus tard!	<b>See you</b> later!
<b>À</b> ce soir!	<b>See you</b> tonight!
<b>À</b> bientôt!	<b>See you</b> soon!
<b>À</b> plus!	<b>Later!</b>

As part of saying your goodbyes, you may want to pass your greetings or best wishes on to other people. To do this, use **passe le bonjour à** (*say hello to*).

## Say hello to...

<b>Passe le bonjour à</b> ta	<b>Say hello to</b> your family.
------------------------------	----------------------------------



famille.

**Passe le bonjour** à ta sœur.

**Salue** tes parents **de ma part**.

Lara te **dit bonjour**.

**Mes amitiés** à ton père.

**Say hello to** your sister.

**Say hello to** your parents **for me**.

Lara **says hello**.

**Give** your father **my best wishes**.

### **BON À SAVOIR!**

You may be interested to know that the French for *to hang up on someone* is **raccrocher au nez de quelqu'un** which literally means *to hang up on someone's nose*.

Occasionally you may be forced into finishing a call earlier than you had planned, especially on a mobile phone. To tell someone what the problem is, use **je n'ai...plus de** (*I don't have any...left*).

### **I don't have any...left**

**Je n'ai** bientôt **plus de** batterie.

**Je n'ai** presque **plus de** crédit.

**I don't have** much battery **left**.

**I've** almost **no** credit **left**.

### **BON À SAVOIR!**

Of course, the main reason for mobile calls ending suddenly is often that the network coverage isn't adequate. To tell someone that they're breaking up, use **ça va couper**.

### **LISTEN OUT FOR**

Here are some key phrases you may hear when using the telephone.

Qui est à l'appareil?	Who's calling, please?
C'est de la part de qui?	Who shall I say is calling?
Ne quittez pas, s'il vous plaît.	Please hold the line.
Ne quitte pas, je vais le chercher.	Hang on a minute, I'll get him.
Vous n'avez pas fait le bon numéro.	You've got the wrong number.
Vous connaissez le numéro de poste?	Do you have the extension number?
Je transfère votre communication.	I'll put you through.
Le numéro que vous avez composé n'est pas attribué.	The number you have dialled doesn't exist.
Vous êtes bien au 09 73 47 60 21.	You've reached 09 73 47 60 21.
Veuillez laisser un message après le bip.	Please leave a message after the tone.
Cet appel vous sera facturé 1 euro la minute.	This call will cost 1 euro per minute.
Tous nos opérateurs sont en ligne, merci de rappeler ultérieurement.	All our operators are busy, please call back later.
Votre correspondant n'est pas en mesure de prendre cet appel; veuillez laisser votre message sur sa boîte vocale.	Your call is being forwarded to the mobile messaging service.
Ça va couper.	You're breaking up.

Merci d'avoir appelé.

Thanks for calling.

## WRITING EMAILS AND LETTERS

There will be times when you need to send an email or write a letter in French. Here are some useful phrases which you can use to do this. You can also have a look at examples of emails and letters in French.

### **Starting a personal email or letter**

Chère Aurélie,...	Dear Aurélie,...
Ma chère tante,...	My dear aunt,...
Salut Élodie!	Hi Élodie!

### **Ending a personal email or letter**

Cordialement.	Kind regards.
Bien à vous, Marie.	Yours, Marie.
Amitiés, Jean.	Kind regards, Jean.
Je t'embrasse, Naïma.	Love, Naïma.
À bientôt!	See you soon!
Mes amitiés à Fadou.	Send my best wishes to Fadou.
(Grosses) Bises, Charlotte.	Love, Charlotte.

**Saying your email address**  
 In French, when you tell someone your email address, you say:  
*coralie arobase europost point ef-ayr*

## Starting a formal email or letter

Cher M. Provence,...	Dear Mr Provence,...
Madame,...	Dear Madam,...
Madame, Monsieur,...	Dear Sir or Madam,...
Cher Thomas/Chère Océane,...	Dear Thomas/Océane,...

## Ending a formal email or letter

Veillez accepter, Madame, l'expression de mes sentiments distingués.	Yours faithfully/sincerely
Veillez accepter, Monsieur, l'expression de mes sentiments distingués.	Yours faithfully/sincerely
J'attends votre réponse.	I look forward to hearing

Cordialement, Mme  
Banks.

Je vous prie de croire,  
Monsieur, à l'assurance  
de mes sentiments  
distingués.

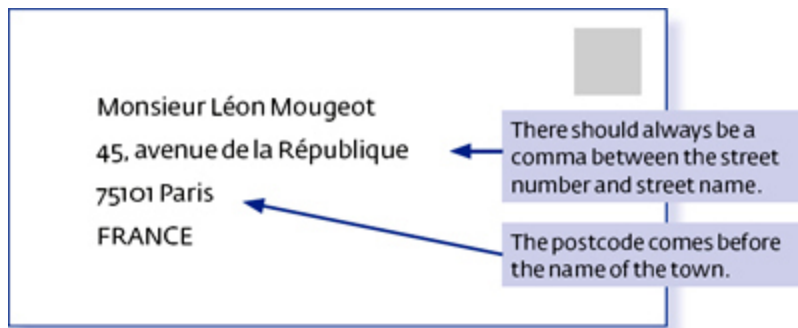
from you. Kind regards,  
Mrs Banks.

Yours faithfully/sincerely

### **BON À SAVOIR!**

French formal letters and emails sometimes finish with long-winded standard expressions such as the ones above. You can get away with only writing **cordialement** followed by your name, particularly in emails, but it is slightly less formal.

### **Addressing an envelope**



Fichier Edition Affichage Outils Composer Aide Envoyer

A:

Cc:

Copie cachée:

Objet:

**Saying an email address**  
 In French, when you tell someone an email address, you say: *administration arobase stages trait d'union france point org*

Madame, Monsieur,

Je suis très intéressé par votre stage linguistique d'été, dont j'ai trouvé les détails sur votre site Web. Avant de réserver une place, j'aurais voulu savoir si vous pouvez me conseiller un logement à proximité, de préférence dans une famille, pour les deux semaines de stage.

Je vous remercie par avance pour votre réponse.

Cordialement, ← **When ending a formal email in French, you can sign off with the more informal **Cordialement**, followed by your name.**

James Wilson

Joanne Briggs ← **Your own name and address**  
 64 Poplar Drive  
 Leeds LS1 2HE

Name and address of the person/company you are writing to → Crèche Everest  
 15, av. Jean Médecin  
 06000 Nice

Leeds, le 2 juin 2015 ← **Town/city you are writing from, and the date**

Madame, Monsieur,

Actuellement étudiante en dernière année de formation « Voyages et tourisme » à Leeds City College, je suis à la recherche d'un stage d'un mois en France. Votre structure m'a semblé idéale car j'aimerais me spécialiser dans l'encadrement des enfants.

Je vous serais reconnaissante de m'indiquer si vous seriez en mesure de m'accueillir en tant que stagiaire l'été prochain.

Je joins mon CV à cette lettre, en espérant qu'il retiendra votre attention.

Dans l'attente de votre réponse, je vous prie d'agréer, Madame, Monsieur, mes salutations distinguées.

*Joanne Briggs*

## TEXTING

Texting is as important a part of French communication as it is in the UK. If you would like to text (**envoyer un texto** or **SMS**) in French, here are some abbreviations used in French text messaging and emails. You will notice that just as the numbers 2, 4 and 8 are used in English in text messages (*C U 2moro; R U coming 4 Xmas?; Gr8!*), French texts also use 1 for all “in/un/ain/” sounds, 2 for “de/deu” sounds and 6 for “si/sis” sounds.

<b>Texto</b>	<b>French</b>	<b>English</b>
@+	<i>à plus tard</i>	see you later
2m1	<i>à demain</i>	see you tomorrow
bi1to	<i>bientôt</i>	soon
biz	<i>bisous, bises</i>	kisses
bjr	<i>bonjour</i>	hello
bsr	<i>bonsoir</i>	good evening
c	<i>c'est</i>	it's
cpg	<i>c'est pas grave</i>	it's no big deal
dsl	<i>désolé</i>	I'm sorry
entouk	<i>en tout cas</i>	in any case
G la N	<i>J'ai la haine</i>	I'm gutted
IR	<i>hier</i>	yesterday
je t'M	<i>je t'aime</i>	I love you
ki	<i>qui</i>	who
koi	<i>quoi</i>	what
lol/mdr	<i>mort de rire</i>	rolling on the floor laughing
mr6	<i>merci</i>	thanks

MSG	<i>message</i>	message
p2k	<i>pas de quoi</i>	you're welcome
parske	<i>parce que</i>	because
pk	<i>pourquoi</i>	why
qqn	<i>quelqu'un</i>	someone
ri1	<i>rien</i>	nothing
slt	<i>salut</i>	hi
svp	<i>s'il vous plaît</i>	please
TOK	<i>t'es OK?</i>	are you OK?
TOQP	<i>t'es occupé?</i>	are you busy?
we	<i>week-end</i>	weekend
Xlnt	<i>excellent</i>	excellent

## **SOCIAL MEDIA**

With social media an everyday means of communication, below are some useful phrases and terms to help you.

<b>French</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>un(e) ami(e)</i>	a friend
<i>ajouter à sa liste d'amis</i>	to friend
<i>un blog</i>	a blog
<i>un compte</i>	an account
<i>créer/ouvrir un compte</i>	to create/open an account



<i>faire un commentaire sur</i>	to comment (on)
<i>un fil de discussion</i>	a (discussion) thread
<i>un forum</i>	a forum
<i>un mot-dièse, un hashtag</i>	a hashtag
<i>un message privé, un MP, un message direct</i>	a DM, a direct message
<i>envoyer un message privé or un MP à quelqu'un</i>	to DM somebody
<i>une mise à jour du statut</i>	a status update
<i>un mur</i>	a wall
<i>écrire sur le mur de quelqu'un</i>	to write on somebody's wall
<i>un news feed, un fil d'actualités or de nouvelles</i>	a news feed
<i>une photo du profil</i>	a profile picture
<i>poster quelque chose sur le mur de quelqu'un</i>	to post something on or to somebody's wall
<i>un profil</i>	a profile
<i>retweeter</i>	to retweet
<i>un suiveur, une suiveuse; un(e) abonné(e)</i>	a follower
<i>suivre</i>	to follow
<i>arrêter de suivre</i>	to unfollow
<i>un sujet tendance</i>	a trending topic
<i>taguer quelqu'un sur une photo</i>	to tag somebody in a photo
<i>un tweet</i>	a tweet

*tweeter (sur)*

to tweet (about)

## Lifestyle Tips

- It is better to avoid loud ringtones (**sonneries**) and mobile-phone conversations in public places in France, and more particularly on public transport and in restaurants. It is even less accepted than it is in the UK.
- If you really need to send a text message or to make a phone call while in company, it is always better to apologize and explain: **excusez-moi, je dois passer un coup de fil** (*sorry, I need to make a phone call*) or **je dois envoyer un texto** or **SMS** (*I need to send a text message*).
- In France, you might come across special phone numbers called **numéro vert®** with the prefix 0800, **numéro azur®** (0810) and **numéro indigo®** (0820 or 0825). These are fixed-rate numbers, used mainly by companies. **numéros verts®** are free from a landline, **numéros azur®** are at a reduced rate and **numéros indigo®** are charged at local rates.
- As in Britain, the use of a **téléphone portable** (*mobile phone*) is forbidden while driving. The use of **kits mains libres** (*hands-free kits*) however is allowed.

# Time, numbers, date

## Trois, deux, un... Partez! – Three, two, one... Go!

### LES NOMBRES – NUMBERS

When communicating in French you'll often need to say and understand numbers, so here's a list to help you.

<b>0</b>	zéro
<b>1</b>	un(e)
<b>2</b>	deux
<b>3</b>	trois
<b>4</b>	quatre
<b>5</b>	cinq
<b>6</b>	six
<b>7</b>	sept
<b>8</b>	huit
<b>9</b>	neuf
<b>10</b>	dix
<b>11</b>	onze

12	douze
13	treize
14	quatorze
15	quinze
16	seize
17	dix-sept
18	dix-huit
19	dix-neuf
20	vingt

### BON À SAVOIR!

A little tip: French speakers never use the letter O to refer to **zéro** (zero), as we do in English.

In French, the word **un** (*one*) can change its ending. The masculine form **un** becomes **une** before a feminine noun.

### one

Combien de DVD as-tu acheté? – Seulement <b>un</b> .	How many DVDs did you buy? – Only <b>one</b> .
J'ai <b>un</b> frère.	I've got <b>one</b> brother.
Il ne me reste qu' <b>une</b> cigarette.	I've only got <b>one</b> cigarette left.
Tu as écrit combien de pages? – <b>Une</b> .	How many pages have you written? – <b>One</b> .

Although most consonants aren't pronounced at the end of French words, the **-t** in **vingt** is when it is followed by a number.

---

--	--

21	vingt et un(e)
22	vingt-deux
23	vingt-trois
24	vingt-quatre
25	vingt-cinq
26	vingt-six
27	vingt-sept
28	vingt-huit
29	vingt-neuf

Use **et** to form tens ending in one; **vingt et un** (*twenty-one*), **trente et un** (*thirty-one*), **quarante et un** (*forty-one*) and so on, and for **soixante et onze** (*seventy-one*). The exceptions are **quatre-vingt-un** (*eighty-one*) and **quatre-vingt-onze** (*ninety-one*).

30	trente
31	trente et un(e)
40	quarante
42	quarante-deux
50	cinquante
53	cinquante-trois
60	soixante
64	soixante-quatre
70	soixante-dix
71	soixante et onze
75	soixante-quinze
80	quatre-vingts
81	quatre-vingt-un(e)
90	quatre-vingt-dix

91

quatre-vingt-onze

99

quatre-vingt-dix-neuf

Just as the word for *one* can be **un** or **une**, the words for *twenty-one*, *thirty-one*, *forty-one* and so on also change. The masculine forms **vingt et un**, **trente et un** and so forth become **vingt et une**, **trente et une** and so on in the feminine.

### twenty-one to sixty-nine

Tu as quel âge? – J’ai <b>vingt et un</b> ans.	How old are you? – I’m <b>twenty-one</b> .
Il y avait <b>trente et un</b> étudiants dans la classe.	There were <b>thirty-one</b> students in the class.
Il y a <b>vingt et une</b> femmes dans ce service.	There are <b>twenty-one</b> women in this department.
Il y a <b>trente et un</b> jours en janvier.	There are <b>thirty-one</b> days in January.
Il y aura <b>cinquante et une</b> personnes dans le groupe.	There’ll be <b>fifty-one</b> people in the group.

When **quatre-vingts** (*eighty*) is on its own, or when it is not followed by any other number, it is spelt with an **–s** at the end. When it is followed by another number, as in **quatre-vingt-un**, **quatre-vingt-deux**, **quatre-vingt-huit** and so on (*eighty-one*, *eighty-two*, *eighty-eight* and so on), the **–s** is dropped. The **–s** at the end of **quatre-vingts** is pronounced like a “z” when it precedes a word beginning with a vowel, for instance in **quatre-vingts ans**, **quatre-vingts euros** and so on.

### eighty

Le billet coûte <b>quatre-</b>	The ticket costs <b>eighty-</b>
--------------------------------	---------------------------------

**vingt-neuf** euros

Mon grand-père vient  
d'avoir **quatre-vingts**  
ans.

**nine** euros.

My grandad has just turned  
**eighty**.

## BON À SAVOIR!

French speakers tend to read telephone numbers in tens where possible, so when saying 08 13 76 89 98, you'd say **zéro huit, treize, soixante-seize, quatre-vingt-neuf, quatre-vingt-dix-huit** (*o-eight, thirteen, seventy-six, eighty-nine, ninety-eight*).

Remember that **soixante-dix** (*seventy* – literally *sixty-ten*) and **quatre-vingt-dix** (*ninety* – literally *eighty-ten*) work differently from the other tens. Logically enough, you have to start from ten when counting up, so that *seventy-one* is **soixante et onze**, *seventy-two* is **soixante-douze** and so on. The same applies to **quatre-vingt-dix** (*ninety*).

## seventies and nineties

Il est né en **soixante-dix-sept**.

**Soixante-quinze** est le  
numéro du département  
de Paris.

Les bleus ont gagné la  
coupe du monde de  
football en **quatre-vingt-  
dix-huit**.

He was born in **seventy-  
seven**.

**Seventy-five** is the  
département number of  
Paris.

The French national team  
won the football World  
Cup in **ninety-eight**.

## BON À SAVOIR!

Just as in English, you can name a year from the last century by the last two digits, for example, **quatre-vingt-dix-huit** ('98). It doesn't apply to the noughties and beyond, however, so for '06 you would say **deux mille six** (*two thousand and six*).



<b>100</b>	cent
<b>101</b>	cent un(e)
<b>150</b>	cent cinquante
<b>200</b>	deux cents
<b>300</b>	trois cent(s)
<b>400</b>	quatre cent(s)
<b>500</b>	cinq cent(s)
<b>600</b>	six cent(s)
<b>700</b>	sept cent(s)
<b>800</b>	huit cent(s)
<b>900</b>	neuf cent(s)

**cent** (*one hundred*) takes an **-s** when it is preceded by a number and when no number follows it, for example **deux cents** (*two hundred*). When it is followed by another number, as in **deux cent un** (*two hundred and one*), the **-s** is dropped.

## hundred

Il y a <b>cent</b> centimes dans un euro.	There are <b>one hundred</b> cents in a euro.
Vous avez <i>Les Cent un dalmatiens</i> en DVD?	Do you have <b>One hundred and one dalmatians</b> on DVD?
Ça coûte <b>cent cinquante</b> euros.	It costs <b>one hundred and fifty</b> euros.
Il doit y avoir plus de <b>deux cents</b> personnes.	There must be over <b>two hundred</b> people.
Il y avait à peu près <b>cinq cent cinquante</b> employés dans le bâtiment.	There were around <b>five hundred and fifty</b> employees in the building.

## BON À SAVOIR!

Don't translate the *and* in *one hundred and one*, *one hundred and two*, *one hundred and twenty* and so on in French. Just give **cent**, **deux cents**, **cing cents** and so on, followed immediately by the other number.

In French, a space rather than a comma is used to separate thousands and millions.

<b>1 000</b>	mille
<b>1 001</b>	mille un(e)
<b>1 020</b>	mille vingt
<b>1 150</b>	mille cent cinquante
<b>2 000</b>	deux mille
<b>2 500</b>	deux mille cinq cents
<b>3 400</b>	trois mille quatre cents
<b>100 000</b>	cent mille

## one thousand to one hundred thousand

Cette ville existe depuis plus de <b>mille</b> ans.	There's been a town here for over <b>a thousand</b> years.
Ils se sont mariés en <b>deux mille deux</b> .	They got married in <b>two thousand and two</b> .
Combien font <b>cent mille</b> euros en livres?	How much is <b>one hundred thousand</b> euros in pounds?
Ils vont payer <b>deux cent cinquante-six mille livres pour leur nouvelle</b> maison.	They're paying <b>two hundred and fifty-six thousand</b> pounds for their new house.

## BON À SAVOIR!

Remember that **mille** (*thousand*) doesn't take an **-s** in the plural.

<b>1 000 000</b>	un million
<b>1 000 000 000</b>	mille millions
<b>1 000 000 000 000</b>	un milliard

To talk about a million or a billion things, you use **un million de** and **un milliard de**.

### one million to one billion

Il a gagné <b>un million de</b> livres à la loterie.	He won <b>a million</b> pounds on the lottery.
Le gouvernement a déjà dépensé <b>deux milliards de</b> livres dans ce projet.	The government has already spent <b>two billion</b> pounds on this project.

In French, a decimal **virgule** (*comma*) is used rather than a decimal point.

### ...point...

zéro <b>virgule</b> cinq (0,5)	nought <b>point</b> five (0.5)
quatre-vingt-dix-neuf <b>virgule</b> neuf (99,9)	ninety-nine <b>point</b> nine (99.9)
six <b>virgule</b> quatre-vingt-neuf (6,89)	six <b>point</b> eighty-nine (6.89)
Ils ont augmenté les taux d'intérêt à quatre <b>virgule</b> cinq pour cent. (4,5%)	They've put interest rates up to four <b>point</b> five per cent. (4.5%)

To read prices that include both euros and cents, put **euros** in the middle between the euro and the cent figures. The word **centimes** is optional.

### euros and cents

Ça fera <b>dix-huit euros quatre-vingt-dix-neuf centimes.</b> (18,99 €)	That'll be <b>eighteen euros and ninety-nine cents.</b> (€18.99)
Ça m'a coûté <b>soixante-cinq euros vingt.</b> (65€20)	It cost me <b>sixty-five euros twenty.</b> (€65.20)

### BON À SAVOIR!

When you write prices in figures in French, you put the euro symbol after the figure or instead of the comma. Note that although both euros and dollars are divided into cents in English, in French euro cents are mostly called **centimes d'euros**, while dollar cents are **cents**.

### kilos and grams

Il me faut <b>un kilo de</b> pommes de terre.	I need <b>a kilo of</b> potatoes.
Je voudrais <b>deux cents grammes de viande hachée.</b>	I'd like <b>two hundred grams of</b> mince.
Je peux avoir <b>une livre de</b> tomates?	Can I have <b>half a kilo of</b> tomatoes?

### BON À SAVOIR!

The feminine word **une livre** is used to mean *half a kilo*. It can also mean a *pound sterling*. The masculine word **un livre** means *a book*.

## litres

À combien est <b>le litre de</b> carburant?	How much is <b>a litre of</b> petrol?
Il faut <b>un demi-litre de</b> lait pour cette recette.	You need <b>half a litre of</b> milk for this recipe.

## kilometres, metres and centimetres

Il faisait du <b>cent quarante kilomètres</b> à l'heure.	He was doing <b>one hundred and forty kilometres an hour</b> .
On est à <b>trente kilomètres de</b> Saint-Malo.	We're <b>thirty kilometres from</b> Saint-Malo.
Je mesure <b>un mètre soixante-six</b> .	I'm <b>one metre sixty-six centimetres</b> tall.
Ça fait <b>vingt centimètres de long sur dix de large</b> .	It's <b>twenty centimetres long by ten wide</b> .

## percentages

Le taux d'inflation est de <b>deux virgule cinq pour cent</b> .	The inflation rate is <b>two point five per cent</b> .
<b>Cinquante-cinq pour cent</b> ont voté non au référendum.	<b>Fifty-five per cent</b> voted no in the referendum.

## temperature

Les températures oscilleront entre <b>douze et quinze degrés</b> .	The temperatures will vary between <b>twelve and fifteen degrees</b> .
--	--

| Il fait **trente degrés**.

| It's **thirty degrees**.

There are times when you'll need to use numbers to show the order of things. As in English, there's another set of numbers you use for this. Unlike in English, they are never used in dates, except for **premier** (*first*). In English we can write figures with *-st*, *-nd*, *-rd*, *-th* on the end as required (*1st*, *2nd*, *3rd*, *4th* and so on). Similarly in French you write the figure followed by **er** or **re** (*feminine*) for *1st* or **e** for any other figure. These abbreviations can be given an *-s* in the plural.

1st	premier, première (1 <sup>er</sup> , 1 <sup>re</sup> )
2nd	deuxième, second(e) (2 <sup>ème</sup> , 2 <sup>e</sup> )
3rd	troisième (3 <sup>ème</sup> , 3 <sup>e</sup> )
4th	quatrième (4 <sup>ème</sup> , 4 <sup>e</sup> )
5th	cinquième (5 <sup>ème</sup> , 5 <sup>e</sup> )
6th	sixième (6 <sup>ème</sup> , 6 <sup>e</sup> )
7th	septième (7 <sup>ème</sup> , 7 <sup>e</sup> )
8th	huitième (8 <sup>ème</sup> , 8 <sup>e</sup> )
9th	neuvième (9 <sup>ème</sup> , 9 <sup>e</sup> )
10th	dixième (10 <sup>ème</sup> , 10 <sup>e</sup> )
100th	centième (100 <sup>ème</sup> , 100 <sup>e</sup> )
1000th	millième (1000 <sup>ème</sup> , 1000 <sup>e</sup> )

Once you can count in French, it is very easy to form these numbers; substitute the final **-e** with **-ième** for numbers that end with an **-e** (**onze**, **quinze**, **quarante**, **soixante** and so on). Add **-ième** onto the end of the words that end with a consonant (**trois**, **vingt**, **quatre-vingt-dix**). All you

need to memorize is that **cinq** becomes **cinquième** and **neuf** becomes **neuvième**.

### first, second, third

Ils fêtent leur <b>premier</b> anniversaire de mariage aujourd'hui. C'est la <b>première</b> fois qu'il vient ici. C'est mon <b>deuxième</b> séjour en Provence. Il est arrivé <b>troisième</b> de la course.	They're celebrating their <b>first</b> wedding anniversary today. This is the <b>first</b> time he's been here. This is my <b>second</b> trip to Provence. He came <b>third</b> in the race.
--	---

### 1st, 2nd, 3rd

C'est la <b>1<sup>re</sup></b> porte à droite. Il travaille sur la <b>5<sup>e</sup></b> avenue. Il est arrivé <b>20<sup>e</sup></b> au classement.	It's the <b>1st</b> door on the right. He works on <b>5th</b> Avenue. He's ranked <b>20th</b> .
--	---

## L'HEURE – THE TIME

In French, as in English, you have to use numbers when talking about the time. Use **il est... heures** (*it's... o'clock*) to say what time it is in French. Remember that you can't omit the word **heures** in French as you can in English with *o'clock*, apart from when you use **midi** (*midday*) or **minuit** (*midnight*).

## It's...o'clock

<b>Il est une heure.</b>	<b>It's one o'clock.</b>
<b>Il est minuit.</b>	<b>It's midnight.</b>
<b>Il est midi.</b>	<b>It's midday.</b>
<b>Il est six heures.</b>	<b>It's six o'clock.</b>
<b>Il est trois heures du matin.</b>	<b>It's three in the morning.</b>
<b>Il est quatre heures de l'après-midi.</b>	<b>It's four o'clock in the afternoon.</b>

## BON À SAVOIR!

You use **du matin** to talk about the early hours of the morning. For example, **deux heures du matin** is *two o'clock in the morning*.

The word *past* is usually not translated in French; the minutes follow the hours directly (**une heure cinq** – *five past one*) except for *quarter past* and *half past* where **et** is used: **deux heures et quart** (*quarter past two*), **une heure et demie** (*half past one*) and so on.

## It's...past...

<b>Il est une heure vingt-cinq.</b>	<b>It's twenty-five past one.</b>
<b>Il est six heures cinq.</b>	<b>It's five past six.</b>
<b>Il est une heure et quart.</b>	<b>It's quarter past one.</b>
<b>Il est cinq heures et demie.</b>	<b>It's half past five.</b>

Put **moins le** before **quart** to say *quarter to*, for example, **il est minuit moins le quart** (*it's quarter to midnight*). For other times using *to*, put **moins** and the number of minutes directly after the hours, for example, **il est midi moins cinq** (*it's five to twelve*).



## It's...to...

<b>Il est</b> une heure <b>moins le</b> quart.	<b>It's</b> quarter <b>to</b> one.
<b>Il est</b> une heure <b>moins</b> vingt.	<b>It's</b> twenty <b>to</b> one.
<b>Il est</b> huit heures <b>moins</b> dix.	<b>It's</b> ten <b>to</b> eight.
<b>Il est</b> trois heures <b>moins</b> cinq.	<b>It's</b> five <b>to</b> three.

When you're in a French-speaking country, you may need to find out what the time is or what time something is happening. Except when asking **Quelle heure est-il?** (*What's the time?*), you'll need to ask **À quelle heure...?** (*What time...?*).

## What time...?

<b>À quelle heure</b> est le prochain train pour Albi?	<b>What time's</b> the next train for Albi?
<b>À quelle heure</b> ça commence?	<b>What time</b> does it start?
On se retrouve <b>à quelle heure?</b>	<b>What time</b> shall we meet?
<b>Quelle heure est-il?</b>	<b>What's the time?</b>
Vous avez <b>quelle heure?</b>	<b>What time</b> do you make it?

To say what time something is happening at, use **à**: **à une heure** (*at one o'clock*), **à deux heures** (*at two o'clock*), **à trois heures et demie** (*at half past three*) and so on. To say when something is happening by, use **avant**: **avant une heure** (*by one o'clock*), **avant deux heures** (*by two o'clock*), **avant trois heures et demie** (*by half past three*) and so on.

## at ...

Ça commence <b>à sept heures.</b>	It starts <b>at</b> seven o'clock.
Le train part <b>à sept heures et demie.</b>	The train leaves <b>at</b> seven thirty.
Je te vois <b>à trois heures et demie.</b>	I'll see you <b>at</b> half past three.
On peut se donner rendez-vous <b>à cinq heures et quart.</b>	We can arrange to meet up <b>at</b> quarter past five.

## by...

Est-ce que tu peux y être <b>avant</b> trois heures?	Can you be there <b>by</b> three o'clock?
Il faut que nous ayons terminé <b>avant</b> une heure moins le quart.	We must be finished <b>by</b> quarter to one.

**du matin** is often used where in English we'd say *am*. **de l'après-midi** and **du soir** are used where we'd say *pm*. It is also quite common to use the 24-hour clock in French in order to distinguish between the morning and the afternoon.

## at... am/pm

Je me lève <b>à huit heures du matin.</b>	I get up <b>at eight am.</b>
Je rentre à la maison <b>à quatre heures de l'après-midi.</b>	I go home again <b>at four pm.</b>
Je vais au lit <b>à vingt-trois</b>	I go to bed <b>at eleven pm.</b>

**heures.**

Rendez-vous à **midi pile.**

Nous sommes sortis **vers huit heures.**

Let's meet **at 12 noon precisely.**

We went out **at around eight pm.**

## LISTEN OUT FOR

Here are some key phrases you may hear to do with the time and numbers.

Le train de Paris part à 13h55 (treize heures cinquante-cinq).	The train for Paris leaves at 13:55.
Le train de 14h15 (quatorze heures quinze) pour Strasbourg partira de la voie deux.	The 14:15 train to Strasbourg will depart from platform two.
Le vol numéro 307 (trois cent sept) à destination de Londres décollera à 20h45 (vingt heures quarante cinq).	Flight number 307 for London is due to take off at 20:45.
Le vol 909 (neuf cent neuf) en provenance de Paris est à l'heure.	Flight 909 from Paris is on time.
Le bus arrive à Calais à 19h10 (dix-neuf heures dix).	The coach gets in to Calais at 19:10.
Il doit être onze heures à peu près.	It must be about eleven.

## LA DURÉE – SAYING HOW LONG

If you want to say that something will happen in so many minutes' time or in so many days' time, use **dans** to mean *in*. Use **en** instead to say how long something takes or took to do.

### **in...**

Je serai de retour <b>dans</b> vingt minutes.	I'll be back <b>in</b> twenty minutes.
Elle sera ici <b>dans</b> une semaine.	She'll be here <b>in</b> a week.
Il a fini l'exercice <b>en</b> seulement trois minutes.	He completed the exercise <b>in</b> only three minutes.
Je peux probablement faire le travail <b>en</b> une heure ou deux.	I can probably do the job <b>in</b> an hour or two.

To ask how long something lasts, use **Combien de temps...?** (*How long...?*). The verb **durer** (*to last*) is a useful one to know for asking such questions.

### **How long...?**

<b>Combien de temps</b> dure le film?	<b>How long's</b> the film?
<b>Combien de temps</b> va durer la visite?	<b>How long</b> will the tour take?
Tu en as pour <b>combien de temps?</b>	<b>How long</b> will you be?
<b>Combien de temps est-ce que ça va te prendre</b>	<b>How long will it take you</b> to paint the wall?

<b>pour peindre le mur?</b>	
<b>Ça va prendre combien de temps pour arriver en Grande-Bretagne?</b>	<b>How long will it take to get to Great Britain?</b>
<b>Ça prend combien de temps pour aller dans le centre?</b>	<b>How long does it take to get to the centre?</b>

If you want to say how long something takes, use **ça prend** or **ça met** (*it takes*).

**It takes...**

<b>Ça prend</b> moins de vingt minutes pour aller dans le centre à pied.	<b>It takes</b> less than twenty minutes to walk to the town centre.
<b>Ça prend</b> cinq minutes à préparer.	<b>It takes</b> five minutes to make.
<b>Ça m'a pris</b> deux heures pour aller à pied au village.	<b>It took</b> me two hours to walk to the village.
<b>Ça met</b> environ quarante minutes à cuire.	<b>It takes</b> about forty minutes <b>to</b> cook.
<b>Ils mettent</b> longtemps à te servir ici.	<b>They take</b> a long time <b>to</b> serve you here.

**LES SAISONS – THE SEASONS**

The seasons in French are used in the same way as in English.

le printemps	spring
--------------	--------

l'été	summer
l'automne	autumn
l'hiver	winter

To say *in autumn*, *in winter*, *in summer* and so on, use **en automne**, **en hiver**, **en été**, but *in spring* is **au printemps**.

**in...**

C'est <b>au printemps</b> qu'on a le meilleur temps ici.	We get the best weather here <b>in spring</b> .
On ne part pas camper <b>en hiver</b> .	We don't go camping <b>in winter</b> .
Ils se sont mariés <b>en été</b> 2013.	They got married <b>in the summer of</b> 2013.
Je préfère <b>le printemps</b> .	I like <b>the spring</b> best.
Je n'aime pas du tout <b>l'hiver</b> .	I don't like <b>winter</b> at all.

To clarify whether you're talking about *this summer* or *last summer*, *this winter* or *next winter*, you use **cet** (*this*) (or **ce** for **printemps**), **prochain** (*next*) and **dernier** (*last*).

**this/last/next...**

On va en Bretagne <b>cet été</b> .	We're going to Brittany <b>this summer</b> .
Je vais à Avoriaz <b>cet hiver</b> .	I'm going to Avoriaz <b>this winter</b> .
Il a fait assez doux <b>l'hiver dernier</b> .	It was quite mild <b>last winter</b> .
Elle va avoir son bébé <b>le</b>	She's expecting her baby

printemps prochain.

next spring.

## LES MOIS DE L'ANNÉE – THE MONTHS OF THE YEAR

The months of the year are always written with a small letter in French.

janvier	January
février	February
mars	March
avril	April
mai	May
juin	June
juillet	July
août	August
septembre	September
octobre	October
novembre	November
décembre	December

To say *in January*, *in February* and so on in French you use what you'd expect: **en janvier**, **en février**, and so forth.

**in...**

Mon anniversaire est <b>en août</b> .	My birthday is <b>in August</b> .
On partira probablement en vacances <b>en mai</b> .	We'll probably go on holiday <b>in May</b> .
J'ai rendu visite à des amis à	I visited some friends in Perpignan <b>in</b>

Perpignan **en septembre.**

On va aller à la montagne pour nos vacances **en août.**

**September.**

We're going to go to the mountains for our holidays **this August.**

**last.../next...**

Où est-ce que tu as passé tes vacances **en juin dernier?**

J'espère aller en Amérique du Sud **en juillet prochain.**

Where did you go on holiday **last June?**

I'm hoping to go to South America **next July.**

If you want to say that something is happening *at the beginning of* or *at the end of* a month, you can use the expressions **début** and **fin**.

Elle commence à l'université **début** octobre.

Les grandes vacances commencent **fin** juin.

Ils déménagent **à la mi-**juin.

She starts university **at the beginning of** October.

The summer holidays start **at the end of** June.

They're moving house **in the middle of** June.

## LES DATES – DATES

To ask what the date is, you can use **Quelle est la date d'aujourd'hui?** (*What's the date today?*). When talking about dates, French speakers use **deux** (*two*), **trois** (*three*), **quatre** (*four*) and so on rather than **deuxième** (*second*), **troisième** (*third*) and so on. For the *first* of the month, however, **premier** is used.



## It's the...of...

<b>On est le premier</b> juillet.	<b>It's the first of</b> July.
<b>On est le 28</b> décembre aujourd'hui.	<b>It's</b> December <b>28th</b> today.
<b>C'est le dix</b> janvier demain.	Tomorrow's <b>the tenth of</b> January.
<b>C'était le 20</b> novembre hier.	<b>It was 20th</b> November yesterday.
<b>On est le jeudi 2</b> mars.	<b>It's</b> Thursday, <b>2nd</b> March.

## BON À SAVOIR!

When writing a letter, write the date in the form **lundi 19 mars 2015**.

To say what date something is happening or happened on, use **le** before the number.

## on the...of...

Il est né <b>le quatorze février</b> 1990.	He was born <b>on the fourteenth of February</b> , 1990.
Il est mort <b>le vingt-trois avril</b> 1616.	He died <b>on April the twenty-third</b> , 1616.
Ils prévoient de se marier <b>le 18 octobre</b> 2015.	They were planning to get married <b>on October 18th</b> 2015.
Où est-ce que tu penses que tu seras <b>le vingt octobre</b> ?	Where do you think you'll be <b>on the twentieth of October</b> ?

## LES JOURS DE LA SEMAINE – THE DAYS OF THE WEEK

The days of the week are always written with a small letter in French.

lundi	Monday
mardi	Tuesday
mercredi	Wednesday
jeudi	Thursday
vendredi	Friday
samedi	Saturday
dimanche	Sunday

To say what day it is, just say **on est jeudi** (*it's Thursday*), **on est samedi** (*it's Saturday*). You can also say **c'est jeudi aujourd'hui** (*today's Thursday*) and so on.

### It's...

On est quel jour aujourd'hui? – <b>On est jeudi.</b>	What day's today? – <b>It's Thursday.</b>
<b>On est bien lundi</b> aujourd'hui?	<b>It's Monday</b> today, isn't it?
Super! <b>C'est samedi</b> aujourd'hui.	Great! <b>It's Saturday</b> today.

When making arrangements or saying when something happened you may want to specify the day. In French it's easy. Just use the day in question **lundi, vendredi** to mean *on Monday, on Friday* and so on.

### on...

Je vais à Dublin <b>lundi.</b>	I'm going to Dublin <b>on Monday.</b>
--------------------------------	---------------------------------------

C'est mon anniversaire  
**mardi.**

On les verra **mercredi.**

It's my birthday **on**  
**Tuesday.**

We'll see them **on**  
**Wednesday.**

To say that something regularly happens on a particular day use **le** and the day in question. So **le lundi** means *on Mondays*.

**Le samedi** on va à la gym.

On sort toujours **le**  
**vendredi.**

Il est toujours en retard **le**  
**lundi.**

We go to the gym **on**  
**Saturdays.**

We always go out **on**  
**Fridays.**

He's always late in **on**  
**Mondays.**

If you want to specify the time of day, add **matin** (*morning*), **après-midi** (*afternoon*) or **soir** (*evening, night*) after the day.

### **on... morning/afternoon/evening/night**

Je vais chez le garagiste  
**mardi matin.**

Je te verrai **vendredi**  
**après-midi.**

Il y avait un bon film à la  
télévision **dimanche soir.**

Qu'est-ce que tu fais  
**samedi soir?**

I'm going to the garage **on**  
**Tuesday morning.**

I'll see you **on Friday**  
**afternoon.**

There was a good film on  
television **on Sunday**  
**evening.**

What are you doing on  
**Saturday night?**

You may want to say *every Monday, every Sunday* and so on. In French, you say **tous les lundis, tous les dimanches** and so forth.

every...

On l'appelle <b>tous les lundis.</b>	We ring her <b>every Monday.</b>
Il joue au golf <b>tous les samedis.</b>	He plays golf <b>every Saturday.</b>
Je les voyais <b>tous les vendredis.</b>	I used to see them <b>every Friday.</b>
On fait le ménage <b>tous les dimanches matin.</b>	We do the cleaning <b>every Sunday morning.</b>

You may want to say that you do something every other day, week and so on. To say every other use **un... sur deux.**

every other...

Il a les enfants <b>un week-end sur deux.</b>	He has the children <b>every other weekend.</b>
On joue au foot <b>un samedi sur deux.</b>	We play football <b>every other Saturday.</b>

You can use **ce** (*this*), **dernier** (*last*) and **prochain** (*next*) to specify a day in particular. You can also use the day of the week on its own, which is an implicit way of saying **ce** (*this*).

this/next/last...

C'est notre anniversaire de mariage <b>ce vendredi.</b>	It's our wedding anniversary <b>this Friday.</b>
Je pars en vacances <b>mardi.</b>	I'm going on holiday <b>this Tuesday.</b>
Je t'ai envoyé les photos par e-mail <b>vendredi</b>	I emailed you the photos <b>last Friday.</b>

<b>dernier.</b>	
Est-ce que <b>vendredi prochain</b> te conviendrait?	Would <b>next Friday</b> suit you?
<b>Vendredi de la semaine prochaine</b> , c'est mon anniversaire.	It's my birthday <b>on Friday week</b> .
On a décidé de se voir <b>vendredi de la semaine prochaine</b> .	We've arranged to meet up <b>a week on Friday</b> .

If you want to ask what day something is happening, use **Quel jour...?** (*What day...?*).

### What day...?

La réunion est <b>quel jour?</b> – Mardi.	<b>What day's</b> the meeting? – Tuesday.
Tu sais <b>quel jour</b> il vient? – Il vient mercredi.	Do you know <b>what day</b> he's coming? – He's coming on Wednesday.
Tu y es allé <b>quel jour?</b> – Mardi je crois.	<b>Which day</b> did you go there? – Tuesday, I think.

If you want to talk about the past, the present or the future, you can use a number of phrases in French.

### yesterday

<b>hier</b>	<b>yesterday</b>
<b>hier matin</b>	<b>yesterday morning</b>
<b>hier après-midi</b>	<b>yesterday afternoon</b>
<b>hier soir</b>	<b>yesterday evening, last</b>

<p><b>la nuit dernière</b></p> <p><b>avant-hier</b></p> <p>Michael est venu me voir <b>hier.</b></p> <p>Béatrice a appelé <b>avant-hier.</b></p>	<p><b>night</b></p> <p><b>last night</b> (<i>at night-time</i>)</p> <p><b>the day before yesterday</b></p> <p>Michael came to see me <b>yesterday.</b></p> <p>Béatrice rang up <b>the day before yesterday.</b></p>
--	---

**today**

<p><b>aujourd'hui</b></p> <p>On est mardi <b>aujourd'hui.</b></p>	<p><b>today</b></p> <p><b>Today's</b> Tuesday.</p>
---	--

**tomorrow**

<p><b>demain</b></p> <p><b>demain matin</b></p> <p><b>demain soir</b></p> <p><b>après-demain</b></p> <p>On est mercredi <b>demain.</b></p> <p>Il faut que je me lève tôt <b>demain matin.</b></p> <p>On va à une fête <b>demain soir.</b></p>	<p><b>tomorrow</b></p> <p><b>tomorrow morning</b></p> <p><b>tomorrow evening,</b> <b>tomorrow night</b></p> <p><b>the day after tomorrow</b></p> <p><b>Tomorrow</b> will be Wednesday.</p> <p>I've got to be up early <b>tomorrow morning.</b></p> <p>We're going to a party <b>tomorrow night.</b></p>
---	---

**BON À SAVOIR!**

Remember that the English word *night* may be translated by **la soirée** or **le soir** (*evening*) and **la nuit** (*night-time*) in French.

To say that something happened a certain length of time ago, use **il y a** followed by the period of time in question.

### ...ago

Elle m'a appelé <b>il y a une semaine.</b>	She called me <b>a week ago.</b>
Ils ont emménagé dans leur maison <b>il y a une dizaine de jours.</b>	They moved into their house <b>some ten days ago.</b>
Il est né <b>il y a trois ans.</b>	He was born <b>three years ago.</b>

One way to talk about how long you've been doing something is to use **cela fait** (or, more informally, **ça fait**) followed by the length of time, the word **que** and the verb in the present tense. For more information on the present tense, see [here](#).

### for...

<b>Cela fait</b> dix mois <b>que</b> nous vivons ici.	We've been living here <b>for</b> ten months.
<b>Ça fait</b> dix ans <b>qu'</b> ils sont mariés.	They've been married <b>for</b> ten years.
<b>Ça fait</b> une semaine <b>que</b> je ne l'ai pas vue.	I haven't seen her <b>for</b> a week.

You can also use **depuis** (*for*) with a verb in the present tense to say how long something has been happening. For more information on the present tense, see [here](#).

### for...

--	--

Il pleut **depuis** trois jours.

Je ne les ai pas vus **depuis** trois semaines.

Ils ne se sont pas parlé **depuis** des mois.

J'attends ici **depuis** des heures.

It's been raining **for** three days

I haven't seen them **for** three weeks.

They haven't spoken to each other **for** months.

I've been waiting here **for** hours.

## L'ALPHABET – THE ALPHABET

When you're in a French-speaking country, you may well need to spell something out in French. French letters are pronounced approximately as shown in the list below. The main difference between the English alphabet and the French one is that French uses accents on vowels (é, à, û, ë, etc) and a cedilla on the "c" (ç).

A	ah
B	bay
C	say
D	day
E	uh
F	eff
G	jay
H	ash
I	ee
J	jee
K	kah
L	el
M	em



N	en
O	o
P	pay
Q	k <u>u</u>
R	err
S	ess
T	tay
U	<u>u</u>
V	vay
W	doobluhvay (pronounced like the v in <i>vacancy</i> in <b>le wagon</b> and pronounced as in English in <b>le web, le week-end and other</b> English loanwords)
X	eeks
Y	ee grayk
Z	zayd

### **BON À SAVOIR!**

All letters are masculine in French. So you would say **ça s'écrit avec un P** (*it's spelt with a P*).

### **LISTEN OUT FOR**

Here are some key phrases you may hear when spelling words out.

Comment ça s'écrit?	How do you spell it?
---------------------	----------------------

Est-ce que vous pouvez  
l'épeler?

Ça s'écrit G-A-U-T-I-E-R.

Je vous l'épelle?

Ça s'écrit avec un B.

B comme Bordeaux.

Moreau, avec un M  
majuscule.

Ça s'écrit avec deux F.

Avec un L ou deux?

Ça devrait être en  
majuscules.

C'est tout en minuscules.

Comment est-ce qu'on  
prononce 'ch'?

Est-ce que vous pouvez  
répéter, s'il vous plaît?

Can you spell that for me?

That's G-A-U-T-I-E-R.

Shall I spell it for you?

It's spelt with a B.

B for Bordeaux.

That's Moreau with a  
capital M.

It's spelt with a double F.

Is that with one L or two?

That should be in capitals.

It's all in small letters.

How do you say 'ch'?

Please can you repeat that?

## Interesting days and dates

- The French national holiday (**la fête nationale**), known as *Bastille Day* in English, is the 14th of July. French people simply call it **le quatorze juillet**. France has many more bank holidays than the UK, mainly because of all the important dates in the Catholic calendar.
- In Belgium, Switzerland, Quebec and in some parts of France and the former African colonies of Belgium (DRC, Rwanda, Burundi), many people don't use **soixante-dix** (70), **quatre-vingts** (80) and **quatre-vingt-dix** (90) but **septante**, **octante** or **huitante**, and **nonante** instead.
- New Year's Eve, **le 31 décembre**, is also called **la Saint-Sylvestre** in France. New Year's Day is **le premier de l'An**.
- In French-speaking countries the dates of famous events are sometimes commemorated in street names. For example you could find in many towns **l'avenue du 11 novembre** (the date of the WWI armistice).
- You might encounter the word **tantôt**, which is sometimes very confusing even for French speakers! It may mean *soon*, *a little earlier* or *a little later*, and *afternoon*, depending on whether you are in Canada, Belgium or a certain part of France. The most common usage is *sometimes... at other times...* (**tantôt triste... tantôt joyeux... sometimes sad, at other times happy**).

- Most Christian names are associated with a Saint's day in French. If it's your Saint's day, people will wish you **Bonne fête!** (*Happy Saint's Day!*). As part of the weather forecast on most TV channels, the presenter reminds the viewers which Saint you are celebrating the following day by saying **Bonne fête à tous les Matthieu** (*Happy Saint's Day to all Matthews*) or whatever name it may be.

## In summary...

### Bon, résumons... – So, to sum up...

This unit gives you quick access to all the important French structures that you'll have learned in the individual units. They are grouped by function to help you find what you're looking for.

#### **CONTENTS**

[Apologizing](#)

[Asking for and giving explanations](#)

[Asking for information](#)

[Asking for permission](#)

[Asking for things](#)

[Complaining](#)

[Describing people and things](#)

[Explaining a problem](#)

[Expressing opinions](#)

[Making suggestions](#)

[Saying what's happened](#)

[Saying what you have to do](#)

[Saying what you like, dislike, prefer](#)

[Saying what you want to do](#)

[Talking about your plans](#)

## APOLOGIZING

There are several ways you can say *sorry* in French. You can say **excuse-moi** to someone you call **tu** and **excusez-moi** to someone you call **vous**. Alternatively, you can just say **pardon**, especially if you want to get past someone or if you've bumped into them.

### **Excuse-moi...**

<b>Excuse-moi</b> , je ne savais pas.	<b>Sorry</b> , I didn't know.
<b>Excusez-moi</b> , je me suis trompé de numéro.	<b>Sorry</b> , I've dialled the wrong number.
<b>Excusez-moi</b> de ne pas vous avoir prévenus avant.	<b>Sorry</b> for not letting you know sooner.

### **Pardon**

<b>Pardon!</b> Je peux passer?	<b>Sorry!</b> Can I get past?
<b>Pardon!</b> Je t'ai fait mal?	<b>Sorry!</b> Did I hurt you?

Another way to say *I'm sorry* is to use **je suis désolé** (or for a woman **je suis désolée**). You can use **je suis désolé** not only when you're apologizing but also when you're sympathizing with someone.

### **Je suis désolé**

<b>Je suis</b> vraiment <b>désolé</b> .	<b>I'm</b> truly <b>sorry</b> .
<b>Je suis désolée</b> de ne pas t'avoir rappelé plus tôt.	<b>I'm sorry</b> I didn't call you back earlier.

**Je suis désolé** pour ce qu'il s'est passé.

**I'm sorry** about what happened.

## ASKING FOR AND GIVING EXPLANATIONS

Use **Pourquoi (est-ce que)...**? (*Why...?*) when asking for an explanation.  
Use **parce que** (*because*) when giving an explanation.

### **Pourquoi...?**

<b>Pourquoi est-ce que</b> vous riez?	<b>Why</b> are you laughing?
<b>Pourquoi</b> tu ne veux pas venir avec nous?	<b>Why</b> don't you want to come with us?
<b>Pourquoi</b> pas?	<b>Why</b> not?

### **parce que...**

Je ne t'en ai pas parlé <b>parce que</b> je ne voulais pas t'inquiéter.	I didn't tell you <b>because</b> I didn't want to worry you.
J'ai dû partir tôt <b>parce que</b> j'avais une réunion.	I had to leave early <b>because</b> I had a meeting.

## ASKING FOR INFORMATION

When you're asking for information you will need to use question words, for example, **Qu'est-ce que...?** (*What...?*), **Quel...?** (*Which...?*), **Quand...?** (*When...?*), **Où...?** (*Where...?*) and so on.

### **Qu'est-ce que...?**

<b>Qu'est-ce que</b> c'est?	<b>What</b> is it?
<b>Qu'est-ce que</b> tu fais dans la vie?	<b>What</b> do you do for a living?
<b>Qu'est-ce qu'</b> il a dit?	<b>What</b> did he say?
<b>Qu'est-ce qui</b> passe au cinéma en ce moment?	<b>What's</b> on at the cinema at the moment?

### Quel est...?

<b>Quel est</b> le numéro de l'agence immobilière?	<b>What's</b> the number of the letting agency?
<b>Quels sont</b> vos tarifs?	<b>What are</b> your rates?
<b>Quelle</b> heure est-il?	<b>What time is</b> it?

### BON À SAVOIR!

Remember to use **quel** for masculine nouns and **quelle** for feminine nouns.

### Quand est-ce que...?

<b>Quand est-ce que</b> tu viens dîner à la maison?	<b>When</b> are you coming around for dinner?
<b>Quand est-ce que</b> vous vous mariez?	<b>When</b> are you getting married?
<b>Quand</b> est le prochain vol pour Londres?	<b>When</b> is the next flight to London?

### Où...?

<b>Où</b> est le commissariat de police?	<b>Where's</b> the police station?
<b>Où</b> sont les toilettes?	<b>Where</b> are the toilets?
<b>Où est-ce que</b> je dois	<b>Where</b> do I need to sign?



signer?

**Où** se trouve la mairie?

**Where's** the town hall?

To ask what time something is due to happen, use **À quelle heure...?** (*What time...?*).

**À quelle heure...?**

<b>À quelle heure</b> ferme le musée?	<b>What time</b> does the museum close?
<b>À quelle heure</b> commence le film?	<b>What time</b> does the film start?
<b>À quelle heure est-ce que</b> tu penses partir?	<b>What time</b> are you thinking of going?

You use either **Est-ce qu'il y a...?** or **Il y a...?** for both *Is there...?* and *Are there...?*

**Est-ce qu'il y a...?**

<b>Est-ce qu'il y a</b> une boulangerie dans le quartier?	<b>Is there</b> a baker's in the area?
<b>Est-ce qu'il y a</b> des noix dans ce gâteau?	<b>Are there</b> any nuts in this cake?
<b>Il y a</b> un menu pour enfants?	<b>Is there</b> a children's menu?

To ask how you do something or what something is like, use **Comment...?**

**Comment...?**

--	--

<b>Comment</b> ça va?	<b>How</b> are you?
<b>Comment</b> on fait pour avoir des billets?	<b>How</b> do you get tickets?
C'est <b>comment</b> l'Ardèche?	<b>What's</b> the Ardèche <b>like</b> ?
<b>Comment</b> vous appelez-vous?	<b>What's</b> your name?

To ask *how much* or *how many*, use a phrase containing **combien**.

### Combien...?

<b>Combien coûte</b> un billet pour Lyon?	<b>How much is</b> a ticket to Lyon?
<b>Il reste combien d'oignons</b> ?	<b>How many onions are left</b> ?
On met <b>combien de temps</b> pour aller à Nice?	<b>How long</b> does it take to get to Nice?

## ASKING FOR PERMISSION

The simplest way to ask for permission to do something is by using **Est-ce que je peux...?** (*Can I...?*) or **Est-ce que je pourrais...?** (*Could I...?*), followed by a verb in the infinitive. **peux** and **pourrais** come from the verb **pouvoir** (*to be able*). For more information on **pouvoir**, see [here](#).

### Est-ce que je peux...?

<b>Est-ce que je peux</b> utiliser le téléphone?	<b>Can I</b> use the phone?
<b>Je peux</b> vous payer en deux fois?	<b>Can I</b> pay you in two instalments?

## Est-ce que je pourrais...?

<b>Est-ce que je pourrais</b> rester une semaine de plus?	<b>Could I</b> stay for another week?
<b>Je pourrais</b> garer ma voiture ici?	<b>Could I</b> park my car here?

Alternatively you can use **Est-ce que ça vous dérange si...?** (*Do you mind if...?*) followed by a verb in the present tense. For more information on the present, see [here](#).

## Est-ce que ça vous dérange si...?

<b>Est-ce que ça vous dérange si</b> je fume?	<b>Do you mind if</b> I smoke?
<b>Est-ce que ça vous dérange si</b> j'invite quelques amis ce soir?	<b>Do you mind if</b> I have a few friends over tonight?
<b>Ça vous dérange si</b> j'ouvre la fenêtre?	<b>Do you mind if</b> I open the window?

## ASKING FOR THINGS

To ask for things in French you can simply name what you want and say **s'il vous plaît** (*please*).

## Un..., s'il vous plaît

<b>Un</b> aller simple pour Lille, <b>s'il vous plaît.</b>	<b>A</b> single to Lille, <b>please.</b>
<b>Une</b> limonade, <b>s'il vous</b>	<b>A</b> lemonade, <b>please.</b>

**plaît.**

**Deux baguettes et quatre croissants, s'il vous plaît.**

**Two baguettes and four croissants, please.**

To say what you'd like or what you want, you can use **je voudrais** (*I'd like*), which comes from the verb **vouloir**. For more information on **vouloir**, see [here](#).

### Je voudrais...

**Je voudrais** un carnet de timbres, s'il vous plaît.

**I'd like** a book of stamps, please.

**Je voudrais** deux entrées pour l'exposition, s'il vous plaît.

**I'd like** two tickets for the exhibition, please.

**On voudrait** un appartement avec vue sur la mer.

**We'd like** a flat with a sea view.

Another way of asking whether something is available is to use **Est-ce que vous avez...?** (*Do you have...?*). **avez** comes from the verb **avoir** (*to have*). For more information on **avoir**, see [here](#).

### Est-ce que vous avez...?

**Est-ce que vous avez** de la crème solaire?

**Do you have** sunscreen?

**Vous avez** une adresse électronique?

**Do you have** an email address?

To say what you're looking for you can use **je cherche** (*I'm looking for*). For more information on **-er** verbs like **chercher**, see [here](#).

## Je cherche...

<b>Je cherche</b> un endroit pour camper.	<b>I'm looking for</b> somewhere to camp.
<b>Je cherche</b> un restaurant végétarien.	<b>I'm looking for</b> a vegetarian restaurant.

To ask someone if they can do something for you, use **Est-ce que vous pouvez...?** (*Can you...?*) or **Est-ce que vous pourriez...?** (*Could you...?*) and then the verb in the infinitive. **pouvez** and **pourriez** come from the verb **pouvoir** (*to be able*). For more information on **pouvoir**, see [here](#).

## Est-ce que vous pouvez...?

<b>Est-ce que vous pouvez</b> me donner un sac, s'il vous plaît?	<b>Can you</b> give me a carrier bag, please?
<b>Est-ce que vous pouvez</b> me photocopier le plan?	<b>Can you</b> photocopy the map for me?
<b>Vous pouvez</b> nous apporter la carte des vins?	<b>Can you</b> bring us the wine list?

## Est-ce que vous pourriez...?

<b>Est-ce que vous pourriez</b> déplacer votre voiture, s'il vous plaît?	<b>Could you</b> move your car, please?
<b>Vous pourriez</b> nous donner un reçu?	<b>Could you</b> give us a receipt?

You can use **donnez-moi** (or the **tu** form **donne-moi**) followed by **s'il vous plaît** to mean *Can I have..., please?* especially when asking for something at a counter or when asking someone to pass you something.

## Donnez-moi...

<b>Donnez-moi</b> une baguette, s'il vous plaît.	<b>Can I have</b> a baguette, please?
<b>Donne-moi</b> ton stylo, s'il te plaît.	<b>Can I have</b> your pen, please?

## COMPLAINING

If you need to complain, you may want to use **il y a** and **il n'y a pas de** to talk about what there is and what there isn't. Both *there is* and *there are* are **il y a** in French.

### Il y a...

<b>Il y a</b> des cafards dans l'appartement.	<b>There are</b> cockroaches in the flat.
<b>Il n'y a pas d'</b> eau chaude.	<b>There isn't any</b> hot water.

You can also use **il n'y a pas assez de** to say that there isn't enough of something.

### Il n'y a pas assez de...

<b>Il n'y a pas assez de</b> renseignements.	<b>There isn't enough</b> information.
<b>Il n'y a pas assez de</b> chaises.	<b>There aren't enough</b> chairs.

When something has run out, you can use **il ne reste plus de**.

### Il ne reste plus de...

<b>Il ne reste plus de</b> papier toilette chez les dames.	<b>There isn't any</b> toilet paper <b>left</b> in the ladies.
<b>Il ne reste plus de</b> dépliants.	<b>There aren't any</b> leaflets <b>left</b> .

## DESCRIBING PEOPLE AND THINGS

When you're describing people or things, use **il est** (*he is*), or **elle est** (*she is*) or **c'est** (*it is*) followed by an adjective.

### **Il est...**

<b>Il est</b> très grand.	<b>He's</b> very tall.
<b>Elle est</b> sympa.	<b>She's</b> nice.
<b>Elle n'est pas</b> très vieille.	<b>She's</b> not very old.

### **C'est...**

<b>C'est</b> beau.	<b>It's</b> beautiful.
<b>C'est</b> loin.	<b>It's</b> a long way away.
<b>C'est</b> vraiment lourd.	<b>It's</b> really heavy.

**avoir** is used to talk about characteristics that people have. Remember that it's also used with **ans** (*years*) to talk about ages.

### **Il a...**

<b>Il a</b> les cheveux gris.	<b>He's got</b> grey hair.
<b>Elle a</b> les yeux bleus.	<b>She's got</b> blue eyes.
<b>Il a</b> le teint mat.	<b>He has</b> a dark complexion.

| **J'ai** vingt-deux **ans**.

| **I'm** twenty two.

To say what someone is wearing, use **il porte** or **elle porte**.

**Elle porte...**

<b>Elle porte</b> une robe verte.	<b>She's wearing</b> a green dress.
<b>Il porte</b> un jean.	<b>He's wearing</b> jeans.
<b>Il porte</b> des baskets.	<b>He's wearing</b> trainers.

## EXPLAINING A PROBLEM

To explain what the problem is, use **il y a** to say both *there is* and *there are*.

**Il y a...**

<b>Il y a</b> un bruit bizarre.	<b>There's</b> a strange noise.
<b>Il n'y a pas</b> de serviettes dans ma chambre.	<b>There aren't</b> any towels in my room.
<b>Il y a eu</b> un accident.	<b>There's been</b> an accident.

## **BON À SAVOIR!**

The last example uses **il y a** with the past tense of the verb **avoir** (*to have*). For more information on **avoir**, see [here](#).

To say what you can't do, use **je n'arrive pas à** (*I can't*) followed by the infinitive.

**Je n'arrive pas à...**

--	--



<b>Je n'arrive pas à</b> démarrer la voiture.	<b>I can't</b> get the car to start.
<b>Je n'arrive pas à</b> joindre ma famille.	<b>I can't</b> get in touch with my family.
<b>On n'arrive pas à</b> faire marcher le chauffage.	<b>We can't</b> get the heating to work.

You use **je ne sais pas...** instead to mean *I can't* when you want to say *I don't know how to*.

### Je ne sais pas...

<b>Je ne sais pas</b> bien parler français.	<b>I can't</b> speak French very well.
<b>Il ne sait pas</b> conduire.	<b>He can't</b> drive.

## EXPRESSING OPINIONS

Use **je pense que**, **je trouve que** and **je crois que** to mean *I think*. When these phrases are used in the negative, for example, **je ne pense pas que**, the verb that follows must be in the subjunctive. For more information on the subjunctive, see [here](#).

### Je pense que...

<b>Je pense que</b> tu devrais réserver à l'avance.	<b>I think</b> you should book in advance.
<b>Je pense qu'</b> il va pleuvoir.	<b>I think</b> it's going to rain.
<b>Je ne pense pas que</b> ce soit une bonne idée.	<b>I don't think</b> it's a good idea.
<b>Qu'est-ce que tu en penses?</b>	<b>What do you think?</b>

### Je trouve que...

<b>Je trouve que</b> c'est un peu cher.	<b>I think</b> it's a bit expensive.
<b>Je trouve que</b> tu as raison.	<b>I think</b> you're right.
<b>Je ne trouve pas que</b> ce soit un très bon film.	<b>I don't think</b> it's a very good film.

### Je crois que...

<b>Je crois que</b> tu te fais du souci pour rien.	<b>I think</b> you're worrying about nothing.
<b>Vous croyez que</b> ça en vaut la peine?	<b>Do you think</b> it's worth it?
<b>Je ne crois pas qu'on</b> puisse venir.	<b>I don't think</b> we're going to be able to make it.

Use **je suis d'accord** to say that you agree and **je ne suis pas d'accord** to say that you disagree.

### Je suis d'accord...

<b>Je suis d'accord avec</b> toi.	<b>I agree with</b> you.
<b>Nous sommes</b> tous les deux <b>d'accord</b> .	<b>We both agree</b> .
<b>Je ne suis</b> absolument <b>pas d'accord</b> .	<b>I completely disagree</b> .

## [MAKING SUGGESTIONS](#)

Use **on pourrait** (*we could*) if you want to suggest doing something with someone.

### On pourrait...

<b>On pourrait</b> aller au cinéma.	<b>We could</b> go to the cinema.
<b>On pourrait</b> s'asseoir en terrasse.	<b>We could</b> sit outside.

If you want to suggest to someone that you do something, you can turn a simple sentence into a suggestion by raising the tone of your voice and making it a question.

### On...?

<b>On prend</b> un verre?	<b>Shall we have</b> a drink?
<b>On regarde</b> le menu?	<b>Shall we have a look at</b> the menu?

**Pourquoi pas...?** (or **Pourquoi ne pas...?** if you want to sound more formal) can be used to mean *Why not...?*

### Pourquoi pas...?

<b>Pourquoi pas</b> demander à un vendeur?	<b>Why not</b> ask a shop assistant?
<b>Pourquoi ne pas</b> s'arrêter à Paris au passage?	<b>Why not</b> stop in Paris on the way?

You can also use **Et si...?** followed by the verb in the imperfect tense to suggest doing something. For more information on the imperfect, see [here](#).

## Et si...?

<b>Et si</b> on passait la nuit ici?	<b>How about</b> spending the night here?
<b>Et si</b> on y allait en bateau?	<b>How about</b> going there by ferry?
<b>Et si</b> je demandais à l'agent de police?	<b>How about if</b> I asked the police officer?
<b>Et si</b> on louait une voiture?	<b>How about</b> hiring a car?

You can ask someone if they'd like to do something using **Est-ce que tu veux...?** or **Est-ce que vous voulez...?** (*Would you like...?*) with the infinitive. **veux** and **voulez** come from the verb **vouloir** (*to want*). For more information on **vouloir**, see [here](#).

## Est-ce que tu veux...?

<b>Est-ce que tu veux</b> venir prendre un verre?	<b>Would you like to</b> come and have a drink?
<b>Est-ce que vous voulez</b> voir la cathédrale?	<b>Would you like to</b> see the cathedral?

To ask someone if they fancy something, you can use **Ça te dit de...?** (*Do you fancy...?*) or the **vous** form **Ça vous dit de...?**.

## Ça te dit de...?

<b>Ça te dit de</b> manger une glace?	<b>Do you fancy</b> an ice cream?
<b>Ça vous dit d'</b> aller prendre un café?	<b>Do you fancy</b> going for a coffee?

To offer to do something, you can use **laissez-moi** (or the **tu** form **laisse-moi**) to mean *let me*.

### Laissez-moi...

<b>Laissez-moi</b> vous aider.	<b>Let me</b> help you.
<b>Laisse-moi</b> porter ta valise.	<b>Let me</b> carry your suitcase.

Use **Ça ne vous dérange pas que...?** followed by the subjunctive to ask *Is it OK with you if...?*. For more information on the subjunctive, see [here](#).

### Ça ne vous dérange pas que...?

<b>Ça ne vous dérange pas que</b> je repasse demain?	<b>Is it OK with you if I</b> come back tomorrow?
<b>Ça ne te dérange pas que</b> je t'appelle chez toi?	<b>Is it OK with you if I</b> call you at home?

If you want to say what would suit you better, you can use **ça m'arrangerait...** (...*would be better for me*).

### Ça m'arrangerait...

<b>Ça m'arrangerait</b> vendredi.	Friday <b>would be better for me.</b>
<b>Ça m'arrangerait</b> de vous retrouver là-bas.	<b>It would suit me better</b> to meet you there.

## [SAYING WHAT'S HAPPENED](#)

To talk about what has happened, you use the past tense with **avoir** (*to have*) or **être** (*to be*) and the past participle (such as *been, given, travelled*).

You can find out more about the past tense [here](#).

**j'ai...**

<b>J'ai eu</b> un accident. <b>Nous avons vu</b> une agression.	<b>I've had</b> an accident. <b>We've witnessed</b> a mugging.
--	---

**Je suis...**

<b>Je suis arrivée</b> ce matin. <b>Je me suis cassé</b> la jambe. <b>Il est tombé.</b>	<b>I arrived</b> this morning. <b>I've broken</b> my leg. <b>He's fallen.</b>
---	---

## **SAYING WHAT YOU HAVE TO DO**

To say what you have to do, use **je dois** (*I must*) followed by a verb in the infinitive. **dois** is from the verb **devoir**. For more information on **devoir**, see [here](#).

**Je dois...**

<b>Je dois</b> faire le plein. <b>On doit</b> aller les chercher à l'aéroport.	<b>I must</b> fill up the car. <b>We have to</b> pick them up from the airport.
---	--

You can also use **il faut que** followed by a verb in the subjunctive. For more information on the subjunctive, see [here](#).

**Il faut que...**

--	--

**Il faut que je** sois à la gare à 14h00.

**Il faut que tu** confirmes la réservation.

**Il faut qu'on** achète du pain.

**I have to** be at the railway station at 2 pm.

**You have to** confirm the reservation.

**We need to** buy some bread.

If you want to say that there is something you need to do, you can use **il faudrait que** followed by a verb in the subjunctive. For more information on the subjunctive, see [here](#).

### Il faudrait que...

**Il faudrait que je** trouve une carte.

**Il faudrait que je** passe un coup de fil.

**I need to** find a map.

**I need to** make a phone call.

To talk about what you should do, use **je devrais** (*I should*) followed by an infinitive. **devrais** is from the verb **devoir**. For more information on **devoir**, see [here](#).

### Je devrais...

**Je devrais** y aller.

**Vous devriez** venir nous voir.

**On devrait** faire un peu de ménage.

**I should** go.

**You should** come and see us.

**We ought to** do some housework.

## [SAYING WHAT YOU LIKE, DISLIKE, PREFER](#)

To say what you like, use **j'aime bien** (*I like*), which is not as strong as **j'aime** and **j'adore** (*I love*). To say what you dislike, use **je n'aime pas**. **aime** comes from the verb **aimer** (*to love*). For more information on **aimer**, see [here](#).

### J'aime bien...

<b>J'aime bien</b> ce tableau.	<b>I like</b> this painting.
<b>J'aime beaucoup</b> l'Alsace.	<b>I like</b> Alsace <b>a lot</b> .
<b>Est-ce que tu l'aimes?</b>	<b>Do you love</b> him?

### J'adore...

<b>J'adore</b> la poésie.	<b>I love</b> poetry.
<b>J'adore</b> les films en noir et blanc.	<b>I love</b> black and white movies.
<b>Il adore</b> cuisiner.	<b>He loves</b> cooking.

### Je n'aime pas...

<b>Je n'aime pas</b> l'ail.	<b>I don't like</b> garlic.
<b>Je n'aime pas du tout</b> prendre le métro.	<b>I really dislike</b> taking the underground.

To say what you prefer, use **je préfère**. To say that you prefer A to B, use **je préfère A à B**. **préfère** comes from the verb **préférer**. For more information on **-er** verbs like **préférer**, see [here](#).

### Je préfère...

<b>Je préfère</b> la chemise grise.	<b>I prefer</b> the grey shirt.
-------------------------------------	---------------------------------



**Je préfère** le train **au** bus.

**I prefer** the train **to** the bus.

**Je préfère** la cuisine italienne **à la** cuisine française.

**I prefer** Italian cuisine **to** French cuisine.

## SAYING WHAT YOU WANT TO DO

To say what you'd like to do, you can use **je voudrais** and **j'aimerais** (*I'd like*).

### **Je voudrais...**

**Je voudrais** aller au Musée d'Orsay.

**I'd like to** go to the Musée d'Orsay.

**Je voudrais** gagner plus d'argent.

**I'd like to** earn more money.

**Je voudrais** relever mes e-mails.

**I'd like to** check my emails.

### **J'aimerais...**

**J'aimerais** voir le théâtre romain d'Orange.

**I'd like to** see the Roman theatre in Orange.

**On aimerait** rester ici un peu plus.

**We'd like to** stay here a little longer.

To talk about what you'd rather do, use **je préfère** and **je préférerais** from the verb **préférer** (*to prefer*). For more information on **-er** verbs like **préférer**, see [here](#).

### **Je préfère...**

<b>Je préfère</b> partir tôt le matin.	<b>I'd rather</b> leave early in the morning.
<b>Je préférerais</b> louer un petit appartement.	<b>I'd rather</b> rent a small flat.
<b>On préfère ne pas</b> laisser les bagages dans la voiture.	<b>We'd rather not</b> leave the luggage in the car.

If you want to sound more assertive as to what you want or don't want, you can also use **je veux** (*I want*) from the verb **vouloir** (*to want*). For more information on **vouloir**, see [here](#).

### Je veux...

<b>Je veux</b> envoyer cette lettre en recommandé.	<b>I want to</b> send this letter recorded delivery.
<b>Je veux</b> acheter une maison dans la région.	<b>I want to</b> buy a house in the area.
<b>Je ne veux pas</b> payer de supplément.	<b>I don't want to</b> pay a supplement.

## TALKING ABOUT YOUR PLANS

To talk about your plans, you can use either **j'ai l'intention de** or **je compte**. They both mean *I'm planning to* and are followed by a verb in the infinitive.

### J'ai l'intention de...

<b>J'ai l'intention de</b> passer deux semaines en Provence.	<b>I'm planning to</b> spend two weeks in Provence.
--	---

**J'ai l'intention de** faire  
construire une maison.

**On a l'intention**  
**d'**apprendre l'espagnol.

**I'm planning to** have a  
house built.

**We're planning to** learn  
Spanish.

### Je compte...

**Je compte** loger chez un  
ami.

**Je ne compte pas** rester ici  
très longtemps.

**On comptait** aller au  
marché demain matin.

**I'm planning to** stay with  
a friend.

**I'm not planning to** stay  
here very long.

**We were planning to** go to  
the market tomorrow  
morning.

If you want to say what you're thinking of doing, you can use **je pense** (*I'm thinking of*) or **je pensais** (*I was thinking of*) followed by a verb in the infinitive.

### Je pense...

**Je pense** m'acheter un  
iPad®.

**Je pense** arriver vers cinq  
heures.

**Je pensais** inviter Anne à  
dîner.

**I'm thinking of** buying an  
iPad®.

**I think I'll** get there at  
around five pm.

**I was thinking of** inviting  
Anne for dinner.

One easy way of talking about what you're going to do is to use **je vais** (*I'm going to*) followed by a verb in the infinitive. **vais** comes from the verb **aller** (*to go*). For more information on **aller**, see [here](#).

### Je vais...

<b>Je vais</b> appeler Sam.	<b>I'm going to</b> phone Sam.
<b>Je vais</b> envoyer une carte postale à mes parents.	<b>I'm going to</b> send a postcard to my parents.
<b>On va</b> visiter un appartement cette semaine.	<b>We're going to</b> view a flat this week.

You can use the present tense to talk about something that you're definitely going to do. For more information on the present tense, see [here](#).

### Je...

<b>Je pars</b> demain à onze heures.	<b>I'm leaving</b> tomorrow at eleven.
<b>Je dîne</b> chez Morgane ce soir.	<b>I'm having dinner</b> at Morgane's tonight.
<b>On va</b> au Québec dans deux semaines.	<b>We're going to</b> Québec in two weeks.
<b>Elle vient</b> la semaine prochaine.	<b>She's coming</b> next week.

To talk about what you hope to do, you can use **j'espère** (*I hope* or *I'm hoping to*) followed by an infinitive, or **j'espère que** followed by a verb in the present or the future tense. For more information on **-er** verbs like **espérer**, see [here](#). For more information on the present and future tenses, see [here](#).

### J'espère...

<b>J'espère</b> y retourner un jour.	<b>I'm hoping to</b> go back there one day.
<b>J'espère qu'</b> il est déjà sur	<b>I hope</b> he's already there.

place.

**J'espère qu'on se reverra.**

**I hope** we'll see each other again.

To say what you may do, you can use **je vais peut-être...** (*I may*) followed by a verb in the infinitive.

### **Je vais peut-être...**

**Je vais peut-être** organiser une soirée.

**Je vais peut-être** prendre un verre avec Thomas ce soir.

**Elle va peut-être** s'installer en France.

**I may** have a party.

**I may** go for a drink with Thomas tonight.

**She may** move to France permanently.

# One-stop phrase shop

## Je vous demande pardon? – I beg your pardon?

Every day we use a variety of ready-made phrases that just trip off our tongues in English, such as *take a seat, hurry up, congratulations, happy birthday, have a nice day, thanks* and *the same to you*. In this unit we'll give you all the phrases of this sort that you'll need in French, so that you can say the appropriate thing with confidence.

### CONTENTS

[Hellos and goodbyes](#)

[Please and thank you](#)

[Attracting someone's attention](#)

[Making sure you've understood](#)

[Checking facts](#)

[Wishing someone something](#)

[Apologizing](#)

[Reassuring someone](#)

[Opinions](#)

[Agreeing, disagreeing and declining](#)

[Congratulating someone](#)

[Reacting to good and bad news](#)

[Exclamations](#)

Surprise

Encouraging someone

Handing someone something

Dangers and emergencies

Speaking your mind

Conversational words

## HELLOS AND GOODBYES

Creating a good first impression is important, so you'll want to say *hello* to people properly. Just as in English, there are several ways of doing this in French. You can simply use the informal **salut** (*hi*) on its own. You can also use **bonjour** (*good morning or good afternoon*) or **bonsoir** (*good evening*) which can be followed by **monsieur/madame/mademoiselle** if you want to sound polite.

### Hello

Salut.	Hi.
Bonjour.	Good morning <i>or</i> afternoon.
Bonsoir.	Good evening.

### BON À SAVOIR!

**Salut!** can be used to mean both *Hi!* and *Bye!*

### Goodbye

Au revoir!	Goodbye!
Au revoir à tous!	Goodbye everyone!
Salut!	Bye!
Bonsoir!	Good night!

### BON À SAVOIR!

**Bonsoir** means both *good evening* and *good night*, so you use it both when arriving and leaving somewhere in the evening. You use **bonne nuit** (*good night*) only at bedtime.



## See you...!

À plus tard!	<b>See you</b> later!
À demain!	<b>See you</b> tomorrow!
À la prochaine!	<b>See you</b> again!
À lundi!	<b>See you</b> on Monday!

When you're introduced to someone, you need to know how to reply. **enchanté** or **ravi de faire votre connaissance** are used mostly in formal or business situations these days, and very often people just say **bonjour**.

## How do you do?

Bonjour, madame. – Bonjour, monsieur.	How do you do? – How do you do?
Enchanté. – Enchanté.	Pleased to meet you. – Pleased to meet you too.
Ravi de faire votre connaissance. – Moi de même.	Pleased to meet you. – Pleased to meet you too.

You may hear French speakers using **bienvenue à** with the name of a town and **bienvenue en** with the name of most countries or regions.

## Welcome to...!

Bienvenue!	Welcome!
Bienvenue en France!	Welcome to France!
Bienvenue à Mâcon!	Welcome to Mâcon!
Soyez les bienvenus à Poitiers!	Welcome to Poitiers!

## BON À SAVOIR!

**bienvenue au** is used with the name of a region or country which is masculine, and **bienvenue aux** with the name of a region or country which is plural.

### How lovely to see you!

Ça fait plaisir de te revoir!	How lovely to see you again!
Ça fait une éternité que je ne t'ai pas vu!	I haven't seen you for ages!

As in English, there are several ways you can ask someone how they are in French and a variety of ways to reply.

### How are you?

<b>Comment ça va?</b> – Bien, merci et toi?	<b>How are you?</b> – Fine thanks, and you?
<b>Comment allez-vous?</b> – Bien, merci et vous?	<b>How are you?</b> – Fine thanks, and you?
<b>Ça va?</b>	<b>How are you?</b>
<b>Ça va bien?</b>	<b>How's things?</b>
Salut! <b>Quoi de neuf?</b>	Hi! <b>How's tricks?</b>
<b>Comment tu te portes?</b>	<b>How are you feeling?</b>

### I'm...

Ça va bien, merci et toi?	I'm fine thanks. And you?
Pas trop mal!	Not too bad!
On fait aller!	Getting by!
Ça pourrait être pire.	Can't complain.

Beaucoup mieux, merci.

A lot better, thanks.

## **BON À SAVOIR!**

Remember to use the **vous** form to people you don't know.

### **A knock at the door**

Il y a quelqu'un?	Is anybody in?
Qui est-ce?	Who is it?
Un instant!	One moment!
Je viens!	I'm coming!

### **Asking someone in**

Entrez!	Come in!
Après toi!	After you!
Asseyez-vous donc!	Do sit down!
Fais comme chez toi.	Make yourself at home.

## **BON À SAVOIR!**

When inviting someone to do something in French, you can add **donc** after the verb for emphasis. This is not unlike English where we put *do* before the verb in *do start*, *do take a seat*, *do come in* and so on.

## **PLEASE AND THANK YOU**

When requesting something from someone, you should use **s'il vous plaît** (*please*) for someone you don't know, and **s'il te plaît** (*please*) for someone you know well.

### **Please**

Est-ce que je peux avoir un demi, <b>s'il vous plaît?</b>	Can I have half a lager, <b>please?</b>
Deux kilos d'oranges, <b>s'il vous plaît.</b>	Two kilos of oranges, <b>please.</b>
Est-ce que vous pouvez me donner l'heure, <b>s'il vous plaît?</b>	<b>Please</b> could you tell me the time?
Tu peux me passer la télécommande, <b>s'il te plaît?</b>	Can you give me the remote control, <b>please?</b>
Oui, <b>s'il vous plaît.</b>	Yes, <b>please.</b>
Oui, <b>merci.</b>	Yes, <b>please.</b>

### **BON À SAVOIR!**

To say *yes, please*, you can use either **oui, s'il vous plaît** or **oui, merci**.

### **Thank you!**

<b>Merci!</b>	<b>Thanks!</b>
<b>Je vous remercie.</b>	<b>Thank you.</b>
<b>Merci</b> beaucoup, madame!	<b>Thank you</b> very much!
<b>Merci</b> beaucoup pour ton e-mail.	<b>Thank you</b> very much for your email.
Non, <b>merci.</b>	No, <b>thank you.</b>

### **BON À SAVOIR!**

When you're offered something, stipulate either **oui, merci** or **non, merci**, as **merci** on its own can mean either *yes, thanks* or *no, thanks* depending on your intonation.

The commonest response to **merci** is **de rien** (*not at all*), or the more formal **je vous en prie**.

## Not at all

De rien!	Not at all! <i>or</i> You're welcome!
Il n'y a pas de quoi!	Don't mention it!
Je vous en prie.	You're welcome.
Merci. – C'est moi qui vous remercie.	Thank you. – No, thank you!

## ATTRACTING SOMEONE'S ATTENTION

To attract someone's attention, you can use **excusez-moi** or **pardon**, ending your request with **s'il vous plaît**. You can also simply say **s'il vous plaît**.

### Excuse me!

<b>Excusez-moi!</b>	<b>Excuse me!</b>
<b>Pardon!</b>	<b>Excuse me, please!</b>
<b>Pardon, Mademoiselle!</b>	<b>Excuse me!</b>
<b>S'il vous plaît!</b>	<b>Excuse me, please!</b>

### BON À SAVOIR!

Remember that French speakers tend to be more formal than English speakers. When trying to get someone's attention, you can add **monsieur** (*Sir*), **madame** (*Madam*) or **mademoiselle** (*Miss*).

## MAKING SURE YOU'VE UNDERSTOOD

Sometimes you might have problems understanding what's been said or you do not know the right words to express what you want to say in French.

Here are some useful phrases to help you when this happens.

### I don't understand

Excusez-moi, <b>je ne comprends pas.</b> Est-ce que vous pouvez répéter, s'il vous plaît? <b>Je n'ai pas compris.</b> Excusez-moi, <b>je n'ai pas compris</b> ce que vous avez dit.	Sorry, <b>I don't understand.</b>  Please could you repeat that? <b>I didn't understand.</b>  Sorry, <b>I didn't understand</b> what you said.
---	--

### How do you say...?

<b>Comment est-ce qu'on dit</b> « driving licence » en français? <b>Comment ça s'appelle</b> en français?	<b>How do you say</b> 'driving licence' in French?  <b>What's this called</b> in French?
--	--

### Would you mind...?

<b>Je peux vous demander de</b> parler plus lentement? <b>Je peux te demander de</b> répéter ce que tu as dit?	<b>Would you mind</b> speaking more slowly?  <b>Would you mind</b> repeating what you said?
---	---

### What...?

Pardon, <b>qu'est-ce que</b> vous avez dit? Pardon, <b>qu'est-ce que</b> «	Sorry, <b>what</b> did you say?  Sorry, <b>what</b> does
---	--

couverture » veut dire?

'couverture' mean?

## CHECKING FACTS

To check your facts, you can use **n'est-ce pas?** – which is quite formal – and **non?**. They are used on the end of statements similar to the way we use *isn't it?*, *haven't you?* and so on in English.

...isn't it?

Vous êtes de Paris, <b>n'est-ce pas?</b>	You're from Paris, <b>aren't you?</b>
Il y a du monde, <b>non?</b>	It's busy, <b>isn't it?</b>
Vous êtes arrivés hier, <b>non?</b>	You arrived yesterday, <b>didn't you?</b>
Tu viens, <b>oui ou non?</b>	Are you coming <b>or aren't you?</b>

## **BON À SAVOIR!**

Adding **oui ou non?** at the end of a question corresponds to the English *or what?*. Just as in English, it is quite informal.

Another way of checking that something is right in French is to add **bien** to the question.

...isn't it?

On est <b>bien</b> lundi aujourd'hui?	Today's Monday, <b>isn't it?</b>
Tu lui as <b>bien</b> dit que c'était d'accord?	You told him it was OK, <b>didn't you?</b>
Tu as <b>bien</b> les passeports?	You do have the passports,

**don't you?**

You can use **vous ne trouvez pas** when addressing several people or someone you don't know well, and **tu ne trouves pas** to someone you're familiar with to say *Don't you think?*

**...don't you think?**

Ça lui va bien, <b>tu ne trouves pas?</b>	It suits her, <b>don't you think?</b>
Il fait froid, <b>vous ne trouvez pas?</b>	It's cold, <b>don't you think?</b>
<b>Vous ne trouvez pas que</b> le vin a un drôle de goût?	<b>Don't you think</b> the wine tastes funny?

## WISHING SOMEONE SOMETHING

To say that you hope someone has a good time, has a good weekend or gets a good night's sleep, use **bon** before a masculine word, **bonne** before a feminine one, or **bien** after a verb.

**Have a good...!**

Bon voyage!	Have a good trip!
Bon appétit!	Enjoy your meal!
Passe un bon week-end!	Have a great weekend!
Bonnes vacances!	Enjoy your holiday!
Bon rétablissement!	Get well soon!
Amuse-toi bien!	Have fun! <i>or</i> Enjoy yourself!
Dors bien!	Sleep well!



| Santé!

| Cheers! (*when drinking*)

When wishing someone *Happy...!*, you can use **joyeux** or **bon** with a masculine word, or **joyeuse** or **bonne** with a feminine word.

### Happy...!

<b>Joyeux</b> Noël!	<b>Happy</b> Christmas!
<b>Joyeux</b> or <b>Bon</b> anniversaire!	<b>Happy</b> birthday!
<b>Bonne</b> année!	<b>Happy</b> New Year!
<b>Bon</b> anniversaire de mariage!	<b>Happy</b> wedding anniversary!

### BON À SAVOIR!

**Vous de même!** and **À toi aussi!** (*The same to you!*) are particularly useful words socially. Use them in reply to expressions such as **Joyeux Noël!** (*Happy Christmas!*) and **Bon appétit!** (*Enjoy your meal!*) if you want to wish the other person the same thing back.

### Good luck!

<b>Bonne chance!</b>	<b>Good luck!</b>
<b>Bonne chance</b> pour ton examen!	<b>Good luck</b> in your exam!
<b>Bonne chance</b> pour ton nouveau travail!	<b>Good luck</b> in your new job!

### [APOLOGIZING](#)

To say *I'm sorry*, you can use **pardon** or **je m'excuse**. Alternatively, especially if you've done something more serious, you can use **je suis**

**désolé**, or **je suis désolée** if you're a woman. If you need to get past someone, or if you bump into them, just say **pardon** or **excusez-moi** (*sorry* or *excuse me*).

### I'm sorry

<b>Pardon.</b>	<b>I'm sorry.</b>
<b>Je m'excuse d'être en retard.</b>	<b>I'm sorry I'm late.</b>
<b>Je suis vraiment désolé!</b>	<b>I'm really sorry!</b>
<b>Je suis sincèrement désolée!</b>	<b>I'm truly sorry!</b>

### I'm afraid...

Oui, je regrette.	I'm afraid so.
J'en ai bien peur.	I'm afraid so.
Non, je regrette.	I'm afraid not.
J'ai bien peur que non.	I'm afraid not.

## REASSURING SOMEONE

If someone apologizes to you or if they tell you about something they've accidentally done, you can reassure them by saying **ce n'est pas grave** (*it doesn't matter*) or **ça ne fait rien** (*forget about it*). There are also a number of other expressions you can use.

### It doesn't matter

Ce n'est pas grave.	It doesn't matter.
Ça ne fait rien.	Forget about it.

Ne t'en fais pas!  
Il n'y a pas de problème.  
T'inquiète pas! C'est pas grave.

Don't worry!  
Don't worry about it.  
Don't worry about it! It doesn't matter.

## **BON À SAVOIR!**

Remember that in spoken French, you can often omit the **ne** in a negative sentence. This will make you sound informal.

## **OPINIONS**

To express your opinion in French, you can use **je crois**, **je pense** and **il me semble**, all of which mean *I think*.

### **I think so**

Je crois que oui.	I think so.
Il me semble, oui.	I think so.
Je suppose que oui.	I suppose so.
J'espère.	I hope so.

### **I don't think so**

Je ne crois pas.	I don't think so.
Je ne pense pas.	I don't think so.
Je suppose que non.	I suppose not.
J'espère que non.	I hope not.

### **I'm not sure**

Je ne suis pas sûr.	I'm not sure.
---------------------	---------------

Je ne suis pas certain.

Je ne sais pas.

Tu es sûr?

I'm not sure.

I don't know.

Are you sure?

## **BON À SAVOIR!**

Remember that if you're a woman, you would say **sûre** or **certaine** instead.

### **I doubt it**

Ça m'étonnerait.

Ça, j'en doute.

I doubt it.

I doubt it.

### **I don't mind**

Ça m'est égal.

Ça ne me fait rien.

Peu importe.

I don't mind.

I don't mind.

It's all the same to me.

## **AGREEING, DISAGREEING AND DECLINING**

Remember that there are two words to say yes in French: **oui** and **si**. **oui** is the normal word for yes and **si** is used to mean yes to contradict a negative statement or question such as **Tu ne veux pas manger?** – **Si!** (*Don't you want to eat? – Yes, I do!*).

### **Yes**

Oui.

Bien sûr que oui.

Tu n'as pas encore fini? –

Si!

Yes.

Yes, of course.

Aren't you finished yet? –

Yes, I am!

C'est vrai.	That's true.
Tu as raison.	You're right.
Je suis tout à fait d'accord.	I totally agree.

If someone asks you to do something, particularly useful phrases are **D'accord!** (*OK!*), **Bien sûr!** (*Of course!*) or **Sans problème!** (*No problem!*).

## OK!

D'accord!	OK!
Bon, d'accord.	OK, then.
Entendu!	OK! <i>or</i> Agreed!

## Of course

Bien sûr!	Of course!
Oui, bien sûr.	Yes, of course.
Tu m'aides? – Bien sûr!	Will you help me? – Of course I will!
Sans problème!	No problem.

To disagree with someone or refuse something, you can use **non**, or a number of other very common phrases.

## No

Non.	No.
Bien sûr que non.	Of course not.
Ce n'est pas vrai.	That's not true.
Eh bien, tu as tort.	Well, you're wrong.

Je ne suis pas d'accord du tout.

I don't agree at all.

There are several words you can use with **je ne peux pas** (*I can't*) to say that you will have to decline to do something, for example **franchement** (*honestly*), **sincèrement** (*truly*), **malheureusement** (*unfortunately*).

### I can't

J'aimerais bien, mais malheureusement <b>je ne peux pas</b> .	I'd like to but unfortunately <b>I can't</b> .
Non, franchement, <b>je ne peux pas</b> .	No, I honestly <b>can't</b> .
J'ai bien peur de <b>ne pas pouvoir</b> .	I'm afraid <b>I can't</b> .
Je suis sincèrement désolé, mais <b>je ne vais pas pouvoir</b> venir.	I'm truly sorry, but <b>I won't be able to</b> make it.

If you don't want to commit yourself, **peut-être** is the easiest way of saying *perhaps* in French.

### Perhaps

Peut-être.	Perhaps.
C'est possible.	Possibly.
Tu as peut-être raison.	You may be right.
Ça se pourrait.	It could well be.
Ça dépend.	It depends.
On verra.	We'll see.

## CONGRATULATING SOMEONE

To congratulate someone on their success, there are lots of useful phrases you can use such as **Félicitations!** (*Congratulations!*) and **Bravo!** (*Well done!*).

### **Congratulations!**

<b>Félicitations!</b> <b>Bravo!</b> <b>Bravo</b> pour ta promotion!  <b>Félicitations</b> pour ton succès aux examens! <b>Bravo</b> , au fait!	<b>Congratulations!</b> <b>Well done!</b> <b>Congratulations</b> on your promotion! <b>Congratulations</b> on passing your exams! <b>Well done</b> , by the way!
---	--

## REACTING TO GOOD AND BAD NEWS

There are a number of very useful expressions to use when someone tells you that they're well or that something good has happened to them.

### **Glad to hear it**

Je suis content de l'apprendre. Je suis bien contente pour toi! C'est une très bonne nouvelle. C'est une excellente nouvelle!	That's good to hear. I'm really pleased for you! That's very good news. What wonderful news!
--	---

C'est formidable!

C'est génial!

Génial!

How wonderful!

That's great!

Fantastic!

## BON À SAVOIR!

**bien** is often put in front of adjectives for emphasis, a bit like *really*, for example, **je suis bien content** (*I'm really pleased*), **je suis bien embêté** (*I really don't know what to do*).

To say you're sorry about something bad that's happened, you can use **je suis désolé** (*I'm sorry*).

## I'm sorry

<b>Je suis désolé.</b>	<b>I'm sorry.</b>
<b>Je suis vraiment désolé</b> pour ta tante.	<b>I'm really sorry</b> to hear about your aunt.
<b>On est sincèrement désolés</b> <b>pour</b> ce qu'il s'est passé.	<b>We're very sorry about</b> what happened.

There are lots of useful expressions which mean *things could be worse* or *it's not that bad*, for example, **ce n'est pas si grave que ça** (*it's not as bad as all that*).

## It's not as bad as all that

Ce n'est pas si grave que ça.	It's not as bad as all that.
Ne te laisse pas abattre! Ça aurait pu être pire.	Cheer up! It could have been worse.
Il y a pire.	Things could be worse.



## EXCLAMATIONS

In English we often use *What a...!* when saying how something affects us or how we feel about it. In French, you can use **Quel(le)...!** before a noun and **Qu'est-ce que...!** when there is a verb.

### What a...!

<b>Quelle</b> peur!	<b>What a</b> fright!
<b>Quel</b> dommage!	<b>What a</b> shame!
<b>Quelle</b> malchance!	<b>What</b> bad luck!
<b>Quelle</b> surprise, dis donc!	<b>What a</b> surprise!
Dites donc! <b>Quel</b> beau bâtiment!	<b>What a</b> beautiful building!

### BON À SAVOIR!

The English *a* is not translated into French in expressions like these.

### What a...!

<b>Qu'est-ce que</b> je suis bête!	<b>What an</b> idiot I am!
<b>Qu'est-ce que</b> le paysage est beau!	<b>What a</b> beautiful landscape!
<b>Qu'est-ce que</b> c'est cher comme restaurant!	<b>What an</b> expensive restaurant!

If you want to use the expression *How...!*, you can say **Comme c'est...!** in French.

### How...!

<b>Comme c'est</b> intéressant!	<b>How</b> interesting!
---------------------------------	-------------------------

**Comme c'est idiot!**

**How silly!**

**Comme c'est décevant!**

**How disappointing!**

## SURPRISE

There are many ways you can express surprise in everyday French.

C'est incroyable!	That's incredible!
Quelle surprise, dites donc!	What a surprise!
Je n'arrive pas à y croire!	I can't believe it!
Ce n'est pas possible!	That's impossible.
Tiens, tiens!	Well, what do you know!
Ah oui?	Really?
Dis donc! Il est drôlement tard!	Oh dear! It's very late!

## **BON À SAVOIR!**

French speakers very often put **dis donc!** or **dites donc!** (equivalent to, though not old-fashioned like *I say!*) either at the beginning or the end of a sentence when they're surprised.

## ENCOURAGING SOMEONE

If you need to hurry someone up or get them to do something, you can say **Allez!** (*Come on!*).

**Come on!**

<b>Allez!</b> On y va!	<b>Come on!</b> Let's go!
<b>Allez!</b> On va être en retard.	<b>Hurry up!</b> We're going to

<b>Courage!</b> Tu vas y arriver!	be late.
<b>Encore un effort!</b> Tu y es presque!	<b>Come on!</b> You're going to make it!
<b>Vite!</b> Le train va partir!	<b>Keep it up!</b> You're nearly there!
<b>Dépêche-toi!</b> Le film va commencer!	<b>Quick!</b> The train is about to leave!
	<b>Hurry up!</b> The film's about to begin!

### BON À SAVOIR!

You use **Allez!** with people you call **tu** and **vous**, but you would use **Dépêchez-vous!** instead of **Dépêche-toi!** with someone you call **vous**.

### HANDING SOMEONE SOMETHING

If you're handing someone something, you can say **tiens** (or the **vous** form, **tenez**) to say *here you are*.

#### Here you are

Tiens.	Here you are.
Tenez.	Here you are.
Prends ça.	Take this.
Voilà.	Here.

### DANGERS AND EMERGENCIES

Certain phrases are useful to know in the event of danger or emergencies. Here are some of them, though let's hope you never have to understand or

use them.

### **Look out!**

Attention!	Look out!
Fais attention!	Be careful!
Attention à ton sac!	Watch your bag!
Au secours!	Help!
Aidez-moi!	Help me!
Au voleur!	Stop thief!
Au feu!	Fire!

## **SPEAKING YOUR MIND**

If you get into an argument, here are some very common phrases which may come in handy! Be sure to use plenty of body language too.

### **For goodness sake!**

Non mais, franchement!	For goodness sake!
Non mais, ça va pas?	What do you think you're doing?
Tu te prends pour qui?	Who do you think you are?
Non mais, tu rigoles?	Are you joking?
Et puis quoi, encore?	Whatever next!
Je n'y crois pas.	I don't believe it.
C'est hors de question.	It's out of the question.
N'importe quoi!	Nonsense!

## **BON À SAVOIR!**

The French phrase **non mais** at the start of a sentence is a good way of expressing incredulity – it's similar to the English *Honestly!*

## CONVERSATIONAL WORDS

Just as in English, there are lots of French words and expressions for linking different points together or for showing what your attitude towards something is. Here are the most useful of them. If you use them they will make you sound more fluent and natural.

### **ah bon**

<b>Ah bon</b> , je ne savais pas. J'ai décidé de ne pas l'inviter. – <b>Ah bon?</b>	<b>Right</b> , I didn't know. I decided not to invite her. – <b>Really?</b>
---	---

### **alors**

Je suis fatigué. – <b>Alors</b> vas te coucher.	I'm tired. – Go to bed, <b>then.</b>
--	---

### **au fait**

<b>Au fait</b> , tu joues toujours du saxo?	Do you still play the sax, <b>by the way?</b>
--	--

### **BON À SAVOIR!**

You don't usually pronounce consonants at the end of words in French, but you do say the –t in **au fait**.

### **bon**

--	--

**Bon**, on y va?

**Bon**, à demain alors.

**Right**, shall we go?

**Ok**, see you tomorrow  
then.

### **c'est ça**

Vous êtes ici en vacances ?  
– Oui, **c'est ça**.

You're here on holiday? –  
**That's right**.

### **d'abord**

**D'abord**, on va faire les  
courses.

**First**, we'll do the  
shopping.

### **de toute façon**

**De toute façon**, c'est  
couvert par l'assurance.

It's covered by the  
insurance **anyway**.

### **en fait**

**En fait**, j'ai arrêté de fumer  
il y a deux mois.

**Actually**, I stopped  
smoking two months ago.

### **BON À SAVOIR!**

You don't usually pronounce consonants at the end of words in French, but you do say the –t in **en fait**.

### **enfin**

**Enfin bref**, je ne vais pas  
pouvoir venir.

**Enfin!** Je viens de te le

**In a word**, I'm not going  
to be able to come.

**But** I've just told you!

dire!

### en plus

Je suis fatigué et **en plus** je n'ai pas envie d'y aller.

I'm tired and **what's more** I just don't feel like going.

### ensuite

Qu'est-ce qu'on fait **ensuite?**

**Then** what shall we do?

### finalelement

Tu as réussi à l'avoir, **finalelement?**

**Finalelement**, je vais prendre ce pull.

Did you manage to get hold of him **in the end?**

I'm going to take this jumper **after all**.

### quand même

C'est **quand même** bizarre...

**Quand même!** C'est pourtant pas sorcier!

**Still**, it is strange...

**Honestly!** It's not rocket science!

## NOUNS

### **The gender of nouns**

In French all nouns are either masculine or feminine:

- **le** or **un** before a noun tells you that it is masculine
- **la** or **une** before a noun tells you that it is feminine

Whenever you are using a noun, you need to know whether it is masculine or feminine as this affects the form of other words used with it, such as:

- adjectives that describe it
- articles that go before it
- pronouns that replace it

Adjectives, articles and pronouns are also affected by whether a noun is singular or plural.

### **Nouns referring to people**

Most nouns referring to men and boys are masculine.

un homme	a man
un Français	a Frenchman

**Most nouns referring to women and girls are feminine.**

une fille	a girl
une Canadienne	a Canadian woman

### **Nouns referring to things**



In English we call all things – for example, *table*, *car*, *book* – ‘it’. In French, however, things are either masculine or feminine.

There are a number of rules to tell you which nouns are masculine and which are feminine:

- words ending in **–e** are generally feminine, for example, **une boulangerie** (*a baker’s*), **une banque** (*a bank*)
- words ending in a consonant are generally masculine, for example, **un film** (*a film*), **un chien** (*a dog*)
- words ending in **–age**, **–sme**, **–eau**, **–eu**, and **–ou** are often masculine, for example, **le fromage** (*cheese*), **le tourisme** (*tourism*), **un cadeau** (*a present*)
- words ending in **–ion** are often feminine, for example, **une addition** (*a bill*)

In addition, names of days of the week, and months and seasons of the year are masculine, as are the names of languages, for example, **le printemps** (*spring*), **le portugais** (*Portuguese*).

## ARTICLES

### Translating *the*

In French, articles – the words for *the* and *a* – vary according to the noun they are used with depending on whether it is masculine, feminine, singular or plural. The definite article *the* can be translated as:

	with masculine	with feminine nouns
--	----------------	---------------------

	nouns	
singular	<b>le (l')</b>	<b>la (l')</b>
plural	<b>les</b>	<b>les</b>

## BON À SAVOIR!

**le** and **la** change to **l'** in front of words beginning with a vowel and most words beginning with **h**.

<b>le</b> train	<b>the</b> train
<b>la</b> voiture	<b>the</b> car
<b>l'</b> autoroute	<b>the</b> motorway
<b>l'</b> hôtel	<b>the</b> hotel
<b>les</b> clés	<b>the</b> keys
<b>les</b> enfants	<b>the</b> children

When using the definite article (**le, la, les**) with the prepositions **à** or **de**, the preposition and the article can combine to make a new form:

- **à + le** → **au** and **de + le** → **du**

<b>au</b> cinéma	<b>at/to the</b> cinema
<b>du</b> cinéma	<b>from/of the</b> cinema

- **à + les** → **aux** and **de + les** → **des**

<b>aux</b> maisons	<b>to the</b> houses
<b>des</b> maisons	<b>from/of the</b> houses

- **à + la/l'** and **de + la/l'** do not change

à l'hôtel	<b>at/to the</b> hotel
de la bibliothèque	<b>from/of the</b> library

So you would say **je vais à la gare** (*I'm going to the station*) and **je vais au restaurant** (*I'm going to the restaurant*).

**Translating a, an, some, any**

The indefinite articles *a* and *an* can be translated as **un** or **une** depending on whether the word they are used with is masculine or feminine. In the plural **des** is used where in English you would use *some*, *any*, or use no word at all.

	with masculine nouns	with feminine nouns
singular	<b>un</b>	<b>une</b>
plural	<b>des</b>	<b>des</b>

<b>un</b> rendez-vous	<b>an</b> appointment
<b>une</b> réunion	<b>a</b> meeting
Vous voulez <b>des</b> dépliants?	Would you like <b>some</b> leaflets?
Vous avez <b>des</b> enfants?	Do you have <b>any</b> children?
J'ai <b>des</b> amis à Lyon.	I have friends in Lyon.

The definite article (**le, la**) and indefinite article (**un, une**) are not always used in French when they are in English, and vice versa. They are also not always used in the same way.

<b>La</b> France est très belle.	France is very beautiful.
Il est professeur.	He's <b>a</b> teacher.

| J'ai mal à **la** gorge.

| I've got **a** sore throat.

## PRONOUNS

### Subject pronouns

Subject pronouns are words such as *I, he, she* and *they* which perform the action expressed by the verb. Here are the subject pronouns in French:

<b>je</b> (j')	I
<b>tu</b> ( <i>informal, singular</i> )	you
<b>il</b>	he
<b>elle</b>	she
<b>on</b>	we
<b>nous</b>	we
<b>vous</b> ( <i>formal, singular; plural</i> )	you
<b>ils</b> ( <i>all masculine or masculine and feminine</i> )	they
<b>elles</b> ( <i>all feminine</i> )	they

### **BON À SAVOIR!**

**je** changes to **j'** in front of words beginning with a vowel, most words beginning with **h** and the French word **y**.

### **How do you say *you* in French?**

In English we have only one way of saying *you*. In French there are two words: **tu** and **vous**. The word you use in French depends on:

- whether you are talking to one person or more than one person

- whether you are talking to a friend or family member or someone else

If you are talking to one person you know well, such as a friend, a young person, or a relative, use **tu**.

<b>Tu</b> me prêtes ce CD?	Will <b>you</b> lend me this CD?
----------------------------	----------------------------------

If you are talking to one person you do not know so well, such as your teacher, your boss or a stranger, use **vous**.

<b>Vous</b> pouvez entrer.	<b>You</b> may come in.
----------------------------	-------------------------

### **BON À SAVOIR!**

If you are in doubt as to which form of *you* to use, it is safest to use **vous** and you will not offend anyone.

### **Using il/elle and ils/elles**

In English we generally refer to things (such as *table, book, car*) as 'it'. In French you use **il** for masculine nouns and **elle** for feminine nouns.

Prends cette chaise. <b>Elle</b> est plus confortable.	Take this chair. <b>It's</b> more comfortable.
--	--

**il** is also used to talk about the weather, the time and in certain other set phrases, often in the same way as some phrases with *it* in English.

<b>Il</b> pleut.	<b>It's</b> raining.
<b>Il</b> est deux heures.	<b>It's</b> two o'clock.
<b>Il</b> faut partir.	<b>We or you</b> have to go.

**ils** and **elles** are used in the plural to talk about things, as well as people or animals. Use **ils** for masculine nouns and **elles** for feminine nouns.

Est-ce qu'il reste des billets? – Non, <b>ils</b> sont tous vendus.	Are there any tickets left? – No, <b>they</b> 're all sold out.
---	---

If you're talking about masculine and feminine nouns together, use **ils**.

Emma et Gordon sont en retard; <b>ils</b> arriveront dans une heure.	Emma and Gordon are late; <b>they</b> 'll get here in an hour.
--	--

### Using on

**on** is frequently used in informal, everyday French to mean *we*.

<b>On</b> y va?	Shall <b>we</b> go?
-----------------	---------------------

**on** can also have the sense of *someone* or *they*.

<b>On</b> m'a volé mon porte-monnaie.	<b>Someone</b> 's stolen my purse.
---------------------------------------	------------------------------------

You can also use **on** as we use *you* in English when we mean people in general.

<b>On</b> peut visiter le château en été.	<b>You</b> can visit the castle in the summer.
---	--

### Direct object pronouns

Direct object pronouns are words such as *me*, *him*, *us* and *them*, which are used instead of a noun. They stand in for the person or thing most directly affected by the action of the verb. Here are the French direct object pronouns:

<b>me (m')</b>	me
<b>te (t')</b> ( <i>informal, singular</i> )	you
<b>le (l')</b>	him, it
<b>la (l')</b>	her, it
<b>nous</b>	us
<b>vous</b> ( <i>formal, singular; plural</i> )	you
<b>les</b>	them

### **BON À SAVOIR!**

**me** changes to **m'**, **te** to **t'**, and **le/la** to **l'** in front of words beginning with a vowel, most words beginning with **h**, and the French word **y**.

J'ai acheté le journal. Tu veux <b>le</b> lire?	I've bought the paper. Do you want to read <b>it</b> ?
Je peux <b>vous</b> aider?	Can I help <b>you</b> ?

### **Indirect object pronouns**

An indirect object pronoun is used instead of a noun to show the person or thing the action is intended to benefit, for example the word *me* in *He gave me a book*. Here are the French indirect object pronouns:

<b>me (m')</b>	me, to me, for me
<b>te (t')</b> ( <i>informal, singular</i> )	you, to you, for you
<b>lui</b>	him, to him, for him; it, to

<b>lui</b>	it, for it her, to her, for her; it, to it, for it
<b>nous</b>	us, to us, for us
<b>vous</b> ( <i>formal, singular; plural</i> )	you, to you, for you
<b>leur</b>	them, to them, for them

### BON À SAVOIR!

**me** changes to **m'**, **te** to **t'**, and **le/la** to **l'** in front of words beginning with a vowel, most words beginning with **h**, and the French word **y**.

Je <b>lui</b> ai parlé.	I spoke <b>to her</b> .
Tu <b>leur</b> as téléphoné?	Did you give <b>them</b> a ring?

### Emphatic pronouns

An emphatic pronoun is used instead of a noun when you want to emphasize something, for example the word *me* in *Is this for me?*. Here are the French emphatic pronouns:

<b>moi</b>	I, me
<b>toi</b> ( <i>informal, singular</i> )	you
<b>lui</b>	he, him
<b>elle</b>	she, her
<b>soi</b>	oneself, yourself, ourselves
<b>nous</b>	we, us
<b>vous</b> ( <i>formal, singular; plural</i> )	you
<b>eux</b> ( <i>masculine</i> )	they, them
<b>elles</b> ( <i>feminine</i> )	they, them



Emphatic pronouns are mostly used after a preposition, for emphasis, on their own without a verb, after **c'est** and **ce sont**, and in comparisons.

Venez avec <b>moi</b> .	Come with <b>me</b> .
<b>Moi</b> , je n'ai pas compris.	<b>I</b> didn't understand.
Qui en veut? – <b>Moi!</b>	Who wants some? – <b>I do!</b>
C'est <b>toi</b> ?	Is that <b>you</b> ?

### Using **en** and **y**

**en** is used with verbs and phrases usually followed by **de**, such as **être fier de quelque chose** (*to be proud of something*), to avoid repeating the same word.

Il a un beau jardin et il <b>en</b> est très fier.	He's got a beautiful garden and is very proud <b>of it</b> .
--	--

**en** can also replace **du**, **de la**, **de l'** and **des**.

Je n'ai pas d'argent. Tu <b>en</b> as?	I haven't got any money. Have you got <b>any</b> ?
--	--

When **en** is used with **avoir**, **il y a** or with numbers, it is often not translated in English, but can never be missed out in French.

J' <b>en</b> veux deux.	I want two.
-------------------------	-------------

**y** is used with verbs and phrases normally followed by **à**, such as **penser à quelque chose** (*to think about something*), to avoid repeating the same word.

--	--

Je pensais à l'examen. –  
Mais arrête d'y penser!

I was thinking about the  
exam. – Well, stop  
thinking **about it!**

**y** can also mean *there*. It can be used to replace phrases that would use prepositions such as **dans** and **sur**.

Elle **y** a passé tout l'été.

She spent the whole  
summer **there**.

**y** is used in the phrase **il y a** to mean both *there is* and *there are*.

**Il y a** quelqu'un à la porte.

**There is** someone at the  
door.

**Il y a** cinq livres sur la  
table.

**There are** five books on  
the table.

## ADJECTIVES

### Agreement of adjectives

In dictionaries, French adjectives are usually shown in the masculine singular form. You need to know how to change them to make them agree with the noun or pronoun they are describing. To make an adjective agree, you simply add the following endings to the masculine singular adjective in most cases:

- no additional ending for masculine singular
- add **-e** for feminine singular
- add **-s** for the masculine plural
- add **-es** for the feminine plural

---

un chat <b>noir</b>	a <b>black</b> cat
une chemise <b>noire</b>	a <b>black</b> shirt
des chats <b>noirs</b>	<b>black</b> cats
des chemises <b>noires</b>	<b>black</b> shirts

If the adjective already ends in an **-e** in the masculine singular form, you do not add another **-e** for the feminine singular.

un sac <b>jaune</b>	a <b>yellow</b> bag
une chemise <b>jaune</b>	a <b>yellow</b> shirt

Some very common adjectives have irregular feminine forms, for example, **blanc/blanche**, **favori/favorite**, **sec/sèche** and so on. These irregular feminine forms are shown in the dictionary along with the masculine singular form.

mon sport <b>favori</b>	my <b>favourite</b> sport
ma chanson <b>favorite</b>	my <b>favourite</b> song

A very small group of French adjectives have an extra masculine singular form which is used in front of words that begin with a vowel and most words beginning with **h**. These adjectives also have an irregular feminine form:

masc sing	masc sing before vowel	feminine
<b>beau</b>	<b>bel</b>	<b>belle</b>
<b>fou</b>	<b>fol</b>	<b>folle</b>
<b>nouveau</b>	<b>nouvel</b>	<b>nouvelle</b>
<b>vieux</b>	<b>vieil</b>	<b>vieille</b>

--	--

un <b>beau</b> jardin	a <b>beautiful</b> garden
un <b>bel</b> arbre	a <b>beautiful</b> tree
un <b>nouveau</b> film	a <b>new</b> film
un <b>nouvel</b> ami	a <b>new</b> friend

If the masculine singular form already ends in an **-s** or an **-x**, you do not add another **-s** in the plural.

un fromage <b>français</b>	a <b>French</b> cheese
des fromages <b>français</b>	<b>French</b> cheeses

If the masculine singular form ends in **-eau** or **-al**, the masculine plural is usually **-eaux** or **-aux**.

le <b>nouveau</b> professeur	the <b>new</b> teacher
les <b>nouveaux</b> professeurs	the <b>new</b> teachers
un livre <b>original</b>	an <b>unusual</b> book
des livres <b>originaux</b>	<b>unusual</b> books

### Adjectives which do not change

A small number of adjectives (mostly relating to colours) do not change in the feminine or plural. They are called invariable adjectives. These adjectives are often made up of more than one word, for example, **bleu marine** (*navy blue*), or else come from the names of fruits or nuts, for example, **orange** (*orange*) and **marron** (*brown*).

des chaussures <b>marron</b>	<b>brown</b> shoes
une veste <b>bleu marine</b>	a <b>navy blue</b> jacket

### Word order with adjectives

French adjectives usually go after the noun, and adjectives describing colours, shapes or nationalities always go after the noun.

l'heure <b>exacte</b>	the <b>right</b> time
des cravates <b>rouges</b>	<b>red</b> ties
une table <b>ronde</b>	a <b>round</b> table
la cuisine <b>italienne</b>	<b>Italian</b> food

There are some very common adjectives which go before the noun: **beau, bon, grand, gros, joli, long, meilleur, nouveau, petit.**

une <b>belle</b> journée	a <b>lovely</b> day
<b>Bonne</b> chance!	<b>Good</b> luck!

Some adjectives can either go before or after the noun, but their meaning changes depending on where they go, for example, **ancien, cher, propre.**

un <b>ancien</b> collègue	a <b>former</b> colleague
un fauteuil <b>ancien</b>	an <b>antique</b> chair

<b>Chère</b> Julie	<b>Dear</b> Julie
un restaurant <b>cher</b>	an <b>expensive</b> restaurant

ma <b>propre</b> chambre	my <b>own</b> room
des draps <b>propres</b>	<b>clean</b> sheets

If two adjectives are used with a noun and they both come after it, they are joined together by **et** (*and*).

une personne intéressante	an interesting, funny
---------------------------	-----------------------

et drôle

person

## Comparisons

To say something is bigger, more beautiful and so on, put **plus** (*more*) before the adjective. To say that something is less important, less expensive and so on, put **moins** (*less*) before the adjective.

Emma est <b>plus</b> grande.	Emma is taller.
Cet hôtel est <b>plus</b> cher <b>que</b> l'autre.	This hotel is <b>more</b> expensive <b>than</b> the other one.
Son dernier livre est <b>moins</b> intéressant.	His last book is <b>less</b> interesting.

## Possessive adjectives

In English a possessive adjective is one of the words *my, your, his, her, its, our* or *their* used with a noun to show that one person or thing belongs to another. Here are the French possessive adjectives:

	with masculine singular nouns	with feminine singular nouns	with plural nouns
my	<b>mon</b>	<b>ma (mon)</b>	<b>mes</b>
your	<b>ton</b>	<b>ta (ton)</b>	<b>tes</b>
his; her; its; one's	<b>son</b>	<b>sa (son)</b>	<b>ses</b>
our	<b>notre</b>	<b>notre</b>	<b>nos</b>
your	<b>votre</b>	<b>votre</b>	<b>vos</b>
their	<b>leur</b>	<b>leur</b>	<b>leurs</b>

Possessive adjectives agree with the noun they describe, not with the person who owns that thing. For example, **sa** can mean *his, her, its* and *one's*, but

can only be used with a feminine noun.

<b>Mon</b> frère s'appelle Andrew.	<b>My</b> brother is called Andrew.
<b>Ma</b> sœur s'appelle Danielle.	<b>My</b> sister is called Danielle.
<b>Mes</b> parents sont retraités.	<b>My</b> parents are retired.
<b>Sa</b> voiture a été volée.	<b>His or her</b> car was stolen.
<b>Son</b> amie est galloise.	<b>His or her</b> friend is Welsh.

### **BON À SAVOIR!**

**ma** changes to **mon**, **ta** to **ton**, and **sa** to **son** in front of feminine singular nouns beginning with a vowel and most words beginning with **h**. This makes them easier to say.

## QUESTIONS

### **How to ask a question in French**

There are several ways of asking a question in French:

- by using the phrase **est-ce que**
- by making your voice go up at the end of the sentence
- by changing the word order in the sentence

When the phrase **est-ce que** is used to ask a question the word order stays the same as in an ordinary sentence. **est-ce que** comes before the subject, and the verb comes after the subject.

<b>Est-ce que vous allez en ville?</b>	<b>Are you going</b> into town?
--	---------------------------------

**Quand est-ce que vous arrivez?**

**When do you arrive?**

If you are expecting the answer *yes* or *no*, there is a very straightforward way of asking a question. You keep the word order as it would be in an ordinary sentence, but turn it into a question by making your voice go up at the end of the sentence. This will make you sound less formal.

**On part** tout de suite?

**Are we leaving** right away?

**Tu prends** un café?

**Are you getting** a coffee?

**Tu ne l'as pas fait?** – Si.

**Haven't you done** it? – Yes(, I have).

### **BON À SAVOIR!**

**si** is the word you use to reply to a question or statement that contains a negative expression like **ne...pas**.

You can also ask a question by changing the word order in the sentence. To do this you put the verb before the subject and add a hyphen between the verb and the subject. This is quite a formal way of asking a question.

**Aimez-vous** la France?

**Do you like** France?

Où **vont-ils**?

Where **are they going**?

When the verb ends in a vowel in the **il/elle** form, **-t-** is inserted before the pronoun to make the words easier to say.

**Aime-t-il** les chiens?

**Does he like** dogs?

In the perfect tense and in other tenses that consist of two or more words, the part of the verb that comes from **avoir** and **être** goes before the



pronoun. For more information on the perfect tense, see [here](#).

<b>Est-elle restée</b> longtemps?
-----------------------------------

<b>Did she stay</b> long?
---------------------------

## NEGATIVES

### Making sentences negative

In French, if you want to make a statement negative, you generally use a pair of words, for example, **ne ... pas** (*not*), **ne ... jamais** (*never*) and so on. The verb goes in between these two words. In English, *do* is often used in negative statements. The French verb **faire** is never used in this way.

Je <b>ne</b> fume <b>pas</b> .
--------------------------------

Jeremy <b>ne</b> prend <b>jamais</b> les transports en commun.
--

Il <b>n'</b> habite <b>plus</b> ici.
--------------------------------------

I <b>don't</b> smoke.
-----------------------

Jeremy <b>never</b> uses public transport.
--

He <b>doesn't</b> live here <b>anymore</b> .
--

### BON À SAVOIR!

**ne** changes to **n'** in front of a word that starts with a vowel, most words beginning with **h**, and the French word **y**.

In everyday conversation French speakers often miss out the word **ne**. Be careful not to do this yourself in formal situations.

Je <b>peux pas</b> venir ce soir.
-----------------------------------

I <b>can't</b> come tonight.
------------------------------

The French word **ne** is missed out when negatives are used without a verb to answer a question.

---

Qui a téléphoné? –  
**Personne.**

Who phoned? – **Nobody.**

**moi non plus** is the equivalent of English phrases like *me neither, neither do I, neither was I*, and so on. You can use it in all situations without worrying about the tense of the verb.

Je ne suis jamais allée en  
Italie. – **Moi non plus.**

I've never been to Italy. –  
**Neither have I.**

Je n'y vais pas et **lui non plus.**

I'm not going and **neither is he.**

### Word order with negatives

Negative expressions in French 'sandwich' the verb. **ne** goes before the verb and the other half of the expression comes after the verb.

Il **ne** boit **jamais.**

He **never** drinks.

Je **n'**entends **rien.**

I **can't** hear anything.

Je **n'**ai vu **personne.**

I **didn't** see anybody.

However, in the perfect tense and other tenses that consist of two or more words, **pas, rien, plus** and **jamais** are sandwiched between **avoir** or **être** and the past participle. For more information on the perfect tense, see [here](#).

Je **n'**ai **pas** compris.

I **didn't** understand.

Nous **ne** sommes **jamais**  
allés chez eux.

We've **never** been to their  
house.

A negative sentence may also contain a pronoun such as **te, le, lui** and so on or a reflexive pronoun. If so, **ne** comes before the pronoun.

Je <b>ne t'</b> entends <b>pas</b> .	I <b>can't</b> hear <b>you</b> .
Il <b>ne se</b> lève <b>jamais</b> avant midi.	He <b>never</b> gets up before midday.

After negative expressions, **un, une** and **des** change to **de**, as do **du, de la, de l'**. For example, **Elle a acheté une glace** becomes **elle n'a pas acheté de glace**.

Je ne veux pas <b>de</b> café.	I don't want <b>any</b> coffee.
Il n'y a plus <b>d'</b> eau.	There's no water left.

### **BON À SAVOIR!**

**de** changes to **d'** in front of words beginning with a vowel, and most words beginning with **h**.

## **SOME COMMON TRANSLATION DIFFICULTIES**

You can't always translate French into English and English into French word for word. The next section points out some common translation difficulties to watch out for.

### **Prepositions**

English phrasal verbs, for example, *to run away*, *to fall down*, are often translated by one word in French.

continuer	to go on
tomber	to fall down

Sentences which contain a verb and preposition in English might not contain a preposition in French, and vice versa.

écouter quelque chose	to listen <b>to</b> something
téléphoner à quelqu'un	to call somebody

The same French preposition may be translated into English in different ways.

croire à quelque chose	to believe <b>in</b> something
prendre quelque chose à quelqu'un	to take something <b>from</b> somebody
rendre quelque chose à quelqu'un	to give something back <b>to</b> somebody

### Singular and plural nouns

A word which is singular in English may not be in French, and vice versa.

<b>les</b> bagages	luggage
<b>mon</b> pantalon	my trousers

### *-ing*

The *-ing* ending in English is translated in a number of different ways in French:

- *to be ...-ing* is translated by a verb consisting of one word.

Il <b>part</b> demain.	He's <b>leaving</b> tomorrow.
------------------------	-------------------------------

- *-ing* can also be translated by an infinitive or a noun.

--	--

J'aime **aller** au cinéma.  
**Le ski** me maintient en  
forme.

I like **going** to the cinema.  
**Skiing** keeps me fit.

### **to be**

The verb *to be* is generally translated by **être**.

Il **est** tard.

It's late.

When you are talking about the physical position of something, **se trouver** can be used.

Où **se trouve** la gare?

Where **is** the station?

In certain set phrases which describe how you are feeling or a state you are in, the verb **avoir** is used.

**avoir** chaud

**to be** warm

**avoir** froid

**to be** cold

**avoir** faim

**to be** hungry

**avoir** soif

**to be** thirsty

**avoir** peur

**to be** afraid

**avoir** tort

**to be** wrong

**avoir** raison

**to be** right

When you are talking about someone's age, also use the verb **avoir**.

Quel âge **as-tu**?

How old **are** you?

J'**ai** quinze ans.

I'**m** fifteen.

When talking about your health, use the verb **aller**.

Comment <b>allez</b> -vous? Je <b>vais</b> très bien.	How <b>are</b> you? I' <b>m</b> very well.
--	---

***it is, it's***

In most constructions and phrases which translate *it is* and *it's*, use **c'est**.

<b>C'est</b> moi! <b>C'est</b> assez facile.	<b>It's</b> me! <b>It's</b> quite easy.
---	--

*it is* and *it's* are usually translated by **il est** or **elle est** when referring to a noun, depending on whether the noun is masculine or feminine.

Descends la valise si <b>elle</b> n' <b>est</b> pas trop lourde.	Bring the case down if <b>it's</b> not too heavy.
---	--

When you are talking about the time, use **il est**.

Quelle heure <b>est-il</b> ? – <b>Il est</b> sept heures et demie.	What time <b>is it</b> ? – <b>It's</b> half past seven.
---	--

When you are describing what the weather is like, use **faire**.

Quel temps <b>fait-il</b> ? <b>Il fait</b> beau. <b>Il fait</b> du vent.	What's the weather like? <b>It's</b> lovely. <b>It's</b> windy.
--	---

***can, to be able***

If you want to talk about someone's physical ability to do something, use **pouvoir**.

<b>Pouvez-vous</b> faire dix kilometres à pied?	<b>Can</b> you walk ten kilometres?
---	-------------------------------------

When *can* is used with verbs to do with what you can see or hear, you do not use **pouvoir** in French.

<b>Je ne vois</b> rien.	<b>I can't see</b> anything.
-------------------------	------------------------------

If you want to say that you don't know how to do something, use **savoir**.

Elle <b>ne sait pas</b> nager.	She <b>can't</b> swim.
--------------------------------	------------------------

### Showing possession

In English, you can use 's and s' to show who or what something belongs to. In French, you have to use a different construction.

la voiture <b>de</b> mon frère	my brother's car
la chambre <b>des</b> filles	the girls' bedroom

## VERBS

### Introduction to verbs

Verbs are usually used with a noun, with a pronoun such as *I, you* or *he*, or with somebody's name. They can relate to the present, the past and the future – this is called their tense.

Verbs can be either:

- Regular: their forms follow the normal rules
- Irregular: their forms do not follow the normal rules

Regular English verbs have a base form (the form of the verb without any endings added to it, for example, *walk*). The base form can have *to* in front of it, for example, *to walk* – this is called the infinitive.

French verbs also have an infinitive, which ends in **-er**, **-ir** or **-re**, for example, **aimer** (*to love*), **finir** (*to finish*) and **attendre** (*to wait*). Regular French verbs belong to one of these three verb groups, which are called conjugations.

English verbs have other forms apart from the base form and the infinitive: a form ending in *-s* (*walks*), a form ending in *-ing* (*walking*), and a form ending in *-ed* (*walked*). French verbs have many more forms than this, which are made up of endings added to a stem. The stem of a verb can usually be worked out from the infinitive of the verb.

French verb endings change depending on who you are talking about: **je** (I), **il/elle/on** (*he/she/we*) in the singular, or **nous** (*we*), **vous** (*you*) and **ils/elles** (*they*) in the plural. French verbs also have different forms depending on whether you are referring to the present, the past or the future.

## **Irregular verbs**

Some verbs in French do not follow the normal rules and are called irregular verbs. These include some very common and important verbs like **avoir** (*to have*), **être** (*to be*), **faire** (*to do* or *to make*) and **aller** (*to go*). The most common irregular verbs are shown in the verb tables, along with a number of others that you may need to use. For more detailed information on all the most important irregular verbs in French, use *Collins Easy Learning French Verbs*.



## Regular verbs

There are three groups of regular verbs:

- **-er** verbs: verbs that end in **-er** like **aimer** (shown in full [here](#))
- **-ir** verbs: verbs that end in **-ir** like **finir** (shown in full [here](#))
- **-re** verbs: verbs that end in **-re** like **attendre** (shown in full [here](#))

These are called regular verbs because they follow set patterns. When you have learned these patterns you will be able to form, or conjugate, any regular verb.

To form the stem of the verb for the present, imperfect and present subjunctive of any regular verb, take the infinitive minus the last two letters, for example, **aimer** → **aim-**; **finir** → **fin-**; **attendre** → **attend-**, and add the appropriate ending.

To form the future and conditional tense of any regular verb, take the infinitive of **-er** and **-ir** verbs, for example, **aimer**; **finir**, or the infinitive minus **-e** of **-re** verbs, for example, **attendre** → **attendr-**, and add the appropriate ending. Verb endings for regular verbs are highlighted in orange in the verb tables on the following pages.

To form the perfect tense of any regular verb, you need:

- to be able to conjugate **avoir** and **être** in the present tense (see [here](#) and [here](#))
- to be able to form the past participle

To form the past participle of any regular verb, take the infinitive minus the last two letters, for example, **aimer** → **aim-**; **finir** → **fin-**; **attendre** → **attend-**, and add the appropriate ending **-é**, **-i**, or **-u**. The past participles of **aimer**, **finir** and **attendre** are therefore **aimé**, **fini**, and **attendu**.

## Spelling changes in –er verbs

Using the patterns of the regular –er verb **aimer** [here](#), you can now work out the forms of most –er verbs. A few verbs, though, involve a small spelling change. This is usually to do with the way the word is pronounced.

With verbs ending in –**cer** such as **lancer** (*to throw*), **c** becomes **ç** before an **a** or an **o**. This is so the letter **c** is still pronounced like the *c* in the English word *ice*.

je lance	I throw
nous lançons	we throw

With verbs ending in –**ger** such as **manger** (*to eat*), **g** becomes **ge** before an **a** or an **o**. This is so the letter **g** is still pronounced like the *s* in the English word *leisure*.

tu manges	you're eating
nous mangeons	we're eating

With verbs ending in –**eler** such as **appeler** (*to call*), the **l** doubles before –**e**, –**es** and –**ent**. The double consonant (**ll**) affects the pronunciation of the word. In **appeler**, the first **e** sounds like the vowel at the end of *teacher*, but in **appelle** the first **e** sounds like the one in the English word *pet*.

Comment t'appelles tu?	What's your name?
Comment vous appelez vous?	What's your name?

There are two exceptions: **geler** (*to freeze*) and **peeler** (*to peel*) change in the same way as **lever** (*to lift*). See below.

With verbs ending in **-eter** such as **jeter** (*to throw*), the **t** doubles before **-e**, **-es** and **-ent**. The double consonant (**tt**) affects the pronunciation of the word. In **jeter**, the first **e** sounds like the vowel at the end of *teacher*, but in **jette** the first **e** sounds like the one in the English word *pet*.

je jette	I throw
nous jetons	we throw

The exceptions to this rule include **acheter** (*to buy*) which changes in the same way as **lever** (*to lift*). See below.

With verbs ending in **-yer** such as **nettoyer** (*to clean*), the **y** changes to **i** before **-e**, **-es** and **-ent**.

je nettoie	I clean
nous nettoions	we clean

Verbs ending in **-ayer**, such as **payer** (*to pay*) and **essayer** (*to try*), can be spelled with either a **y** or an **i**. So **je paie** and **je paye**, for example, are both correct.

With a small number of verbs such as **lever** (*to lift*), **peser** (*to weigh*), **geler** (*to freeze*), **peler** (*to peel*) and **acheter** (*to buy*), **e** changes to **è** before the consonant and the endings **-e**, **-es** and **-ent**. The accent changes the pronunciation too. In **lever** the first **e** sounds like the vowel at the end of *teacher*, but in **lève** and so on the first **e** sounds like the one in the English word *pet*.

j'achète	I buy
nous achetons	we buy

With verbs such as **espérer** (*to hope*), **préférer** (*to prefer*) and **régler** (*to adjust, to pay*), **é** changes to **è** before the consonant and the endings **–e**, **–es** and **–ent**.

je préfère	I prefer
nous préférons	we prefer

## Reflexive verbs

Reflexive verbs are verbs where the action ‘reflects back’ on the subject. The verb is used with a reflexive pronoun such as *myself*, *yourself* and *herself* in English, for example *I washed myself*; *he shaved himself*. French reflexive verbs are shown in the dictionary as **se** or **s’** (the reflexive pronoun) plus the infinitive, for example **se coucher** (*to go to bed*), **s’appeler** (*to be called*).

Reflexive verbs are much more common in French than they are in English. They are often used to describe things you do (to yourself) every day or that involve a change of some sort (going to bed, sitting down, getting angry, going to sleep). Here are some examples of the most common French reflexive verbs:

<b>s’amuser</b>	to enjoy oneself, to play
<b>s’appeler</b>	to be called
<b>s’asseoir</b>	to sit down
<b>se coucher</b>	to go to bed
<b>se dépêcher</b>	to hurry up
<b>s’habiller</b>	to get dressed
<b>se passer</b>	to take place, to happen, to go
<b>se réveiller</b>	to wake up
<b>se trouver</b>	to be (situated)

To use a reflexive verb in French, you need to decide which reflexive pronoun to use. Here are the French reflexive pronouns:

subject pronoun	reflexive pronoun	meaning
<b>je</b>	<b>me (m')</b>	myself
<b>tu</b>	<b>te (t')</b>	yourself
<b>il</b> <b>elle</b> <b>on</b>	<b>se (s')</b>	himself herself itself <i>or</i> oneself ourselves
<b>nous</b>	<b>nous</b>	ourselves
<b>vous</b>	<b>vous</b>	yourself ( <i>singular</i> ) yourselves ( <i>plural</i> )
<b>ils</b> <b>elles</b>	<b>se (s')</b>	themselves

Il <b>s'</b> habille.	He's getting dressed.
Je <b>m'</b> appelle Julie.	My name's Julie.
Nous <b>nous</b> couchons de bonne heure.	We go to bed early.

You will find an example of a reflexive verb **s'asseoir** conjugated in full [here](#).

## VERB TENSES

### The present tense

The present tense is used to talk about what is true at the moment, what happens regularly and what is happening now, for example, *I'm a student; he works as a consultant; I'm studying French.*

There is more than one way to express the present tense in English. For example, you can either say *I give*, *I am giving* or occasionally *I do give*. In French, you use the same form **je donne** for all these.

In English you can also use the present tense to talk about something that is going to happen in the near future. You can do the same in French.

<b>J'emménage</b> à la fin du mois.	<b>I'm moving in</b> at the end of the month.
<b>On sort</b> avec Aurélie ce soir.	<b>We're going out</b> with Aurélie tonight.

### The future tense

The future tense is used to talk about something that will happen or will be true. There are several ways to express the future tense in English: you can use the future tense (*I'll ask him on Tuesday*), the present tense (*I'm not working tomorrow*), or *going to* followed by an infinitive (*she's going to study in France for a year*). In French you can also use the future tense, the present tense, or the verb **aller** (*to go*) followed by an infinitive.

<b>Elle ne rentrera pas</b> avant minuit.	<b>She won't be back</b> before midnight.
<b>Il arrive</b> dans dix minutes.	<b>He's coming</b> in ten minutes.
<b>Je vais</b> me faire couper les cheveux.	<b>I'm going to</b> have my hair cut.

### The imperfect tense

The imperfect tense is one of the tenses used to talk about the past, especially in descriptions, and to say what used to happen, for example *I*

used to work in Manchester; it was sunny yesterday.

<b>Je ne faisais rien de spécial.</b>	<b>I wasn't doing anything special.</b>
<b>C'était</b> une super fête.	<b>It was</b> a great party.
Avant, <b>il était</b> professeur.	<b>He used to be</b> a teacher.

## The perfect tense

The perfect tense is made up of two parts: the present tense of **avoir** or **être**, and the French past participle (like *given*, *finished* and *done* in English). To find out how to form the past participle of any regular verb in French, see [here](#).

Most verbs form the perfect tense with **avoir**. There are two main groups of verbs which form their perfect tense with **être** instead of **avoir**: all reflexive verbs (see [here](#)) and a group of verbs that are mainly used to talk about movement or a change of some kind, including:

<b>aller</b>	to go
<b>venir</b>	to come
<b>arriver</b>	to arrive, to happen
<b>partir</b>	to leave, to go
<b>descendre</b>	to go down, to come down, to get off
<b>monter</b>	to go up, to come up
<b>entrer</b>	to go in, to come in
<b>sortir</b>	to go out, to come out
<b>mourir</b>	to die
<b>naître</b>	to be born
<b>devenir</b>	to become

<b>rester</b>	to stay
<b>tomber</b>	to fall

Richard <b>est parti</b> de bonne heure.	Richard <b>left</b> early.
<b>Tu es sortie</b> hier soir?	<b>Did you go out</b> last night?
<b>On est resté</b> trois jours à Toulouse.	<b>We stayed</b> in Toulouse for three days.

## The imperative

The imperative is a form of the verb used when giving orders and instructions, for example, *Be quiet!*; *Don't forget your passport!*; *Please fill in this form.*

In French, there are several forms of the imperative that are used to give instructions or orders to someone. These correspond to **tu**, **vous** and **nous**. The **nous** form means the same as *let's* in English. For regular verbs, the imperative is the same as the **tu**, **nous** and **vous** forms of the present tense, except that you do not say the pronouns **tu**, **nous** and **vous**. Also, in the **tu** form of **-er** verbs like **aimer**, the final **-s** is dropped.

<b>Arrête</b> de me faire rire!	<b>Stop</b> making me laugh!
<b>Venez</b> déjeuner chez nous.	<b>Come</b> round to ours for lunch.
<b>Allons</b> voir ce qu'ils font.	<b>Let's go</b> and see what they're up to.

## The subjunctive



The subjunctive is a verb form that is used in certain circumstances to express some sort of feeling, or to show there is doubt about whether something will happen or something is true. It is used after certain structures in French, for example, **il faut que** and **il faudrait que**.

<b>Il faut que</b> je rentre.	<b>I have to</b> get back.
<b>Il faudrait qu'</b> on loue une voiture.	<b>We should</b> hire a car.
<b>Je veux que</b> tu viennes avec moi.	<b>I want</b> you to come with me.

### The conditional

The conditional is a verb form used to talk about things that would happen or that would be true under certain conditions, for instance, *I would help you if I could*. It is also used to say what you would like or need, for example, *Could you give me the bill?*

<b>Je voudrais</b> deux billets.	<b>I'd like</b> two tickets.
Si j'étais toi, <b>je téléphonerais</b> .	<b>I'd call</b> if I were you.

## AIMER: to love

### **present**

<i>j'</i>	<b>aime</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>aimes</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>aime</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>aimons</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>aimez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>aiment</b>

### **imperfect**

<i>j'</i>	<b>aimais</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>aimais</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>aimait</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>aimions</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>aimiez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>aimaient</b>

## **perfect**

<i>j'</i>	<b>ai aimé</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>as aimé</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>a aimé</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>avons aimé</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>avez aimé</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>ont aimé</b>

## **future**

<i>j'</i>	<b>aimerai</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>aimeras</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>aimera</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>aimerons</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>aimerez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>aimeront</b>

## **conditional**

<i>j'</i>	aimera <b>is</b>
<i>tu</i>	aimera <b>is</b>
<i>il</i>	aimerai <b>t</b>
<i>nous</i>	aimerio <b>ns</b>
<i>vous</i>	aimerie <b>z</b>
<i>ils</i>	aimeraie <b>nt</b>

## **present subjunctive**

<i>j'</i>	aime
<i>tu</i>	aime <b>s</b>
<i>il</i>	aime
<i>nous</i>	aimio <b>ns</b>
<i>vous</i>	aimie <b>z</b>
<i>ils</i>	aiment

**imperative**

aime  
aimons  
aimez

**present participle**

aimant

**past participle**

aimé

**example phrases**

<p><b>Est-ce que</b> vous <b>aimez</b> voyager?</p> <p>J'<b>aimerais</b> réserver une table pour deux personnes.</p> <p>Je <b>n'ai pas aimé</b> le film.</p>	<p><b>Do</b> you <b>like</b> to travel?</p> <p>I'<b>d like to</b> book a table for two people.</p> <p>I <b>didn't like</b> the movie.</p>
--	---

## FINIR: to finish

### **present**

<i>je</i>	<b>finis</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>finis</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>finit</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>finissons</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>finissez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>finissent</b>

### **imperfect**

<i>je</i>	<b>finissais</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>finissais</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>finissait</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>finissions</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>finissiez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>finissaient</b>

## **perfect**

<i>j'</i>	<b>ai fini</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>as fini</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>a fini</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>avons fini</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>avez fini</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>ont fini</b>

## **future**

<i>je</i>	<b>finirai</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>finiras</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>finira</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>finirons</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>finirez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>finiront</b>

## **conditional**

<i>je</i>	<b>finirais</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>finirais</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>finirait</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>finirions</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>finiriez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>finiraient</b>

## **present subjunctive**

<i>je</i>	<b>finisse</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>finisses</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>finisse</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>finissions</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>finissiez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>finissent</b>



**imperative**

**finis**  
**finissons**  
**finissez**

**present participle**

**finissant**

**past participle**

**fini**

**example phrases**

**J'ai fini.**

Elle **n'a pas** encore **fini** de manger.

Tu **finis** le travail à quelle heure?

**I've finished.**

She **hasn't finished** eating yet.

What time **do** you **finish** work?

## ATTENDRE: to wait

### present

<i>j'</i>	attends
<i>tu</i>	attends
<i>il</i>	attend
<i>nous</i>	attend <b>ons</b>
<i>vous</i>	attend <b>ez</b>
<i>ils</i>	attend <b>ent</b>

### imperfect

<i>j'</i>	attend <b>ais</b>
<i>tu</i>	attend <b>ais</b>
<i>il</i>	attend <b>ait</b>
<i>nous</i>	attend <b>ions</b>
<i>vous</i>	attend <b>iez</b>
<i>ils</i>	attend <b>aient</b>

## **perfect**

<i>j'</i>	<b>ai</b> attendu
<i>tu</i>	<b>as</b> attendu
<i>il</i>	<b>a</b> attendu
<i>nous</i>	<b>avons</b> attendu
<i>vous</i>	<b>avez</b> attendu
<i>ils</i>	<b>ont</b> attendu

## **future**

<i>j'</i>	attendrai
<i>tu</i>	attendras
<i>il</i>	attendra
<i>nous</i>	attendrons
<i>vous</i>	attendrez
<i>ils</i>	attendront

## **conditional**

<i>j'</i>	attendrais
<i>tu</i>	attendrais
<i>il</i>	attendrait
<i>nous</i>	attendrions
<i>vous</i>	attendriez
<i>ils</i>	attendraient

## **present subjunctive**

<i>j'</i>	attende
<i>tu</i>	attendes
<i>il</i>	attende
<i>nous</i>	attendions
<i>vous</i>	attendiez
<i>ils</i>	attendent

**imperative**

attends  
attend**ons**  
attend**ez**

**present participle**

attendant

**past participle**

attendu

**example phrases**

Tu **attends** depuis longtemps?

**Attendez**-moi!

Je l'**ai attendu** à la poste.

**Have you been waiting** long?

**Wait for** me!

I **waited for** him at the post office.

## S'ASSEOIR: to sit down

### **present**

<i>je</i>	<b>m'assieds</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>t'assieds</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>s'assied</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>nous asseyons</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>vous asseyez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>s'asseyent</b>

### **imperfect**

<i>je</i>	<b>m'asseyais</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>t'asseyais</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>s'asseyait</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>nous asseyions</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>vous asseyiez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>s'asseyaient</b>

## **perfect**

<i>je</i>	<b>me suis assis(e)</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>t'es assis(e)</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>s'est assis</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>nous sommes assis(es)</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>vous êtes assis(e(s))</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>se sont assis</b>

## **future**

<i>je</i>	<b>m'assiérai</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>t'assiéras</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>s'assiéra</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>nous assiérons</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>vous assiérez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>s'assiéront</b>

## **conditional**

<i>je</i>	<b>m'assiérais</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>t'assiérais</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>s'assiérait</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>nous assiérions</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>vous assiériez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>s'assiéraient</b>

## **present subjunctive**

<i>je</i>	<b>m'asseye</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>t'asseyes</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>s'asseye</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>nous asseyions</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>vous asseyiez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>s'asseyent</b>



**imperative**

**assieds-toi**  
**asseyons-nous**  
**asseyez-vous**

**present participle**

**s'asseyant**

**past participle**

**assis**

**example phrases**

Je peux m' <b>asseoir</b> ?	May I <b>sit down</b> ?
<b>Assieds-toi</b> , Jean-Claude.	<b>Sit down</b> , Jean-Claude.
<b>Asseyez-vous</b> , les enfants.	<b>Sit down</b> , children.

## ALLER: to go

### **present**

<i>je</i>	<b>vais</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>vas</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>va</b>
<i>nous</i>	allons
<i>vous</i>	allez
<i>ils</i>	<b>vont</b>

### **imperfect**

<i>j'</i>	allais
<i>tu</i>	allais
<i>il</i>	allait
<i>nous</i>	allions
<i>vous</i>	alliez
<i>ils</i>	allaient

## **perfect**

<i>je</i>	suis allé(e)
<i>tu</i>	es allé (e)
<i>il</i>	est allé
<i>nous</i>	sommes allé(e)s
<i>vous</i>	êtes allé(e(s))
<i>ils</i>	sont allés

## **future**

<i>j'</i>	<b>irai</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>iras</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>ira</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>irons</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>irez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>iront</b>

## **conditional**

<i>j'</i>	<b>irais</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>irais</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>irait</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>irions</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>iriez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>iraient</b>

## **present subjunctive**

<i>j'</i>	<b>aille</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>ailles</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>aille</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>allions</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>alliez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>aillent</b>

**imperative**

**va**  
allons  
allez

**present participle**

allant

**past participle**

allé

**example phrases**

Vous **allez** souvent au cinéma?

Je **suis allé** à Londres.

**Va** voir s'ils sont arrivés.

**Do** you often **go** to the cinema?

I **went** to London.

**Go** and see whether they have arrived.

## AVOIR: to have

### present

<i>j'</i>	<b>ai</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>as</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>a</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>avons</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>avez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>ont</b>

### imperfect

<i>j'</i>	<b>avais</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>avais</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>avait</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>avions</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>aviez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>avaient</b>

## **perfect**

<i>j'</i>	<b>ai eu</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>as eu</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>a eu</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>avons eu</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>avez eu</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>ont eu</b>

## **future**

<i>j'</i>	<b>aurai</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>auras</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>aura</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>aurons</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>aurez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>auront</b>

## **conditional**

<i>j'</i>	<b>aurais</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>aurais</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>aurait</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>aurions</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>auriez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>auraient</b>

## **present subjunctive**

<i>j'</i>	<b>aie</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>aies</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>ait</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>ayons</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>ayez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>aient</b>



**imperative**

**aie**  
**ayons**  
**ayez**

**present participle**

**ayant**

**past participle**

**eu**

**example phrases**

Il <b>a</b> les yeux bleus. Vous <b>avez</b> réservé? Emma <b>aura</b> deux ans au mois de juillet.	He's <b>got</b> blue eyes. <b>Have</b> you booked? Emma <b>will be</b> two in July.
---	---

## DEVOIR: to have, to owe

### present

<i>je</i>	<b>dois</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>dois</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>doit</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>devons</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>devez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>doivent</b>

### imperfect

<i>je</i>	<b>devais</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>devais</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>devait</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>devions</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>deviez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>devaient</b>

## **perfect**

<i>j'</i>	<b>ai dû</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>as dû</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>a dû</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>avons dû</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>avez dû</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>ont dû</b>

## **future**

<i>je</i>	<b>devrai</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>devras</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>devra</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>devrons</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>devrez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>devront</b>

## **conditional**

<i>je</i>	<b>devrais</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>devrais</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>devrait</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>devrions</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>devriez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>devraient</b>

## **present subjunctive**

<i>je</i>	<b>doive</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>doives</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>doive</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>devions</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>deviez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>doivent</b>

**imperative**

**dois**  
**devons**  
**devez**

**present participle**

**devant**

**past participle**

**dû** (NB **due, dus, dues**)

**example phrases**

Je **dois** téléphoner à ma  
propriétaire.

Vous **devriez** changer vos  
livres ici.

On **a dû** dormir à l'hôtel.

I **must** ring my landlady.

You **should** change your  
pounds here.

We **had to** sleep in a hotel.

## ÊTRE: to be

### present

<i>je</i>	<b>suis</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>es</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>est</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>sommes</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>êtes</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>sont</b>

### imperfect

<i>j'</i>	<b>étais</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>étais</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>était</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>étions</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>étiez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>étaient</b>

## **perfect**

<i>j'</i>	<b>ai été</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>as été</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>a été</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>avons été</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>avez été</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>ont été</b>

## **future**

<i>je</i>	<b>serai</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>seras</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>sera</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>serons</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>serez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>seront</b>

## **conditional**

<i>je</i>	<b>serais</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>serais</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>serait</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>serions</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>seriez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>seraient</b>

## **present subjunctive**

<i>je</i>	<b>sois</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>sois</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>soit</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>soyons</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>soyez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>soient</b>



**imperative**

**sois**  
**soyons**  
**soyez**

**present participle**

**étant**

**past participle**

**été**

**example phrases**

Quelle heure <b>est-il</b> ? - Il <b>est</b> dix heures.	What time <b>is</b> it? - It's ten o'clock.
Ils <b>ne sont pas</b> encore arrivés.	They <b>haven't</b> arrived yet.
Il faut qu'on <b>soit</b> à la gare dans dix minutes.	We have to <b>be</b> at the station in ten minutes' time.

## FAIRE: to do, to make

### present

<i>je</i>	<b>fais</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>fais</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>fait</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>faisons</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>faites</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>font</b>

### imperfect

<i>je</i>	<b>faisais</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>faisais</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>faisait</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>faisions</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>faisiez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>faisaient</b>

## **perfect**

<i>j'</i>	<b>ai fait</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>as fait</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>a fait</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>avons fait</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>avez fait</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>ont fait</b>

## **future**

<i>je</i>	<b>ferai</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>feras</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>fera</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>ferons</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>ferez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>feront</b>

## **conditional**

<i>je</i>	<b>ferais</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>ferais</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>ferait</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>ferions</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>feriez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>feraient</b>

## **present subjunctive**

<i>je</i>	<b>fasse</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>fasses</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>fasse</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>fassions</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>fassiez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>fassent</b>

**imperative**

**fais**  
**faisons**  
**faites**

**present participle**

**faisant**

**past participle**

**fait**

**example phrases**

Qu'est-ce que vous **faites**?

Il va **faire** beau demain.

Je **n'ai pas** encore **fait** la  
vaisselle.

What **are** you **doing**?

The weather will **be** nice  
tomorrow.

I **haven't done** the washing up  
yet.

## POUVOIR: to be able

### present

<i>je</i>	<b>peux</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>peux</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>peut</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>pouvons</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>pouvez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>peuvent</b>

### imperfect

<i>je</i>	<b>pouvais</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>pouvais</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>pouvait</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>pouvions</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>pouviez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>pouvaient</b>

## **perfect**

<i>j'</i>	<b>ai pu</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>as pu</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>a pu</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>avons pu</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>avez pu</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>ont pu</b>

## **future**

<i>je</i>	<b>pourrai</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>pourras</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>pourra</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>pourrons</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>pourrez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>pourront</b>

## **conditional**

<i>je</i>	<b>pourrais</b>
<i>tua</i>	<b>pourrais</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>pourrait</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>pourrions</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>pourriez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>pourraient</b>

## **present subjunctive**

<i>je</i>	<b>puisse</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>puisses</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>puisse</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>puissions</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>puissiez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>puissent</b>



**imperative**

*not used*

**present participle**

**pouvant**

**past participle**

**pu**

**example phrases**

Je <b>peux</b> vous aider?	<b>Can</b> I help you?
Vous <b>pourriez</b> me faire un paquet-cadeau?	<b>Could</b> you gift wrap it for me?
Je <b>ne pourrai pas</b> venir samedi.	I <b>won't be able to</b> come on Saturday.

## VOULOIR: to want

### **present**

<i>je</i>	<b>veux</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>veux</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>veut</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>voulons</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>voulez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>veulent</b>

### **imperfect**

<i>je</i>	<b>voulais</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>voulais</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>voulait</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>voulions</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>vouliez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>voulaient</b>

## **perfect**

<i>j'</i>	<b>ai voulu</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>as voulu</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>a voulu</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>avons voulu</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>avez voulu</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>ont voulu</b>

## **future**

<i>je</i>	<b>voudrai</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>voudras</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>voudra</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>voudrons</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>voudrez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>voudront</b>

## **conditional**

<i>je</i>	<b>voudrais</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>voudrais</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>voudrait</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>voudrions</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>voudriez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>voudraient</b>

## **present subjunctive**

<i>je</i>	<b>veille</b>
<i>tu</i>	<b>veilles</b>
<i>il</i>	<b>veille</b>
<i>nous</i>	<b>voulions</b>
<i>vous</i>	<b>vouliez</b>
<i>ils</i>	<b>veillent</b>

**imperative**

**veille**  
**veillons**  
**veuillez**

**present participle**

**voulant**

**past participle**

**voulu**

**example phrases**

Je **voudrais** aller voir un film.

Est-ce que vous **voulez** du  
café?

Elles **voulaient** venir.

I'd **like to** go and see a movie.

**Do you want** some coffee?

They **wanted** to come.

## VOCABULARY BUILDER

### A

**A, an** un, une

**able to be able to** pouvoir

**about** (*relating to*) au sujet de; **What is it about?** C'est à quel sujet?; **I don't know anything about it** Je ne suis pas au courant; **at about 10 o'clock** vers dix heures

**above above the bed** au-dessus du lit

**abroad** à l'étranger

**abscess** l'abcès *m*

**accelerator** l'accélérateur *m*

**to accept** accepter; **Do you accept this card?** Vous acceptez cette carte?

**access** l'accès *m*; **wheelchair access** accès aux handicapés

**accident** l'accident *m*

**accident & emergency department** les urgences *fpl*

**accommodation** le logement

**according to** selon; **according to him** selon lui

**account** le compte

**account number** le numéro de compte

**to ache** faire mal; **My head aches** J'ai mal à la tête; **It aches** Ça fait mal

**address** l'adresse *f*; **Here's my address** Voici mon adresse; **What is the address?** Quelle est l'adresse?

**admission charge** l'entrée *f*

**to admit** (*to hospital*) hospitaliser

**adult** l'adulte *m/f*; **for adults** pour adultes

**advance in advance** à l'avance

**to advise** conseiller

**A&E** les urgences *fpl*

**aeroplane** l'avion *m*

**afraid to be afraid of** avoir peur de

**after** après

**afternoon** l'après-midi *m*; **in the afternoon** l'après-midi; **this afternoon** cet après-midi; **tomorrow**

**afternoon** demain après-midi

**afterwards** après

**again** encore

**against** contre; **I'm against the idea** Je suis contre

**age** l'âge *m*

**agency** l'agence *f*

**ago a week ago** il y a une semaine; **a month ago** il y a un mois

**to agree** être d'accord

**air** l'air *m*; **by air** en avion

**air bed** le matelas pneumatique

**air-conditioning** la climatisation

**air-conditioning unit** le climatiseur  
**air freshener** le désodorisant  
**airline** la ligne aérienne  
**air mail by airmail** par avion  
**airplane** l'avion *m*  
**airport** l'aéroport *m*  
**aisle** le couloir  
**alarm** l'alarme *f*  
**alarm clock** le réveil  
**alcoholic** alcoolisé(e)  
**all** tout; **all day** toute la journée; **all the books** tous les livres  
**allergic allergic to** allergique à; **I'm allergic to...** Je suis allergique à...  
**to allow** permettre; **It's not allowed** C'est interdit  
**all right** (*agreed*) d'accord; (*OK*) bien; **Are you all right?** Ça va?  
**almost** presque  
**alone** tout(e) seul(e)  
**along** le long de; **along the beach** le long de la plage  
**alphabet** l'alphabet *m*  
**Alps** les Alpes *fpl*  
**already** déjà  
**also** aussi  
**altogether 20 euros altogether** 20 euros en tout  
**always** toujours  
**am** du matin; **at 4 am** à quatre heures du matin  
**ambulance** l'ambulance *f*  
**America** l'Amérique *f*  
**American** américain(e)  
**amount** (*total*) le montant  
**anchovies** les anchois *mpl*  
**and** et  
**angry** fâché(e)  
**animal** l'animal *m*  
**ankle** la cheville  
**another** un(e) autre; **another beer, please** une autre bière, s'il vous plaît; **another two salads** deux autres salades  
**answer** la réponse  
**to answer** répondre à  
**answering machine** le répondeur  
**answerphone** le répondeur  
**antibiotic** l'antibiotique *m*  
**antifreeze** l'antigel *m*  
**antihistamine** l'antihistaminique *m*  
**antique shop** le magasin d'antiquités  
**antiseptic** l'antiseptique *m*  
**any** du, de la, des; **Have you any apples?** Vous avez des pommes?; **I don't play tennis any more** Je ne joue plus au tennis  
**anyone** (*in questions*) quelqu'un; (*in negative sentences*) personne  
**anything** (*in questions*) quelque chose; (*in negative sentences*) rien

**anyway** de toute façon  
**anywhere** (*in questions*) quelque part; (*in negative sentences*) nulle part; **You can buy them almost anywhere** Ça s'achète presque partout  
**apart from** à part; **apart from that...** à part ça...  
**apartment** l'appartement *m*  
**apple** la pomme  
**application form** le formulaire  
**appointment** le rendez-vous; **I have an appointment** J'ai rendez-vous  
**approximately** environ  
**apricot** l'abricot *m*  
**April** avril  
**arm** le bras  
**to arrange** arranger  
**to arrive** arriver  
**art** l'art *m*  
**art gallery** le musée  
**arthritis** l'arthrite *f*  
**ashtray** le cendrier  
**to ask** demander; **to ask for something** demander quelque chose; **I'd like to ask you a question**  
J'aimerais vous poser une question  
**aspirin** l'aspirine *f*  
**asthma** l'asthme *m*; **I have asthma** Je suis asthmatique  
**at** à; **at home** à la maison; **at 8 o'clock** à huit heures; **at once** tout de suite; **at night** la nuit  
**attractive** séduisant(e)  
**aubergine** l'aubergine *f*  
**August** août  
**aunt** la tante  
**Australia** l'Australie *f*  
**Australian** australien(ne)  
**automatic car** la voiture à boîte automatique  
**autumn** l'automne *m*  
**available** disponible  
**avocado** l'avocat *m*  
**awake to be awake** être réveillé  
**away far away** loin; **he's away** il est parti  
**awful** affreux(-euse)

## B

**baby** le bébé  
**baby milk** (*formula*) le lait maternisé  
**baby's bottle** le biberon  
**babysitter** le/la babysitter  
**back** (*of body*) le dos  
**backpack** le sac à dos  
**backpacker** le routard, la routarde  
**backpacking to go backpacking** voyager sac à dos  
**bad** (*food, weather, news*) mauvais(e)



**bag** le sac; (*suitcase*) la valise  
**baggage** les bagages *mpl*  
**baggage allowance** le poids (de bagages) autorisé  
**baggage reclaim** la livraison des bagages  
**baker's** la boulangerie  
**ball** (*large: football, rugby*) le ballon; (*small: golf, tennis*) la balle  
**banana** la banane  
**band** (*music*) le groupe  
**bandage** le pansement  
**bank** (*money*) la banque  
**bank account** le compte en banque  
**banknote** le billet de banque  
**bar** (*pub*) le bar; **a bar of chocolate** une tablette de chocolat  
**barbecue** le barbecue; **to have a barbecue** faire un barbecue  
**barber's** le coiffeur  
**basil** le basilic  
**bath** le bain; **to have a bath** prendre un bain  
**bathroom** la salle de bains; **with bathroom** avec salle de bains  
**battery** (*for car*) la batterie; (*for radio, camera*) la pile  
**to be** être  
**beach** la plage; **on the beach** sur la plage  
**bean** le haricot  
**beautiful** beau (belle)  
**because** parce que  
**become to become ill** tomber malade  
**bed** le lit; **double bed** le grand lit; **single bed** le lit d'une personne; **twin beds** les lits jumeaux  
**bed and breakfast** (*place*) la chambre d'hôte; **How much is it for bed and breakfast?** C'est combien pour la chambre et le petit déjeuner?  
**bedroom** la chambre  
**beef** le bœuf  
**beer** la bière  
**before** avant; **before we go** avant de partir; **I've seen this film before** J'ai déjà vu ce film  
**to begin** commencer; **to begin doing** commencer à faire  
**behind** derrière; **behind the house** derrière la maison  
**beige** beige  
**Belgian** belge  
**Belgium** la Belgique  
**to believe** croire  
**to belong to** (*club*) être membre de; **That belongs to me** C'est à moi  
**below** au-dessous de; **below our appartement** au-dessous de chez nous  
**belt** la ceinture  
**beside** à côté de; **beside the bank** à côté de la banque  
**best** le meilleur, la meilleure  
**better** meilleur(e); **better than** meilleur que  
**between** entre  
**bib** (*baby's*) le bavoir  
**bicycle** le vélo; **by bicycle** à vélo  
**bicycle pump** la pompe à vélo

**big** grand(e); (*car, animal, book, parcel*) gros(se)  
**bike** (*pushbike*) le vélo; (*motorbike*) la moto  
**bikini** le bikini  
**bill** la facture; (*restaurant*) la note  
**bin** (*dustbin*) la poubelle  
**Biro®** le stylo  
**birthday** l'anniversaire *m*; **Happy birthday!** Bon anniversaire!; **My birthday is on...** Mon anniversaire c'est le...  
**birthday card** la carte d'anniversaire  
**biscuits** les biscuits *mpl*  
**bit a bit (of)** un peu (de)  
**bitter** amer(ère)  
**black** noir(e)  
**black ice** le verglas  
**blanket** la couverture  
**to bleed** saigner; **My nose is bleeding** Je saigne du nez  
**blind** (*for window*) le store  
**blister** l'ampoule *f*  
**blocked** bouché(e); **The sink is blocked** L'évier est bouché; **I have a blocked nose** J'ai le nez bouché  
**block of flats** l'immeuble *m*  
**blog** le blog  
**to blog** bloguer  
**blond** (*person*) blond(e)  
**blood** le sang  
**blood group** le groupe sanguin  
**blood pressure** la tension (artérielle)  
**blouse** le chemisier  
**blow-dry** le brushing  
**blue** bleu(e); **dark blue** bleu foncé; **light blue** bleu clair  
**to board** (*bus, train*) monter dans; **What time are we boarding?** À quelle heure embarquons-nous?  
**boarding card** la carte d'embarquement  
**boat** le bateau; (*rowing*) la barque  
**boat trip** l'excursion *f* en bateau  
**body** le corps  
**boiler** la chaudière  
**bone** l'os *m*; (*fish*) l'arête *f*  
**bonnet** (*of car*) le capot  
**book** le livre  
**to book** réserver  
**booking** la réservation  
**bookshop** la librairie  
**boot** (*of car*) le coffre  
**boots** les bottes *fpl*  
**bored I'm bored** Je m'ennuie  
**boring** **It's boring** C'est ennuyeux  
**born** **I was born in ...** Je suis né(e) en ...  
**to borrow** **Can I borrow your map?** Je peux emprunter votre plan?

**boss** le chef  
**both** les deux; **I'd like both T-shirts** Je voudrais les deux tee-shirts; **We both went** Nous y sommes allés tous les deux  
**bottle** la bouteille; **a bottle of wine** une bouteille de vin; **a half-bottle of ...** une demi-bouteille de ...  
**bottle opener** l'ouvre-bouteilles *m*  
**box office** le bureau de location  
**boy** le garçon  
**boyfriend** le copain  
**bra** le soutien-gorge  
**bracelet** le bracelet  
**brake** le frein  
**to brake** freiner  
**brake fluid** le liquide de freins  
**brake lights** les feux *mpl* de stop  
**brake pads** les plaquettes *fpl* de freins  
**branch** (*of bank, shop*) la succursale  
**brand** (*make*) la marque  
**bread** le pain; **wholemeal bread** le pain complet; **sliced bread** le pain de mie en tranches  
**to break** casser  
**breakdown** (*car*) la panne  
**breakfast** le petit déjeuner  
**to breathe** respirer  
**bride** la mariée  
**bridegroom** le marié  
**bridge** le pont  
**briefcase** la serviette  
**to bring** apporter  
**Britain** la Grande-Bretagne  
**British** britannique  
**broadband** le haut débit  
**broccoli** le brocoli  
**brochure** la brochure  
**broken** cassé(e); **My leg is broken** Je me suis cassé la jambe  
**broken down** (*car*) en panne  
**brooch** la broche  
**brother** le frère  
**brother-in-law** le beau-frère  
**brown** marron  
**bucket** le seau  
**buffet car** (*train*) la voiture-bar  
**building** l'immeuble *m*  
**bulb** (*light*) l'ampoule *f*  
**bumper** (*on car*) le pare-chocs  
**bunch** (*of flowers*) le bouquet; (*of grapes*) la grappe  
**burger** le hamburger  
**burglar** le cambrioleur, la cambrioleuse  
**burglar alarm** le système d'alarme  
**burnt** (*food*) brûlé(e)

**bus** le bus; (*coach*) le car; **by bus** en car  
**business** l'entreprise *f*; **He's got his own business** Il a sa propre entreprise  
**business card** la carte de visite  
**business class in business class** en classe affaires  
**businessman** l'homme d'affaires  
**business trip** le voyage d'affaires  
**businesswoman** la femme d'affaires  
**bus station** la gare routière  
**bus stop** l'arrêt *m* de bus  
**busy** occupé(e); **He's very busy** Il est très occupé  
**but** mais  
**butcher's** la boucherie  
**butter** le beurre  
**button** le bouton  
**to buy** acheter  
**by** (*beside*) à côté de; **by the church** à côté de l'église; **a painting by Picasso** un tableau de Picasso;  
**They were caught by the police** Ils ont été arrêtés par la police; **I have to be there by 3 o'clock** Je dois y être avant trois heures

## C

**cablecar** le téléphérique  
**café** le café  
**cake** (*large*) le gâteau; (*small*) la pâtisserie, le petit gâteau  
**cake shop** la pâtisserie  
**call** (*telephone*) l'appel *m*; **a long distance call** un appel à longue distance  
**to call** (*speak, phone*) appeler  
**camera** l'appareil *m* photo  
**camera shop** le magasin de photo  
**to camp** camper  
**camping gas** le butane  
**camping stove** le camping-gaz®  
**campsite** le camping  
**can** (*to be able to*) pouvoir; (*to know how to*) savoir; **I can't do that** Je peux pas faire ça; **I can swim** Je sais nager  
**can** la boîte  
**Canada** le Canada  
**Canadian** canadien(ne)  
**to cancel** annuler  
**canoeing to go canoeing** faire du canoë-kayak  
**can opener** l'ouvre-boîtes *m*  
**cappuccino** le cappuccino  
**car** la voiture; **to go by car** aller en voiture  
**carafe** le pichet  
**car alarm** l'alarme *f* de voiture  
**caravan** la caravane  
**carburettor** le carburateur  
**card** (*greetings, business*) la carte; **playing cards** les cartes à jouer

**cardigan** le gilet  
**careful Be careful!** Fais attention!  
**car hire** la location de voitures  
**car insurance** l'assurance *f* automobile  
**car park** le parking  
**carriage (on train)** la voiture  
**carrot** la carotte  
**to carry** porter  
**case (suitcase)** la valise; **in any case** de toute façon  
**cash** l'argent *m* liquide  
**to cash (cheque)** encaisser  
**cash desk** la caisse  
**cash dispenser (ATM)** le distributeur automatique (de billets)  
**cashpoint** le distributeur automatique (de billets)  
**cassette player** le magnétophone  
**castle** le château  
**casualty department** les urgences *fpl*  
**cat** le chat  
**to catch (bus, train, plane)** prendre  
**cathedral** la cathédrale  
**cauliflower** le chou-fleur  
**CD** le CD  
**CD player** le lecteur de CD  
**CD-ROM** le CD-ROM  
**ceiling** le plafond  
**cent (of euro)** le centime  
**centimetre** le centimètre  
**central The hotel is very central** L'hôtel est très central  
**central heating** le chauffage central  
**central locking** le verrouillage central  
**centre** le centre  
**century** le siècle  
**cereal** la céréale  
**certificate** le certificat  
**chair** la chaise  
**chairlift** le télésiège  
**chalet** le chalet  
**chambermaid** la femme de chambre  
**change I haven't got any change** Je n'ai pas de monnaie; **Can you give me change for ten euros?**  
Pourriez-vous me donner la monnaie de dix euros?; **Keep the change** Gardez la monnaie  
**to change to change 50 euros** changer 50 euros; **I'm going to change my shoes** Je vais changer de  
chaussures; **to change trains in Paris** changer de train à Paris; **to change money** changer de  
l'argent  
**changing room** la cabine d'essayage  
**Channel (English)** la Manche  
**charge (fee)** le prix; **to be in charge** être responsable  
**to charge (money)** prendre; (*battery, phone*) recharger; **Please charge it to my account** Mettez ça  
sur mon compte s'il vous plaît; **I need to charge my phone** J'ai besoin de recharger mon téléphone

**charter flight** le vol charter  
**chatroom** le forum de discussion  
**cheap** bon marché  
**to check** (*oil, level, amount*) vérifier  
**to check in** (*at airport*) se présenter à l'enregistrement; (*at hotel*) se présenter à la réception  
**check-in** (*desk*) l'enregistrement *m* des bagages  
**Cheers!** Santé!  
**cheese** le fromage  
**chemist's** la pharmacie  
**cheque** le chèque  
**cherry** la cerise  
**chewing gum** le chewing-gum  
**chicken** le poulet  
**child** l'enfant *m*  
**children** les enfants; **for children** pour enfants  
**chilli** le piment  
**chips** les frites *fpl*  
**chiropodist** le pédicure  
**chiropractor** le chiropracteur  
**chocolate** le chocolat  
**to choose** choisir  
**chop** (*meat*) la côtelette  
**Christian name** le prénom  
**Christmas** Noël *m*; **Merry Christmas!** Joyeux Noël!  
**Christmas card** la carte de Noël  
**Christmas Eve** la veille de Noël  
**church** l'église *f*  
**cigar** le cigare  
**cigarette** la cigarette  
**cigarette lighter** le briquet  
**cinema** le cinéma  
**circle** (*theatre*) le balcon  
**city** la ville  
**city centre** le centre-ville  
**class first-class** la première classe; **second-class** la seconde classe  
**clean** propre  
**to clean** nettoyer  
**cleaner** (*person*) la femme de ménage  
**clear** (*explanation*) clair(e)  
**clever** intelligent(e)  
**client** le client, la cliente  
**climate** le climat  
**to climb** (*mountain*) escalader  
**climbing to go climbing** faire de l'escalade  
**clinic** la clinique  
**cloakroom** le vestiaire  
**clock** l'horloge *f*  
**close close by** proche

**to close** fermer  
**closed** (*shop, museum, restaurant*) fermé(e)  
**clothes** les vêtements *mpl*  
**clothes shop** le magasin de vêtements  
**club** le club  
**clutch** (*in car*) l'embrayage *m*  
**coach** (*bus*) le car  
**coach trip** l'excursion *f* en car  
**coal** le charbon  
**coast** la côte  
**coat** le manteau  
**coat hanger** le cintre  
**cockroach** le cafard  
**cocktail** le cocktail  
**code** (*dialling code*) l'indicatif *m*  
**coffee** le café; **white coffee** le café au lait; **black coffee** le café noir; **decaffeinated coffee** le café décaféiné  
**Coke**® le Coca®  
**cold** froid; **I'm cold** J'ai froid; **It's cold** Il fait froid; **cold water** l'eau froide  
**cold** (*illness*) le rhume; **I have a cold** J'ai un rhume  
**collar** le col  
**colleague** le/la collègue  
**to collect** (*someone*) aller chercher  
**colour** la couleur  
**colour film** (*for camera*) la pellicule couleur  
**comb** le peigne  
**to come** venir; (*to arrive*) arriver  
**to come back** revenir  
**to come in** entrer; **Come in!** Entrez!  
**comfortable** confortable  
**company** (*firm*) la compagnie, la société  
**compartment** (*on train*) le compartiment  
**compass** la boussole  
**to complain** se plaindre; **We're going to complain to the manager** Nous allons nous plaindre au directeur  
**complaint** (*in shop, hotel*) la plainte  
**complete** complet(ète)  
**compulsory** obligatoire  
**computer** l'ordinateur *m*  
**concert** le concert  
**concert hall** la salle de concert  
**concession** la réduction  
**conditioner** l'après-shampooing *m*  
**condom** le préservatif  
**conductor** (*on bus, train*) le contrôleur  
**conference** la conférence  
**to confirm** confirmer; **Please confirm** Confirmez, s'il vous plaît  
**confirmation** (*flight, booking*) la confirmation

**Congratulations!** Félicitations!

**connection** (*train, plane*) la correspondance

**consulate** le consulat

**to consult** consulter; **I need to consult my boss** Il faut que je consulte mon patron

**to contact** joindre; **Where can we contact you?** Où peut-on vous joindre?

**contact lens** le verre de contact

**contact lens cleaner** le produit pour nettoyer les verres de contact

**to continue** continuer

**contraceptive** le contraceptif

**contract** le contrat

**convenient** **Is it convenient?** Cela vous convient?

**to cook** cuisiner

**cooker** la cuisinière

**cookies** les gâteaux *mpl* secs

**cool** frais (fraîche)

**copy** (*duplicate*) la copie

**to copy** (*photocopy*) photocopier

**cork** le bouchon

**corkscrew** le tire-bouchon

**corner** le coin; **the shop on the corner** le magasin au coin de la rue

**cornflakes** les corn-flakes *mpl*

**corridor** le couloir

**cost** le coût

**to cost** coûter; **How much does it cost?** Ça coûte combien?

**cot** le lit d'enfant

**cotton** le coton

**cotton wool** le coton hydrophile

**cough** la toux

**to cough** tousser

**cough mixture** le sirop pour la toux

**counter** (*shop, bar*) le comptoir

**country** (*not town*) la campagne; (*nation*) le pays; **I live in the country** J'habite à la campagne

**couple** (*two people*) le couple; **a couple of ...** deux ...

**courgette** la courgette

**courier service** le service de livraisons

**course** (*of meal*) le plat; **first course** l'entrée *f*; **main course** le plat principal

**cousin** le cousin, la cousine

**cover charge** (*in restaurant*) le couvert

**crab** le crabe

**crash** (*car*) l'accident *m*

**crash helmet** le casque

**cream** (*food, lotion*) la crème

**credit** (*on mobile phone*) le crédit

**credit card** la carte de crédit

**crisps** les chips *fpl*

**croissant** le croissant

**to cross** (*road*) traverser

**crowded** bondé(e)



**cruise** la croisière  
**cucumber** le concombre  
**cufflinks** les boutons *mpl* de manchette  
**cup** la tasse  
**cupboard** le placard  
**current** (*air, water*) le courant  
**customs** (*at border*) la douane  
**cut** la coupure  
**to cut** couper  
**to cycle** faire du vélo  
**cycle track** la piste cyclable  
**cycling** le cyclisme

## D

**daily** (*each day*) tous les jours  
**dairy products** les produits *mpl* laitiers  
**damage** les dégâts *mpl*  
**damp** humide  
**to dance** danser  
**dangerous** dangereux(-euse)  
**dark** (*colour*) foncé(e)  
**date** la date  
**date of birth** la date de naissance  
**daughter** la fille  
**daughter-in-law** la belle-fille  
**day** le jour; **every day** tous les jours; **It costs 50 euros per day** Ça coûte 50 euros par jour  
**dead** mort(e)  
**deaf** sourd(e)  
**dear** (*expensive, in letter*) cher (chère)  
**decaffeinated** décaféiné(e)  
**December** décembre  
**deckchair** la chaise longue  
**deep** profond(e)  
**deep freeze** le congélateur  
**delay** le retard; **How long is the delay?** Il y a combien de retard?  
**delayed** retardé(e)  
**delicatessen** l'épicerie *f* fine  
**delicious** délicieux(-euse)  
**dental floss** le fil dentaire  
**dentist** le/la dentiste  
**dentures** le dentier  
**deodorant** le déodorant  
**department** le rayon  
**department store** le grand magasin  
**departure lounge** la salle d'embarquement  
**departures** les départs *mpl*  
**desk** (*in hotel*) la réception; (*in airport*) le comptoir

**desktop** l'ordinateur du bureau *m*  
**dessert** le dessert  
**details personal details** les coordonnées *fpl*  
**detergent** le détergent  
**to develop** (*photos*) faire développer  
**diabetic** diabétique; **I'm diabetic** Je suis diabétique  
**to dial** (*a number*) composer  
**dialling code** l'indicatif *m*  
**dialling tone** la tonalité  
**diarrhoea** la diarrhée  
**dictionary** le dictionnaire  
**diesel** le gas-oil  
**diet I'm on a diet** Je suis au régime; **special diet** le régime spécial  
**different** différent(e)  
**difficult** difficile  
**digital camera** l'appareil *m* photo numérique  
**dining room** (*in hotel*) la salle de restaurant; (*in house*) la salle à manger  
**dinner** (*evening meal*) le dîner; **to have dinner** dîner  
**direct** (*train, flight*) direct(e)  
**directions to ask for directions** demander le chemin  
**directory phone directory** l'annuaire *m*  
**directory enquiries** les renseignements *mpl*  
**dirty** sale  
**disabled** handicapé(e)  
**to disagree** ne pas être d'accord  
**discount** le rabais  
**dish** le plat  
**dishwasher** le lave-vaisselle  
**disinfectant** le désinfectant  
**disk hard disk** le disque dur  
**to dislocate** (*joint*) disloquer  
**disposable** jetable  
**distilled water** l'eau distillée  
**district** (*of town*) le quartier; (*of country*) la région  
**divorced** divorcé(e)  
**dizzy I feel dizzy** J'ai la tête qui tourne  
**to do** faire  
**doctor** le médecin  
**documents** les papiers *mpl*  
**dog** le chien  
**dollar** le dollar  
**domestic domestic flight** le vol intérieur  
**door** la porte  
**double** double; **double bed** le grand lit; **double room** la chambre pour deux personnes  
**down to go down the stairs** descendre les escaliers  
**to download** télécharger  
**downstairs** en bas; **the flat downstairs** l'appartement du dessous  
**draught There's a draught** Il y a un courant d'air

**draught lager** la bière pression  
**drawing** le dessin  
**dress** la robe  
**to dress** s'habiller  
**dressed to get dressed** s'habiller  
**drink** la boisson  
**to drink** boire  
**drinking water** l'eau *f* potable  
**to drive** conduire  
**driver** le conducteur, la conductrice  
**driving licence** le permis de conduire  
**dry** sec (sèche)  
**to dry** sécher  
**dry-cleaner's** le pressing  
**due** **When is the rent due?** Quand faut-il payer le loyer?; **When is the train due to arrive?** À quelle heure le train doit-il arriver?  
**during** pendant  
**dust** la poussière  
**duster** le chiffon à poussière  
**duty-free** hors taxe  
**duvet** la couette  
**DVD** le DVD  
**DVD player** le lecteur de DVD

## E

**each** chacun, chacune  
**ear** l'oreille *f*  
**earache** **I have earache** J'ai mal à l'oreille/aux oreilles  
**earlier** plus tôt; **I saw him earlier** Je l'ai vu tout à l'heure; **Is there an earlier flight?** Y a-t-il un vol plus tôt?  
**early** tôt  
**earphones** le casque  
**earrings** les boucles *fpf* d'oreille  
**east** l'est *m*  
**Easter** Pâques  
**easy** facile  
**to eat** manger  
**e-book** le livre numérique  
**ecological** écologique  
**e-commerce** le commerce électronique  
**egg** l'œuf *m*; **fried eggs** les œufs sur le plat; **hard-boiled egg** l'œuf dur; **scrambled eggs** les œufs brouillés; **soft-boiled egg** l'œuf à la coque  
**eggplant** l'aubergine *f*  
**either** **I've never been to Corsica – I haven't either** Je ne suis jamais allé en Corse – Moi non plus  
**Elastoplast®** le sparadrap  
**electric** électrique  
**electrician** l'électricien *m*

**electric razor** le rasoir électrique  
**electronic** électronique  
**elevator** l'ascenseur *m*  
**email** le e-mail; **to email sb** envoyer un e-mail à qn  
**email address** l'adresse e-mail  
**embassy** l'ambassade *f*  
**emergency** l'urgence *f*  
**empty** vide  
**end** la fin  
**engaged** (*to be married*) fiancé(e); (*phone, toilet*) occupé(e)  
**engine** le moteur  
**England** l'Angleterre *f*  
**English** anglais(e); (*language*) l'anglais *m*  
**Englishman** l'Anglais  
**Englishwoman** l'Anglaise  
**to enjoy** aimer; **I enjoy swimming** J'aime nager; **I enjoy dancing** J'aime danser; **Enjoy your meal!**  
Bon appétit!  
**enough** assez; **I haven't got enough money** Je n'ai pas assez d'argent; **That's enough** Ça suffit  
**enquiry desk** les renseignements *mpl*  
**to enter** entrer  
**entrance** l'entrée *f*  
**entrance fee** le prix d'entrée  
**envelope** l'enveloppe *f*  
**equipment** l'équipement *m*  
**escalator** l'escalator *m*  
**essential** indispensable  
**estate agent's** l'agence *f* immobilière  
**euro** l'euro *m*  
**Europe** l'Europe *f*  
**European** européen(ne)  
**even even on Sundays** même le dimanche; **even though, even if** même si; **even if it rains** même s'il pleut  
**evening** le soir; **this evening** ce soir; **tomorrow evening** demain soir; **in the evening** le soir; **at 7 o'clock in the evening** à sept heures du soir  
**evening meal** le dîner  
**every** chaque; **every time** chaque fois  
**everyone** tout le monde  
**everything** tout  
**everywhere** partout  
**examination** (*school, medical*) l'examen *m*  
**example for example** par exemple  
**excellent** excellent(e)  
**except for** sauf; **except for me** sauf moi  
**exchange in exchange for** en échange de  
**to exchange** échanger  
**exchange rate** le taux de change  
**excursion** l'excursion *f*  
**excuse Excuse me!** Excusez-moi!; (*to get by*) Pardon!

**exhaust pipe** le pot d'échappement  
**exhibition** l'exposition *f*  
**exit** la sortie  
**expensive** cher (chère)  
**to expire** (*ticket, passport*) expirer  
**to explain** expliquer  
**express** (*train*) le rapide  
**express to send a letter express** envoyer une lettre en exprès  
**extra** (*in addition*) supplémentaire; **Can you give me an extra blanket?** Pouvez-vous me donner une couverture supplémentaire?; **There's an extra charge** Il y a un supplément  
**eye** l'œil *m*  
**eyeliner** l'eye-liner *m*  
**eye shadow** le fard à paupières

## F

**fabric** le tissu  
**face** le visage  
**fair** (*hair*) blond(e); **That's not fair** Ce n'est pas juste  
**fair** (*funfair*) la fête foraine; **a trade fair** une foire commerciale  
**fake** faux (fausse)  
**fall** (*autumn*) l'automne *m*  
**to fall over** tomber; **He fell over** Il est tombé  
**family** la famille  
**famous** célèbre  
**fan** (*handheld*) l'éventail *m*; (*electric*) le ventilateur; **I'm a jazz fan** Je suis un fan de jazz; **She's a U2 fan** C'est une fan de U2; **He's a Liverpool fan** C'est un supporter de Liverpool  
**far** loin; **Is it far?** C'est loin?; **How far is it?** C'est loin?  
**farm** la ferme  
**farmhouse** la ferme  
**fashionable** à la mode  
**fast** rapide; **too fast** trop vite  
**fat** (*plump*) gros (grosse); (*in food, on person*) la graisse  
**father** le père  
**father-in-law** le beau-père  
**fault** (*defect*) un défaut; **It's not my fault** Ce n'est pas de ma faute  
**favourite** préféré(e)  
**fax** le fax; **by fax** par fax  
**to fax** (*document*) faxer; **to fax someone** envoyer un fax à quelqu'un  
**February** février  
**to feed** nourrir  
**to feel** sentir; **I feel sick** J'ai la nausée; **I don't feel well** Je ne me sens pas bien  
**ferry** le ferry  
**festival** le festival  
**to fetch** aller chercher  
**few with a few friends** avec quelques amis; **few tourists** peu de touristes  
**fiancé** le fiancé  
**fiancée** la fiancée

**fig** la figue  
**file** (*computer*) le fichier  
**to fill** remplir  
**to fill in** (*form*) remplir  
**to fill up** (*with petrol*) faire le plein; **Fill it up please!** (*car*) Le plein s'il vous plaît!  
**fillet** le filet  
**filling** (*in tooth*) le plombage  
**film** (*at cinema*) le film; (*for camera*) la pellicule  
**to find** trouver  
**fine** (*to be paid*) la contravention  
**finger** le doigt  
**to finish** finir  
**finished** fini(e)  
**fire** (*electric, gas*) le radiateur; (*open, accidental*) le feu  
**fire alarm** l'alarme f d'incendie  
**firm** la compagnie  
**first** premier(ière)  
**first aid** les premiers secours *mpl*  
**first class** de première classe; **to travel first class** voyager en première classe  
**first name** le prénom  
**fish** (*food*) le poisson  
**to fish** pêcher  
**fishing** la pêche  
**fishmonger's** le marchand de poisson, la marchande de poisson  
**to fit** (*clothes*) **It doesn't fit me** Ça ne me va pas  
**fitting room** le salon d'essayage  
**to fix** (*repair*) réparer  
**fizzy** gazeux(euse); **fizzy water** l'eau gazeuse  
**flash** (*for camera*) le flash  
**flask** (*thermos*) le Thermos®  
**flat** (*apartment*) l'appartement *m*  
**flat** (*battery*) à plat; **It's flat** (*beer*) C'est éventé  
**flat tyre** le pneu creuvé  
**flavour** (*taste*) le goût; **Which flavour?** (*of ice cream*) Quel parfum?  
**flaw** le défaut  
**fleas** les puces *fpl*  
**flesh** la chair  
**flex** (*electrical*) le fil  
**flight** le vol  
**flippers** les palmes *fpl*  
**floor** (*of room*) le sol; (*of building*) l'étage *m*; **Which floor?** Quel étage?; **on the ground floor** au rez-de-chaussée; **on the first floor** au premier étage; **on the second floor** au deuxième étage  
**floppy disk** la disquette  
**flour** la farine  
**flower** la fleur  
**flu** la grippe  
**fly** la mouche  
**to fly** (*person*) aller en avion; (*bird*) voler

**fly sheet** le double toit  
**fog** le brouillard  
**foggy** **It's foggy** Il y a du brouillard  
**food** la nourriture  
**foot** le pied; **to go on foot** aller à pied  
**football** le football  
**football match** le match de football  
**for** pour; **for me** pour moi; **for you** pour toi, pour vous; **for five euros** pour cinq euros; **I've been here for two weeks** Ça fait deux semaines que je suis ici; **She'll be away for a month** Elle sera absente pendant un mois  
**foreign** étranger(ère)  
**foreigner** l'étranger, l'étrangère  
**forever** pour toujours  
**to forget** oublier; **I've forgotten his name** J'ai oublié son nom; **to forget to do** oublier de faire  
**fork** (*for eating*) la fourchette  
**form** (*document*) le formulaire  
**fortnight** quinze jours  
**forward** en avant  
**four-wheel drive vehicle** le quatre-quatre  
**France** la France; **in/to France** en France  
**free** (*not occupied*) libre; (*costing nothing*) gratuit(e); **Is this seat free?** Ce siège est libre?  
**freezer** le congélateur  
**French** français(e); (*language*) le français  
**French fries** les frites *fpl*  
**French people** les Français *mpl*  
**frequent** fréquent(e)  
**fresh** frais (fraîche)  
**Friday** vendredi  
**fridge** le frigo  
**fried** frit(e)  
**friend** l'ami *m*, l'amie *f*  
**friendly** gentil(le)  
**frog** la grenouille  
**frogs' legs** les cuisses *fpl* de grenouille  
**from** de; **Where are you from?** Vous êtes d'où?; **from nine o'clock** à partir de neuf heures  
**front** le devant; **in front of** devant  
**frozen** (*food*) surgelé(e)  
**fruit** le fruit  
**fruit juice** le jus de fruit  
**fruit salad** la salade de fruits  
**frying-pan** la poêle  
**fuel** (*petrol*) l'essence *f*  
**fuel tank** le réservoir d'essence  
**full** (*tank, glass*) plein(e); (*restaurant, hotel*) complet(ète)  
**full board** la pension complète  
**funfair** la fête foraine  
**funny** amusant(e)  
**furnished** meublé(e)

**furniture** les meubles *mpl*

## G

**gallery** la galerie

**game** le jeu

**garage** (*for petrol*) la station-service; (*for parking, repair*) le garage

**garden** le jardin

**garlic** l'ail *m*

**gas** le gaz

**gas cooker** la gazinière

**gas cylinder** la bouteille de gaz

**gate** la porte

**gay** (*person*) homo

**gear** la vitesse; **first gear** la première; **second gear** la seconde; **third gear** la troisième; **fourth gear** la quatrième; **reverse gear** la marche arrière

**gearbox** la boîte de vitesses

**gents** (*toilet*) les toilettes *fpl* (pour hommes)

**genuine** authentique

**to get** (*to have, to receive*) avoir; (*to fetch*) aller chercher

**to get in** (*vehicle*) monter

**to get out** (*vehicle*) sortir

**gift** le cadeau

**gift shop** la boutique de souvenirs

**girl** la fille

**girlfriend** la copine

**to give** donner

**to give back** rendre

**glass** (*for drinking, material*) le verre; **a glass of water** un verre d'eau; **a glass of wine** un verre de vin

**glasses** (*spectacles*) les lunettes *fpl*

**gloves** les gants *mpl*

**to go** aller; **to go home** rentrer à la maison

**to go back** retourner

**to go in** entrer

**to go out** sortir

**God** Dieu *m*

**goggles** (*for swimming*) les lunettes *fpl* de natation; (*for skiing*) les lunettes *fpl* de ski

**golf** le golf

**golf ball** la balle de golf

**golf clubs** les clubs *mpl* de golf

**golf course** le terrain de golf

**good** bon (bonne); **very good** très bien; **good afternoon** bonjour; **good evening** bonsoir; **good morning** bonjour; **good night** bonne nuit

**goodbye** au revoir

**good-looking** beau, bel (belle)

**gram(me)** le gramme

**grandchildren** les petits-enfants *mpl*



**granddaughter** la petite-fille  
**grandfather** le grand-père  
**grandmother** la grand-mère  
**grandparents** les grands-parents *mpl*  
**grandson** le petit-fils  
**grapefruit** le pamplemousse  
**grapes** le raisin  
**grated** (*cheese*) râpé(e)  
**greasy** gras(se)  
**great** (*wonderful*) formidable  
**Great Britain** la Grande-Bretagne  
**green** vert(e)  
**grey** gris(e)  
**grill** (*part of cooker*) le grill  
**grilled** grillé(e)  
**grocer's** l'épicerie *f*  
**ground floor** le rez-de-chaussée; **on the ground floor** au rez-de-chaussée  
**groundsheet** le tapis de sol  
**group** le groupe  
**guarantee** la garantie  
**guesthouse** la pension  
**guide** (*person*) le/la guide  
**guidebook** le guide  
**guided tour** la visite guidée  
**guitar** la guitare  
**gums** (*in mouth*) les gencives *fpl*  
**gym** (*gymnasium*) le gymnase  
**gynecologist** le/la gynécologue

## H

**hair** les cheveux *mpl*  
**haircut** la coupe (de cheveux)  
**hairdresser** le coiffeur, la coiffeuse  
**hairdryer** le sèche-cheveux  
**half** la moitié; **half of the cake** la moitié du gâteau; **half an hour** une demi-heure  
**half board** la demi-pension  
**ham** (*cooked*) le jambon; (*cured*) le jambon cru  
**hamburger** le hamburger  
**hand** la main  
**handbag** le sac à main  
**handicapped** handicapé(e)  
**handlebars** le guidon  
**hand luggage** les bagages *mpl* à main  
**handsome** beau, bel (belle)  
**hangover** la gueule de bois  
**to hang up** (*telephone*) raccrocher  
**to happen** **What happened?** Qu'est-ce qui s'est passé?

**happy** heureux(-euse) **happy birthday!** bon anniversaire!  
**harbour** le port  
**hard** (*not soft*) dur(e); (*not easy*) difficile  
**hardly I've hardly got any money** Je n'ai presque pas d'argent  
**hardware shop** la quincaillerie  
**hat** le chapeau  
**to have** avoir; **I have ...** J'ai ...; **I don't have ...** Je n'ai pas ...; **to have to** devoir; **I've done it** Je l'ai fait; **I'll have a coffee** Je vais prendre un café  
**hay fever** le rhume des foins  
**he** il  
**head** la tête  
**headache** le mal de tête; **I have a headache** J'ai mal à la tête  
**headlights** les phares  
**headphones** les écouteurs  
**to hear** entendre  
**heart** le cœur  
**heart attack** la crise cardiaque  
**heartburn** les brûlures *fpl* d'estomac  
**heater** l'appareil *m* de chauffage  
**heating** le chauffage  
**heavy** lourd(e)  
**heel** le talon  
**hello** bonjour!; (*on telephone*) allô?  
**helmet** le casque  
**to help** aider; **Can you help me?** Vous pouvez m'aider?; **Help!** Au secours!  
**her** la, l'; lui; elle (*belonging to her*) son, sa, ses (*agrees with the noun that follows*); **I saw her last night** Je l'ai vue hier soir; **I don't know her** Je ne la connais pas; **I gave her the book** Je lui ai donné le livre; **with her** avec elle; **I'm older than her** Je suis plus âgé qu'elle; **her passport** son passeport; **her room** sa chambre; **her suitcases** ses valises  
**here** ici; **Here is ...** Voici ...; **Here's my passport** Voici mon passeport  
**Hi!** Salut!  
**high** haut(e)  
**hill** la colline  
**hill-walking** la randonnée en montagne  
**him** le, l'; lui **I saw him last night** Je l'ai vu hier soir; **I don't know him** Je ne le connais pas; **I gave him the letter** Je lui ai donné la lettre; **with him** avec lui  
**hip** la hanche  
**hire car hire** la location de voitures; **bike hire** la location de vélos; **boat hire** la location de bateaux; **ski hire** la location de skis  
**to hire** louer  
**hire car** la voiture de location  
**his** son, sa, ses (*agrees with the noun that follows*); **his passport** son passeport; **his room** sa chambre; **his suitcases** ses valises  
**historic** historique  
**hobby** le passe-temps; **What hobbies do you have?** Quels sont tes passe-temps?  
**to hold** tenir; (*contain*) contenir  
**hole** le trou  
**holiday** les vacances *fpl*; (*public*) le jour férié; **on holiday** en vacances

**home** la maison; **at home** à la maison  
**homeopathic** homéopathique  
**honey** le miel  
**honeymoon** la lune de miel  
**to hope** espérer; **I hope so** J'espère que oui; **I hope not** J'espère que non  
**hors d'œuvre** le hors d'œuvre  
**horse racing** les courses *fpl* de chevaux  
**horse-riding** l'équitation *f*  
**hospital** l'hôpital *m*  
**hostel** (*youth hostel*) l'auberge *f* de jeunesse  
**hot** chaud(e); **hot water** l'eau chaude; **I'm hot** J'ai chaud; **It's hot** (*weather*) Il fait chaud  
**hotel** l'hôtel *m*  
**hour** l'heure *f*; **half an hour** une demi-heure  
**house** la maison  
**house wine** le vin en pichet  
**how** (*in what way*) comment; **How much/many?** Combien?; **How are you?** Comment allez-vous?  
**hungry to be hungry** avoir faim  
**hurry I'm in a hurry** Je suis pressé  
**to hurt Have you hurt yourself?** Tu t'es fait mal?; **My back hurts** J'ai mal au dos; **That hurts** Ça fait mal  
**husband** le mari

## I

**I** je  
**ice** la glace; **ice cube** le glaçon; **with/without ice** avec/sans glaçons  
**ice box** (*for picnics*) la glacière; (*in fridge*) le compartiment à glace  
**ice cream** la glace  
**ice lolly** l'esquimau *m*  
**idea** l'idée *f*  
**if** si  
**ignition** l'allumage *m*  
**ignition key** la clé de contact  
**ill** malade  
**illness** la maladie  
**immediately** immédiatement  
**immersion heater** le chauffe-eau électrique  
**immobilizer** (*on car*) le dispositif antidémarrage  
**to import** importer  
**important** important(e)  
**impossible** impossible  
**to improve** améliorer  
**in** dans; en; au, à; **in ten minutes** dans dix minutes; **in France** en France; **in Canada** au Canada; **in London** à Londres; **in the hotel** à l'hôtel; **in front of** devant  
**included** compris(e)  
**indicator** (*in car*) le clignotant  
**indigestion** l'indigestion *f*  
**infection** l'infection *f*

**information** les renseignements *mpl*  
**information desk** les renseignements *mpl*  
**inhale** (*for medication*) l'inhalateur *m*  
**injection** la piqûre  
**injured** blessé(e)  
**injury** la blessure  
**inn** l'auberge *f*  
**inquiry desk** le bureau de renseignements  
**insect** l'insecte *m*  
**insect repellent** le produit antimoustiques  
**inside** à l'intérieur  
**instant instant coffee** le café instantané  
**instead instead of** au lieu de  
**insulin** l'insuline *f*  
**insurance** l'assurance *f*  
**insurance certificate** l'attestation *f* d'assurance  
**to insure** assurer  
**insured** assuré(e)  
**intend to intend to** avoir l'intention de  
**interesting** intéressant(e)  
**international** international(e)  
**internet** l'Internet *m*; **on the internet** sur Internet; **Do you have internet access?** Vous avez accès à l'Internet?  
**interpreter** l'interprète *m/f*  
**interval** (*theatre*) l'entracte *m*  
**into** dans; en; **to get into a car** monter dans une voiture; **to go into the cinema** entrer dans le cinéma; **to go into town** aller en ville  
**to introduce** présenter  
**invitation** l'invitation *f*  
**to invite** inviter  
**invoice** la facture  
**Ireland** l'Irlande *f*  
**Irish** irlandais(e); (*language*) l'irlandais *m*  
**iron** (*for clothes*) le fer à repasser  
**to iron** repasser  
**ironing board** la planche à repasser  
**ironmonger's** la quincaillerie  
**island** l'île *f*  
**it** il, elle  
**itchy It's itchy** Ça me démange

## J

**jack** (*for car*) le cric  
**jacket** la veste; **waterproof jacket** l'anorak *m*  
**jam** (*food*) la confiture  
**jammed** coincé(e)  
**January** janvier

**jar** (*of honey, jam*) le pot  
**jeans** le jean  
**jelly** (*dessert*) la gelée  
**jeweller's** la bijouterie  
**jewellery** les bijoux *mpl*  
**Jewish** juif (juive)  
**job** le travail  
**to jog** faire du jogging  
**to join** (*club*) s'inscrire à  
**journey** le voyage  
**juice** le jus; **a carton of juice** un carton de jus  
**July** juillet  
**jumper** le pull  
**jump leads** les câbles *mpl* de raccordement pour batterie  
**June** juin  
**just just two** deux seulement; **I've just arrived** Je viens d'arriver  
**to keep** (*retain*) garder

## K

**kettle** la bouilloire  
**key** la clé  
**kid** (*child*) le gosse  
**kidneys** les reins *mpl*  
**kilo(gram)** le kilo  
**kilometre** le kilomètre  
**kind** (*person*) gentil(le)  
**kind** (*sort*) la sorte; **What kind?** Quelle sorte?  
**to kiss** embrasser  
**kitchen** la cuisine  
**knee** le genou  
**knickers** la culotte  
**knife** le couteau  
**to know** (*facts*) savoir; (*person, place*) connaître; **I don't know** Je ne sais pas; **I don't know Paris** Je ne connais pas Paris; **to know how to do sth** savoir faire quelque chose; **to know how to swim** savoir nager

## L

**label** l'étiquette *f*  
**lace** (*fabric*) la dentelle  
**ladies** (*toilet*) les toilettes *fpl* (pour dames)  
**lady** la dame  
**lager** la bière; **bottled lager** la bière en bouteille; **draught lager** la bière pression  
**lake** le lac  
**lamb** l'agneau *m*  
**lamp** la lampe  
**to land** atterrir  
**landlady** la propriétaire

**landline** la ligne fixe  
**landlord** le propriétaire  
**landslide** le glissement de terrain  
**lane** la ruelle; (*of motorway*) la voie  
**language** la langue  
**language school** l'école *f* de langues  
**laptop** le portable  
**large** grand(e)  
**last** dernier(ière); **the last bus** le dernier bus; **the last train** le dernier train; **last time** la dernière fois;  
**last week** la semaine dernière; **last year** l'année dernière; **last night** (*evening*) hier soir; (*night-time*) la nuit dernière  
**late** tard; **The train is late** Le train a du retard; **Sorry we are late** Excusez-nous d'arriver en retard  
**later** plus tard  
**to laugh** rire  
**launderette** la laverie automatique  
**laundry service** le service de blanchisserie  
**lavatory** les toilettes *fpl*  
**lavender** la lavande  
**lawyer** l'avocat *m*, l'avocate *f*  
**lead** (*electric*) le fil  
**leak** la fuite  
**to leak** **It's leaking** Il y a une fuite  
**to learn** apprendre  
**lease** (*rental*) le bail  
**least at least** au moins  
**leather** le cuir  
**to leave** (*a place*) partir; (*to leave behind*) laisser; **I left it at home** Je l'ai laissé à la maison; **What time does the train leave?** À quelle heure le train part-il?  
**leek** le poireau  
**left on/to the left** à gauche  
**left-luggage locker** la consigne automatique  
**left-luggage office** la consigne  
**leg** la jambe  
**legal** légal(e)  
**leisure centre** le centre de loisirs  
**lemon** le citron  
**lemonade** la limonade  
**to lend** prêter; **Can you lend me your pen?** Tu peux me prêter ton stylo?  
**lens** (*of camera*) l'objectif *m* (*contact lens*) la lentille  
**less** moins; **less than me** moins que moi; **A bit less, please** Un peu moins, s'il vous plaît  
**lesson** la leçon  
**to let** (*to allow*) permettre; (*to hire out*) louer  
**letter** la lettre  
**letterbox** la boîte aux lettres  
**lettuce** la laitue  
**licence** le permis  
**to lie down** s'allonger

**lift** (*elevator*) l'ascenseur *m*; **Can you give me a lift to the swimming pool?** Vous pouvez me déposer à la piscine?  
**lift pass** (*skiing*) le forfait  
**light** (*not heavy*) léger(ère)  
**light** la lumière; **Have you got a light?** Avez-vous du feu?  
**light bulb** l'ampoule *f*  
**lighter** le briquet  
**lighthouse** le phare  
**lightning** les éclairs *mpl*  
**like** (*similar to*) comme; **a city like Paris** une ville comme Paris  
**to like** aimer; **I like coffee** J'aime le café; **I don't like ...** Je n'aime pas ...; **I'd like to ...** Je voudrais ...  
...  
**lime** (*fruit*) le citron vert  
**line** (*queue*) la file; (*row, telephone*) la ligne  
**linen** le lin  
**lingerie** la lingerie  
**lips** les lèvres *fpl*  
**lipstick** le rouge à lèvres  
**to listen to** écouter  
**litre** le litre  
**little** petit(e); **a little** un peu  
**to live** (*in a place*) habiter; **I live in London** J'habite à Londres  
**liver** le foie  
**living room** le salon  
**loaf** le pain  
**lobster** le homard  
**local** local(e)  
**lock** (*on door, box*) la serrure  
**to lock** fermer à clé  
**locker** (*for luggage*) le casier  
**locksmith** le serrurier  
**log** (*for fire*) la bûche  
**lollipop** la sucette  
**London** Londres; **to/in London** à Londres  
**long** long(ue); **for a long time** longtemps  
**long-sighted** hypermétrope  
**to look after** garder  
**to look at** regarder  
**to look for** chercher  
**loose** (*not fastened*) desserré(e); **It's come loose** (*unscrewed*) Ça s'est desserré; (*detached*) Ça s'est détaché  
**lorry** le camion  
**to lose** perdre  
**lost** (*object*) perdu(e); **I've lost ...** J'ai perdu ...; **I'm lost** Je suis perdu(e)  
**lost property office** le bureau des objets trouvés  
**lot a lot of, lots of** beaucoup de; **a lot of people** beaucoup de monde; **a lot of fruit** beaucoup de fruits  
**lotion** la lotion

**loud** fort(e)  
**loudspeaker** le haut-parleur  
**lounge** (*in hotel, airport*) le salon  
**love** l'amour  
**to love** (*person*) aimer; (*food, activity*) adorer; **I love you** Je t'aime; **I love swimming** J'adore nager  
**lovely** beau, bel (belle)  
**low** bas(se)  
**lucky** chanceux(-euse); **to be lucky** avoir de la chance  
**luggage** les bagages *mpl*  
**luggage allowance** le poids maximum autorisé  
**luggage rack** le porte-bagages  
**luggage tag** l'étiquette *f* à bagages  
**luggage trolley** le chariot (à bagages)  
**lump** (*swelling*) la bosse  
**lunch** le déjeuner  
**lung** le poumon  
**luxury** le luxe

## M

**mad** fou (folle)  
**magazine** la revue  
**maid** (*in hotel*) la domestique  
**maiden name** le nom de jeune fille  
**mail** le courrier; **by mail** par la poste  
**main** principal(e)  
**main course** (*of meal*) le plat principal  
**main road** la route principale  
**make** (*brand*) la marque  
**to make** faire; **made of wood** en bois  
**make-up** le maquillage  
**man** l'homme *m*  
**to manage** (*to be in charge of*) gérer  
**manager** le directeur, la directrice  
**manageress** la directrice  
**manicure** les soins *mpl* de manucure  
**manual** (*gear change*) manuel(le)  
**many** beaucoup de  
**map** (*of region, country*) la carte; (*of town*) le plan; **road map** la carte routière; **street map** le plan de la ville  
**March** mars  
**margarine** la margarine  
**marina** la marina  
**mark** (*stain*) la tache  
**market** le marché; **Where is the market?** Où est le marché? **When is the market?** Le marché, c'est quel jour?  
**marmalade** la marmelade d'oranges  
**married** marié(e); **I'm married** Je suis marié(e); **Are you married?** Vous êtes marié(e)?



**mass** (*in church*) la messe  
**massage** le massage  
**match** (*game*) le match  
**matches** les allumettes *fpl*  
**material** (*cloth*) le tissu  
**to matter** **It doesn't matter** Ça ne fait rien; **What's the matter?** Qu'est-ce qu'il y a?  
**mattress** le matelas  
**May** mai  
**mayonnaise** la mayonnaise  
**mayor** le maire  
**maximum** le maximum  
**me** me, m'; moi; **Can you hear me?** Vous m'entendez?; **He scares me** Il me fait peur; **It's me** C'est moi; **without me** sans moi; **with me** avec moi  
**meal** le repas  
**to mean** vouloir dire; **What does this mean?** Qu'est-ce que ça veut dire?  
**meat** la viande  
**medicine** le médicament  
**Mediterranean Sea** la Méditerranée  
**medium** (*size*) moyen(ne)  
**medium rare** (*meat*) à point  
**to meet** (*by chance*) rencontrer; (*by arrangement*) voir; **I'm meeting her tomorrow** Je la vois demain  
**meeting** la réunion  
**melon** le melon  
**member** (*of club*) le membre  
**to mend** réparer  
**menu** la carte; **set menu** le menu  
**message** le message  
**to message** envoyer un message  
**metal** le métal  
**meter** le compteur  
**metre** le mètre  
**microwave oven** le four à micro-ondes  
**midday** midi; **at midday** à midi  
**middle** le milieu; **in the middle of the street** au milieu de la rue; **in the middle of May** en plein mois de mai  
**middle-aged** d'une cinquantaine d'années  
**midge** le moucheron  
**midnight** minuit; **at midnight** à minuit  
**migraine** la migraine; **I have a migraine** J'ai la migraine  
**mild** (*weather, cheese*) doux (douce); (*curry*) peu épicé(e)  
**milk** le lait; **with/without milk** avec/sans lait; **fresh milk** le lait frais; **hot milk** le lait chaud; **long-life milk** le lait longue conservation; **powdered milk** le lait en poudre; **soya milk** le lait de soja  
**milkshake** le milk-shake  
**millimetre** le millimètre  
**mince** (*meat*) la viande hachée  
**to mind** **Do you mind if I...?** Ça vous gêne si je...?; **I don't mind** Ça m'est égal  
**mineral water** l'eau minérale

**minidisc** le minidisque  
**minimum** le minimum  
**minute** la minute  
**mirror** le miroir; (*in car*) le rétroviseur  
**Miss** Mademoiselle  
**to miss** (*train, flight*) rater  
**missing** (*disappeared*) disparu(e); **My son is missing** Mon fils a disparu  
**mistake** l'erreur *f*  
**to mix** mélanger  
**mobile number** le numéro de portable  
**mobile phone** le portable  
**modem** le modem  
**modern** moderne  
**moisturizer** la crème hydratante  
**moment at the moment** en ce moment; **just a moment** un instant  
**monastery** le monastère  
**Monday** lundi  
**money** l'argent *m*  
**month** le mois; **this month** ce mois-ci; **last month** le mois dernier; **next month** le mois prochain  
**moped** le vélomoteur  
**more** plus; **more expensive** plus cher; **more than before** plus qu'avant; **more wine** plus de vin;  
**more than 10** plus de dix; **Do you want some more tea?** Voulez-vous encore du thé?; **There isn't any more** Il n'en reste plus  
**morning** le matin; **in the morning** le matin; **this morning** ce matin; **tomorrow morning** demain  
matin  
**mosque** la mosquée  
**mosquito** le moustique  
**mosquito repellent** le produit antimoustiques  
**most the most interesting** le plus intéressant; **most of the time** la plupart du temps; **most people** la  
plupart des gens  
**mother** la mère  
**mother-in-law** la belle-mère  
**motor** le moteur  
**motorbike** la moto  
**motorboat** le bateau à moteur  
**motorway** l'autoroute *f*  
**mountain** la montagne  
**mountain bike** le VTT, le vélo tout-terrain  
**mountaineering** l'alpinisme *m*  
**mouse** la souris  
**mouth** la bouche  
**to move** bouger  
**movie** le film  
**Mr** Monsieur; **Mr Dupond** M. Dupond  
**Mrs** Madame; **Mrs Leclerc** Mme Leclerc  
**Ms** Madame  
**much** beaucoup; **too much** trop; **too much money** trop d'argent; **I feel much better** Je me sens  
beaucoup mieux

**mugging** l'agression *f*  
**museum** le musée  
**mushrooms** les champignons *mpl*  
**music** la musique  
**Muslim** musulman(e)  
**mussels** les moules *fpl*  
**must I must buy some presents** Il faut que j'achète des cadeaux  
**mustard** la moutarde  
**my** mon, ma, mes (*agrees with the noun that follows*); **my passport** mon passeport; **my room** ma chambre; **my suitcases** mes valises

## N

**nail** (*metal*) le clou; (*finger*) l'ongle *m*  
**nail file** la lime à ongles  
**name** le nom; **My name is...** Je m'appelle...; **What is your name?** Comment vous appelez-vous?  
**nanny** la garde d'enfants; **We have a nanny** Nous avons une dame qui vient garder les enfants à la maison  
**napkin** la serviette de table  
**nappy** la couche  
**narrow** étroit(e)  
**nationality** la nationalité  
**natural** naturel(le)  
**nature reserve** la réserve naturelle  
**navy blue** bleu marine  
**near** près de; **near the bank** près de la banque; **Is it near?** C'est près d'ici?  
**necessary** nécessaire  
**neck** le cou  
**necklace** le collier  
**nectarine** le brugnion  
**to need (to)** avoir besoin de; **I need** j'ai besoin de; **we need** nous avons besoin de; **I need to phone** J'ai besoin de téléphoner  
**needle** l'aiguille *f*; **a needle and thread** du fil et une aiguille  
**negative** (*photo*) le négatif  
**neighbours** les voisins *mpl*  
**nephew** le neveu  
**net the Net** le Net  
**neutral** (*gear*) le point mort  
**never** jamais; **I never drink wine** Je ne bois jamais de vin  
**new** nouveau (nouvelle)  
**news** (*TV, radio*) les informations *fpl*  
**newsagent's** le marchand de journaux  
**newspaper** le journal  
**news stand** le kiosque  
**New Year** le Nouvel An; **Happy New Year!** Bonne année!  
**New Year's Eve** la Saint-Sylvestre  
**New Zealand** la Nouvelle-Zélande

**next** prochain(e); (*after*) ensuite; **the next train** le prochain train; **the next stop** le prochain arrêt; **next week** la semaine prochaine; **next Monday** lundi prochain; **next to** à côté de; **What did you do next?** Qu'est-ce que vous avez fait ensuite?

**nice** (*kind*) gentil(le); (*pretty*) joli(e); (*good*) bon(ne)

**niece** la nièce

**night** (*night-time*) la nuit; (*evening*) le soir; **at night** la nuit; **per night** par nuit; **last night** (*evening*) hier soir; (*night-time*) la nuit dernière; **tomorrow night** (*evening*) demain soir; (*night-time*) la nuit prochaine; **tonight** (*evening*) ce soir; (*night-time*) cette nuit

**nightclub** la boîte de nuit

**no** non; (*without*) sans; **no thanks** non merci; **no smoking** défense de fumer; **no problem** pas de problème; **no ice** sans glaçons; **no sugar** sans sucre; **There's no hot water** Il n'y a pas d'eau chaude

**nobody** personne; **Nobody came** Personne n'est venu

**noise** le bruit

**noisy** **It's very noisy** Il y a beaucoup de bruit

**non-alcoholic** sans alcool

**none** aucun(e)

**non-smoking** (*seat, compartment*) non-fumeurs

**normally** (*usually*) généralement; (*as normal*) normalement

**north** le nord

**Northern Ireland** l'Irlande f du Nord

**nose** le nez

**nosebleed to have a nosebleed** saigner du nez

**not** ne pas; **I am not going** Je n'y vais pas

**note** (*banknote*) le billet; (*written*) le mot

**note pad** le bloc-notes

**nothing** rien; **nothing else** rien d'autre

**notice** **There's a notice on the door** C'est affiché sur la porte

**November** novembre

**now** maintenant; **now and then** de temps en temps

**number** (*quantity*) le nombre; (*of room, house*) le numéro; **phone number** le numéro de téléphone

**numberplate** (*of car*) la plaque d'immatriculation

**nurse** l'infirmier m, l'infirmière f

**nursery slope** la piste pour débutants

**nuts** (*to eat*) les noix et les arachides *fpl*

**to obtain** obtenir

## O

**occasionally** de temps en temps

**occupation** (*work*) la profession

**October** octobre

**of** de; **a glass of wine** un verre de vin; **made of cotton** en coton

**off** (*light, heater*) éteint(e); (*tap, gas*) fermé(e); (*milk*) tourné(e); **I'm off** Je m'en vais

**office** le bureau

**often** souvent; **How often do you go to the gym?** Tu vas à la gym tous les combien?

**oil** l'huile f

**oil gauge** la jauge de niveau d'huile

**OK!** d'accord!

**old** vieux, vieil (vieille); **How old are you?** Quel âge avez-vous?; **I'm... years old** J'ai... ans

**olive** l'olive *f*

**olive oil** l'huile *f* d'olive

**on** (*TV, light*) allumé(e); (*tap, gas*) ouvert(e); (*engine*) en marche

**on** sur; **on the table** sur la table; **on the TV** à la télé; **on the second floor** au deuxième étage; **on**

**Friday** vendredi; **on Fridays** le vendredi; **on time** à l'heure

**once** une fois; **once a week** une fois par semaine; **at once** tout de suite

**onion** l'oignon *m*

**only** seulement; **How much was it? – Only 10 euros** C'était combien? – Seulement dix euros; **We**

**only want to stay for one night** Nous ne voulons rester qu'une nuit; **the only day I'm free** le seul jour où je suis libre

**open** ouvert(e)

**to open** ouvrir

**opening hours** les heures *fpl* d'ouverture

**opera** l'opéra *m*

**operation** (*surgical*) l'opération *f*

**operator** (*phone*) le/la standardiste

**opposite** en face de; **opposite the bank** en face de la banque; **quite the opposite** bien au contraire

**optician** l'opticien, l'opticienne

**or** ou; **Tea or coffee?** Du thé ou du café?; **I don't eat meat or fish** Je ne mange ni viande ni poisson

**orange** (*fruit*) l'orange *f* (*colour*) orange

**orange juice** le jus d'orange

**order out of order** en panne

**to order** (*in restaurant*) commander; **I'd like to order** Je voudrais commander

**organic** biologique

**to organize** organiser

**other** autre; **the other car** l'autre voiture; **the other one** l'autre; **Have you any others?** Vous en avez d'autres?

**ought I ought to call my parents** Je devrais appeler mes parents

**our** (*sing*) notre; (*plural*) nos; **our room** notre chambre; **our passports** nos passeports; **our baggage** nos bagages

**out** (*light*) éteint(e); **She's out** Elle est sortie; **He lives out of town** Il habite en dehors de la ville

**outdoor** (*pool*) en plein air

**outside** dehors; **It's outside** C'est dehors; **outside the house** en dehors de la maison

**oven** le four

**over** (*on top of*) au-dessus de; (*finished*) terminé(e); **over the window** au-dessus de la fenêtre; **over here** ici; **It's over there** C'est là-bas; **over the holidays** pendant les vacances

**to overcharge** faire payer trop cher

**overdone** (*food*) trop cuit(e)

**to owe** devoir; **I owe you...** Je vous dois...

**own** propre; **It's his own company** C'est sa propre société; **on my own** tout seul

**to own** (*land, house, company*) être propriétaire de

**owner** le/la propriétaire

**oxygen** l'oxygène *m*

**oyster** l'huître *f*

## P

**pacemaker** le stimulateur (cardiaque)  
**to pack** (*luggage*) faire les bagages  
**package tour** le voyage organisé  
**packet** le paquet  
**paid** payé(e)  
**pain** la douleur  
**painful** douloureux(-euse)  
**painkiller** l'analgésique *m*  
**to paint** peindre  
**painting** (*picture*) le tableau  
**pair** la paire  
**palace** le palais  
**pale pale blue** bleu pâle  
**pan** (*saucepan*) la casserole; (*frying pan*) la poêle  
**panniers** (*for bike*) les sacoches *fpl*  
**panties** la culotte  
**pants** (*men's underwear*) le slip  
**panty liner** le protège-slip  
**paper** le papier  
**paragliding** le parapente  
**parcel** le colis  
**pardon Pardon?** Comment?; **I beg your pardon?** Pardon?  
**parents** les parents *mpl*  
**park** le parc  
**to park** garer (la voiture)  
**parking meter** le parcimètre  
**partner** (*business*) l'associé *m*, l'associée *m* (*boyfriend/girlfriend*) le compagnon, la compagne  
**party** (*group*) le groupe; (*celebration*) la fête; (*in the evening*) la soirée  
**pass** (*bus, train*) la carte; (*mountain*) le col  
**to pass** **Can you pass me the salt, please?** Vous pouvez me passer le sel, s'il vous plaît?  
**passenger** le passager, la passagère  
**passport** le passeport  
**password** le mot de passe  
**pasta** les pâtes *fpl*  
**pastry** (*cake*) la pâtisserie  
**path** le chemin  
**patient** (*in hospital*) le patient, la patiente  
**to pay** payer; **I'd like to pay** Je voudrais payer; **Where do I pay?** Où est-ce qu'il faut payer?  
**payment** le paiement  
**peach** la pêche  
**peanut** la cacahuète *f*  
**pear** la poire  
**peas** les petits pois  
**pedestrian** le piéton, la piétonne  
**to peel** éplucher  
**peg** (*for clothes*) la pince à linge; (*for tent*) le piquet

**pen** le stylo  
**pencil** le crayon  
**pensioner** le retraité, la retraitée  
**people** les gens *mpl*  
**pepper** (*spice*) le poivre; (*vegetable*) le poivron  
**per** par; **per day** par jour; **per person** par personne  
**performance** (*in theatre*) le spectacle; (*in cinema*) la séance  
**perfume** le parfum  
**perhaps** peut-être  
**perm** la permanente  
**permit** le permis  
**person** la personne  
**petrol** l'essence *f*; **unleaded petrol** l'essence sans plomb  
**petrol pump** la pompe à essence  
**petrol station** la station-service  
**petrol tank** le réservoir  
**pharmacy** la pharmacie  
**phone** le téléphone; **by phone** par téléphone  
**to phone** téléphoner  
**phonebook** l'annuaire *m*  
**phone call** l'appel *m*  
**phonecard** la télécarte  
**photo** la photo; **to take a photo** prendre une photo  
**photocopy** la photocopie  
**to photocopy** photocopier  
**photograph** la photographie  
**to pick** (*choose*) choisir  
**pickpocket** le pickpocket  
**picnic** le pique-nique; **to have a picnic** pique-niquer  
**picture** (*painting*) le tableau; (*photo*) la photo  
**pie** (*fruit, meat*) la tourte  
**piece** le morceau  
**pig** le cochon  
**pill** la pilule  
**pillow** l'oreiller *m*  
**pilot** le pilote  
**pin** l'épingle *f*  
**pineapple** le pamplemousse  
**pink** rose  
**pipe** (*drains*) le tuyau  
**pity** **What a pity!** Quel dommage!  
**pizza** la pizza  
**place** l'endroit *m*  
**place of birth** le lieu de naissance  
**plain** (*yoghurt*) nature  
**plan** (*of town*) le plan  
**plane** (*aircraft*) l'avion *m*  
**plaster** (*sticking plaster*) le sparadrap; (*for broken limb, on wall*) le plâtre

**plastic** en plastique  
**plastic bag** le sac en plastique  
**plate** l'assiette *f*  
**platform** (*railway*) le quai; **Which platform?** Quel quai?  
**play** (*theatre*) la pièce  
**to play** (*games*) jouer à; (*instrument*) jouer de; **I play the guitar** Je joue de la guitare  
**please** s'il vous plaît  
**pleased** content(e); **Pleased to meet you!** Enchanté(e)!  
**plug** (*electrical*) la prise; (*for sink*) le bouchon  
**to plug in** brancher  
**plum** la prune  
**plumber** le plombier  
**pm** de l'après-midi  
**poached** (*egg, fish*) poché(e)  
**pocket** la poche  
**police** la police  
**policeman** l'agent *m* de police  
**police station** le commissariat; (*in small town*) la gendarmerie  
**policewoman** la femme agent  
**polish** (*for shoes*) le cirage  
**polite** poli(e)  
**pool** la piscine  
**poor** pauvre  
**popular** populaire  
**pork** le porc  
**porter** (*in hotel*) le portier; (*at station*) le porteur  
**portion** la portion  
**Portugal** le Portugal  
**Portuguese** portugais(e); (*language*) le portugais  
**possible** possible  
**post by post** par courrier  
**to post** poster  
**postbox** la boîte aux lettres  
**postcard** la carte postale  
**postcode** le code postal  
**poster** l'affiche *f*  
**postman** le facteur  
**post office** la poste  
**postwoman** la factrice  
**pot** (*for cooking*) la casserole  
**potato** la pomme de terre; **baked potato** la pomme de terre cuite au four; **boiled potatoes** les pommes vapeur; **fried potatoes** les pommes frites; **mashed potatoes** la purée; **roast potatoes** les pommes de terre rôties; **sauteed potatoes** les pommes de terre sautées  
**potato salad** la salade de pommes de terre  
**pottery** la poterie  
**pound** (*money*) la livre  
**powder** la poudre  
**powdered** en poudre



**power** (*electricity*) le courant  
**pram** le landau  
**prawn** la crevette rose  
**to prefer** préférer  
**pregnant** enceinte; **I'm pregnant** Je suis enceinte  
**to prepare** préparer  
**prescription** l'ordonnance *f*  
**present** (*gift*) le cadeau  
**president** le président  
**pressure** la pression  
**pretty** joli(e)  
**price** le prix  
**price list** le tarif  
**priest** le prêtre  
**print** (*photo*) la photo  
**to print** imprimer  
**printer** l'imprimante *f*  
**printout** la sortie papier  
**private** privé(e)  
**probably** probablement; **He'll probably come tomorrow** Il viendra probablement demain  
**problem** le problème  
**programme** (*TV, radio*) l'émission *f*  
**to promise** promettre  
**to pronounce** prononcer; **How's it pronounced?** Comment ça se prononce?  
**public** public(ique)  
**public holiday** le jour férié  
**pudding** le dessert  
**to pull** tirer  
**pullover** le pull  
**pulse** le pouls  
**pump** (*for bike*) la pompe; **petrol pump** la pompe à essence  
**puncture** la crevaison  
**purple** violet(te)  
**purpose** le but; **on purpose** exprès  
**purse** le porte-monnaie  
**to push** pousser  
**pushchair** la poussette  
**to put** (*place*) mettre  
**Pyrenees** les Pyrénées *mpl*

## Q

**quality** la qualité  
**quantity** la quantité  
**quarter** le quart; **a quarter of an hour** un quart d'heure  
**question** la question; **to ask a question** poser une question  
**queue** la queue  
**to queue** faire la queue

**quick** rapide  
**quickly** vite  
**quiet** (*place*) tranquille  
**quilt** la couette  
**quite** (*rather*) assez; **quite good** pas mal; **quite expensive** assez cher; **I'm not quite sure** Je n'en suis pas tout à fait sûr; **quite a lot** pas mal

## R

**racket** la raquette  
**radiator** le radiateur  
**radio** la radio; **car radio** l'autoradio *m*  
**railway** le chemin de fer  
**railway station** la gare  
**rain** la pluie  
**to rain** **It's raining** Il pleut  
**raincoat** l'imperméable *m*  
**rare** (*uncommon*) rare; (*steak*) saignant(e)  
**raspberry** la framboise  
**rat** le rat  
**rate** (*price*) le tarif  
**rate of exchange** le taux de change  
**rather** plutôt; **rather expensive** plutôt cher; **I'd rather stay in tonight** J'aimerais mieux rester à la maison ce soir  
**raw** cru(e)  
**razor** le rasoir  
**razor blades** les lames de rasoir  
**to read** lire  
**ready** prêt(e)  
**real** vrai(e)  
**really** vraiment  
**receipt** le reçu  
**reception desk** la réception  
**receptionist** le/la réceptionniste  
**to recharge** (*battery*) recharger  
**recipe** la recette  
**to recognize** reconnaître  
**to recommend** recommander  
**red** rouge  
**refill** la recharge  
**refund** le remboursement  
**region** la région  
**to register** (*at hotel*) s'inscrire sur le registre  
**registered** (*letter*) recommandé(e)  
**registration form** la fiche  
**relation** (*family*) le parent, la parente  
**relationship** les rapports *mpl*  
**to remain** rester

**remember** se rappeler; **I don't remember** Je ne m'en rappelle pas; **I can't remember his name** Je ne me souviens pas de son nom  
**remote control** la télécommande  
**rent** le loyer  
**to rent** louer  
**rental** la location  
**to repair** réparer  
**to repeat** répéter  
**to reply** répondre  
**to require** exiger; **What qualifications are required?** Quels sont les diplômes requis?  
**to rescue** sauver  
**reservation** la réservation  
**to reserve** réserver  
**reserved** réservé(e)  
**resident** (*in country*) le résident, la résidente; (*in street*) le riverain, la riveraine; (*in hotel*) le/la pensionnaire  
**rest** (*relaxation*) le repos; (*remainder*) le reste; **the rest of the money** le reste de l'argent  
**to rest** se reposer  
**restaurant** le restaurant  
**restaurant car** le wagon-restaurant  
**retired** retraité(e)  
**to return** (*to go back*) retourner  
**return ticket** le billet aller-retour  
**retweet** le retweet  
**to retweet** retweeter  
**to reverse** faire marche arrière; **to reverse the charges** appeler en PCV  
**reverse gear** la marche arrière  
**rice** le riz  
**rich** (*person, food*) riche  
**to ride** (*on horseback*) monter à cheval; (*on bike*) faire du vélo  
**right** (*correct*) exact(e); **to be right** avoir raison; **You're right** Tu as raison; **That's right** C'est vrai;  
**on/to the right** à droite  
**right of way** la priorité  
**ring** (*on finger*) la bague  
**ripe** mûr(e)  
**river** la rivière  
**Riviera** (*French*) la Côte d'Azur  
**road** la route  
**roast** rôti(e)  
**roll** (*bread*) le petit pain  
**roof** le toit  
**room** (*in house*) la pièce; (*in hotel*) la chambre; (*space*) la place; **double room** la chambre pour deux personnes; **single room** la chambre pour une personne; **family room** la chambre pour une famille  
**room number** le numéro de chambre  
**room service** le service dans les chambres  
**rosé wine** le rosé  
**row** (*line, theatre*) la rangée  
**rubber** (*material*) le caoutchouc; (*eraser*) la gomme

**rubbish** les ordures *fpl*  
**rucksack** le sac à dos  
**to run** courir  
**rush hour** l'heure *f* de pointe

## S

**sad** triste  
**saddle** la selle  
**safe** (*for valuables*) le coffre-fort  
**safe** sans danger; **Is it safe?** Ce n'est pas dangereux?  
**safety belt** la ceinture de sécurité  
**safety pin** l'épingle *f* de sûreté  
**to sail** (*sport, leisure*) faire de la voile  
**sailboard** la planche à voile  
**sailing** (*sport*) la voile  
**sailing boat** le voilier  
**salad** la salade; **green salad** la salade verte; **mixed salad** la salade composée; **salad dressing** la vinaigrette  
**sales** (*in shops*) les soldes *fpl*  
**sales assistant** le vendeur, la vendeuse  
**salesman** le vendeur  
**sales rep** le représentant, la représentante  
**saleswoman** la vendeuse  
**salmon** le saumon  
**salt** le sel  
**salt water** l'eau salée  
**salty** salé(e)  
**same** même; **Have a good weekend!** – **The same to you!** Bon week-end! – Vous de même!  
**sand** le sable  
**sandals** les sandales *fpl*  
**sandwich** le sandwich; **toasted sandwich** le croque-monsieur  
**sanitary towels** les serviettes *fpl* hygiéniques  
**sardines** les sardines *fpl*  
**satellite dish** l'antenne *f* parabolique  
**satellite TV** la télévision par satellite  
**Saturday** samedi  
**sauce** la sauce  
**saucepan** la casserole  
**saucer** la soucoupe  
**sausage** la saucisse  
**savoury** salé(e)  
**to say** dire  
**scarf** (*headscarf*) le foulard; (*woollen*) l'écharpe *f*  
**scenery** le paysage  
**schedule** l'horaire *m*  
**school** l'école *f*; **at school** à l'école; **to go to school** aller à l'école; **after school** après l'école;  
**primary school** l'école primaire

**scissors** les ciseaux *mpl*  
**score** (*of match*) le score; **What's the score?** Quel est le score?; **to score a goal** marquer un but  
**Scotland** l'Écosse *f*  
**Scottish** écossais(e)  
**screen** (*on computer, TV*) l'écran *m*  
**screw** la vis  
**screwdriver** le tournevis  
**scuba diving** la plongée sous-marine  
**sea** la mer  
**seafood** les fruits *mpl* de mer  
**seaside** le bord de la mer; **at the seaside** au bord de la mer  
**season** (*of year*) la saison; **high season** la haute saison; **in season** de saison  
**season ticket** la carte d'abonnement  
**seat** (*chair*) le siège; (*in bus, train*) la place  
**seatbelt** la ceinture de sécurité  
**second** second(e); **a second** une seconde  
**second class** de seconde classe; **to travel second class** voyager en seconde classe  
**secretary** le/la secrétaire  
**to see** voir  
**self-service** le libre-service  
**to sell** vendre; **Do you sell...?** Vous vendez...?  
**Sellotape®** le Scotch®  
**to send** envoyer  
**senior citizen** la personne du troisième âge  
**sensible** raisonnable  
**separated** séparé(e)  
**separately to pay separately** payer séparément  
**September** septembre  
**septic tank** la fosse septique  
**serious** (*accident, problem*) grave  
**to serve** servir  
**service** (*in restaurant, shop*) le service; (*church*) l'office *m*; **Is service included?** Le service est compris?; **service charge** le service; **service station** la station-service  
**to service** (*car, washing machine*) réviser  
**serviette** la serviette  
**set menu** le menu à prix fixe  
**several** plusieurs; **several times** plusieurs fois  
**shade** l'ombre *f*; **in the shade** à l'ombre  
**shallow** peu profond(e)  
**shampoo** le shampoing  
**to share** partager  
**to shave** se raser  
**shaver** le rasoir  
**shaving cream** la crème à raser  
**she** elle  
**sheet** (*for bed*) le drap  
**sherry** le xérès  
**ship** le navire

**shirt** la chemise  
**shock absorber** l'amortisseur *m*  
**shoe** la chaussure  
**shoelaces** les lacets *mpl*  
**shoe polish** le cirage  
**shoe shop** le magasin de chaussures  
**shop** le magasin  
**shop assistant** le vendeur, la vendeuse  
**shopping** les courses *fpl*; **to go shopping** (*for pleasure*) faire du shopping; (*for food*) faire les courses  
**shopping centre** le centre commercial  
**shop window** la vitrine  
**short** court(e)  
**shorts** le short  
**short-sighted** myope  
**shoulder** l'épaule *f*  
**show** le spectacle  
**to show** montrer  
**shower** (*bath*) la douche; (*rain*) l'averse *f*; **to take a shower** prendre une douche  
**shower gel** le gel douche  
**shrimp** la crevette  
**shut** (*closed*) fermé(e)  
**to shut** fermer  
**shutters** (*outside*) les volets *mpl*  
**shuttle service** la navette  
**sick** (*ill*) malade; **I feel sick** J'ai envie de vomir  
**side** le côté  
**side dish** la garniture  
**sightseeing to go sightseeing** faire du tourisme  
**to sign** signer  
**signature** la signature  
**silk** la soie  
**silver** l'argent *m*  
**SIM card** la carte SIM  
**similar similar to** semblable à; **They're similar** Ils se ressemblent  
**since** (*time*) depuis; (*given that*) puisque; **since 1974** depuis 1974; **since you're not French** puisque vous n'êtes pas français  
**to sing** chanter  
**single** (*unmarried*) célibataire; (*bed, room*) pour une personne  
**single ticket** l'aller *m* simple  
**sister** la sœur  
**sister-in-law** la belle-sœur  
**to sit** s'asseoir; **Sit down, please!** Asseyez-vous, s'il vous plaît!  
**site** (*website*) le site  
**size** (*clothes*) la taille; (*shoes*) la pointure  
**skateboard** le skate-board  
**ski** le ski  
**to ski** faire du ski  
**ski boots** les chaussures *fpl* de ski

**to skid** dérapier  
**skiing** le ski  
**ski instructor** le moniteur, la monitrice de ski  
**ski lift** le remonte-pente  
**skimmed skimmed milk** le lait écrémé  
**skin** la peau  
**ski pass** le forfait  
**ski pole, ski stick** le bâton de ski  
**ski run, ski piste** la piste de ski  
**skirt** la jupe  
**to sleep** dormir; **to go to sleep** s'endormir  
**sleeper (on train)** la couchette  
**sleeping bag** le sac de couchage  
**sleeping car** la voiture-lit  
**sleeping pill** le somnifère  
**slice (bread, cake, ham)** la tranche  
**sliced bread** le pain de mie en tranches  
**slide (photograph)** la diapositive  
**slightly** légèrement  
**slow** lent(e)  
**slowly** lentement  
**small** petit(e); **smaller than** plus petit(e) que  
**smell** l'odeur *f*; **a bad smell** une mauvaise odeur; **a nice smell** une bonne odeur  
**to smile** sourire  
**to smoke** fumer; **I don't smoke** Je ne fume pas; **Can I smoke?** Je peux fumer?  
**SMS** le SMS  
**snack to have a snack** manger un petit quelque chose  
**snail** l'escargot *m*  
**snow** la neige  
**to snow** neiger; **It's snowing** Il neige  
**snowboarding to go snowboarding** faire du snowboard  
**snow chains** les chaînes *fpl*  
**so (therefore)** alors; (*in comparisons*) aussi; **The shop was closed so I didn't buy it** Le magasin était fermé, alors je ne l'ai pas acheté; **It's not so expensive as the other one** Ce n'est pas aussi cher que l'autre; **so do I** moi aussi; **so much/so many...** tellement de...; **I think so** Je crois  
**soap** le savon  
**socket (for plug)** la prise de courant  
**socks** les chaussettes *fpl*  
**sofa bed** le canapé-lit  
**soft drink** la boisson non alcoolisée  
**software** le logiciel  
**sole (shoe)** la semelle  
**some** du, de la, des; **Would you like some bread?** Voulez-vous du pain?; **some books** des livres; **some of them** quelques uns  
**someone** quelqu'un  
**something** quelque chose  
**sometimes** quelquefois  
**son** le fils

**son-in-law** le gendre  
**song** la chanson  
**soon** bientôt; **as soon as possible** dès que possible  
**sore to have a sore throat** avoir mal à la gorge  
**sorry Sorry!** Pardon!; **I'm sorry!** Je suis désolé(e)!  
**sort** la sorte  
**soup** la soupe  
**sour** aigre  
**south** le sud  
**souvenir** le souvenir  
**space** la place  
**spade** la pelle  
**Spain** l'Espagne *f*  
**Spaniard** l'Espagnol *m*, l'Espagnole *f*  
**Spanish** espagnol(e)  
**spare parts** les pièces *fpl* de rechange  
**spare tyre** le pneu de rechange  
**spare wheel** la roue de secours  
**sparkling sparkling water** l'eau gazeuse; **sparkling wine** le mousseux  
**to speak** parler; **Do you speak English?** Vous parlez anglais?  
**speaker (loudspeaker)** le haut-parleur  
**special** spécial(e)  
**speciality** la spécialité  
**speedboat** le hors-bord  
**speed limit** la limitation de vitesse  
**speedometer** le compteur  
**to spell How is it spelt?** Comment ça s'écrit?  
**to spend (money)** dépenser  
**spicy** épicé(e)  
**spinach** les épinards *mpl*  
**spirits (alcohol)** les spiritueux *mpl*  
**spite in spite of** malgré  
**spoon** la cuiller  
**sport** le sport  
**sports centre** le centre sportif  
**sports shop** le magasin de sports  
**spring (season)** le printemps  
**square (in town)** la place  
**squash** le squash  
**squid** le calmar  
**stadium** le stade  
**stain** la tache  
**stairs** l'escalier *m*  
**stalls (in theatre)** l'orchestre *m*  
**stamp** le timbre  
**to stand** être debout  
**start** le début; **at the start of the film** au début du film; **from the start** dès le début



**to start** commencer; (*car*) démarrer; **What time does it start?** À quelle heure est-ce que ça commence?; **The car won't start** La voiture ne veut pas démarrer  
**starter** (*in meal*) le hors d'œuvre  
**station** la gare  
**stationer's** la papeterie  
**stay** le séjour; **Enjoy your stay!** Bon séjour!  
**to stay** (*remain*) rester; **I'm staying at the... hotel** Je suis à l'hôtel...; **Where are you staying? – In a hotel** Où logez-vous? – À l'hôtel; **to stay the night** passer la nuit; **We stayed in Paris for a few days** Nous avons passé quelques jours à Paris  
**steak** le bifteck  
**to steal** voler  
**steamed** cuit(e) à la vapeur  
**steering wheel** le volant  
**stepbrother** le demi-frère  
**stepdaughter** la belle-fille  
**stepfather** le beau-père  
**stepmother** la belle-mère  
**stepsister** la demi-sœur  
**stepson** le beau-fils  
**stereo** la chaîne (stéréo)  
**sterling** la livre sterling  
**steward** (*on plane*) le steward  
**stewardess** (*on plane*) l'hôtesse *f*  
**sticking-plaster** le sparadrap  
**still still water** l'eau *f* plate  
**sting** la piqûre  
**to sting** piquer  
**stockings** les bas *mpl*  
**stomach** l'estomac *m*; **He's got stomachache** Il a mal au ventre  
**stone** la pierre  
**stop bus stop** l'arrêt *m* de bus  
**to stop** arrêter; **Do you stop at the station?** Vous vous arrêtez à la gare?; **to stop doing** arrêter de faire; **to stop smoking** arrêter de fumer  
**store** (*shop*) le magasin  
**storey** l'étage *m*  
**straightaway** tout de suite  
**straight straight on** tout droit  
**strange** bizarre  
**straw** (*for drinking*) la paille  
**strawberry** la fraise  
**street** la rue  
**street map** le plan de la ville  
**strike** la grève; **to be on strike** être en grève  
**striped** rayé(e)  
**stroke** (*medical*) l'attaque *f* (d'apoplexie)  
**strong** fort(e)  
**stuck** **It's stuck** C'est coincé  
**student** l'étudiant *m*, l'étudiante *f*

**student discount** le tarif étudiant  
**stuffed** farci(e)  
**stupid** stupide  
**subway** (*train*) le métro; (*passage*) le passage souterrain  
**suddenly** soudain  
**suede** le daim  
**sugar** le sucre  
**to suggest** suggérer  
**suit** (*man's*) le costume; (*woman's*) le tailleur  
**suitcase** la valise  
**summer** l'été *m*  
**summer holidays** les vacances *fpl* d'été  
**sun** le soleil  
**to sunbathe** prendre un bain de soleil  
**sunblock** l'écran *m* total  
**sunburn** le coup de soleil  
**suncream** la crème solaire  
**Sunday** le dimanche  
**sunglasses** les lunettes *fpl* de soleil  
**sunny** **It's sunny** Il fait beau  
**sunroof** le toit ouvrant  
**sunscreen** (*lotion*) l'écran *m* solaire  
**sunshade** le parasol  
**sunstroke** l'insolation *f*  
**suntan** le bronzage  
**suntan lotion** le lait solaire  
**supermarket** le supermarché  
**supplement** le supplément  
**to surf** faire du surf; **to surf the Net** surfer sur Internet  
**surfboard** la planche de surf  
**surname** le nom de famille  
**surprise** la surprise; **What a surprise!** Quelle surprise!  
**sweater** le pull  
**sweatshirt** le sweat  
**sweet** (*not savoury*) sucré(e)  
**sweet** (*dessert*) le dessert; **sweets** les bonbons *mpl*  
**to swim** nager  
**swimming pool** la piscine  
**swimsuit** le maillot de bain  
**swing** (*for children*) la balançoire  
**Swiss** suisse  
**switch** le bouton  
**to switch off** éteindre  
**to switch on** allumer  
**Switzerland** la Suisse  
**swollen** enflé(e)

## T

**table** la table

**tablecloth** la nappe

**tablespoon** la grande cuiller

**table tennis** le tennis de table

**tablet** (*medicine*) le comprimé; (*computer*) la tablette

**tailor's** le tailleur

**to take** (*medicine, sugar*) prendre; (*take with you*) emporter; (*exam*) passer; (*subject at school*) faire;

**Do you take sugar?** Vous prenez du sucre?; **I'll take you to the airport** Je vais vous emmener à l'aéroport; **How long does it take?** Ça prend combien de temps?; **It takes about one hour** Ça prend environ une heure; **We take credit cards** Nous acceptons les cartes de crédit

**take away** (*food*) à emporter

**to take off** (*plane*) décoller; (*clothes*) enlever

**to take out** sortir

**to talk to** parler à

**tall** grand(e)

**tampons** les tampons *mpl* hygiéniques

**tangerine** la mandarine

**tank petrol tank** le réservoir

**tap** le robinet

**tap water** l'eau *f* du robinet

**tart** la tarte

**taste** le goût

**to taste** goûter; **Can I taste some?** Je peux goûter?

**taxi** le taxi

**taxi driver** le chauffeur de taxi

**taxi rank** la station de taxis

**tea** le thé; **herbal tea** la tisane; **lemon tea** le thé au citron; **tea with milk** le thé au lait

**teabag** le sachet de thé

**to teach** enseigner

**teacher** le professeur

**team** l'équipe *f*

**teapot** la théière

**teaspoon** la petite cuiller

**teenager** l'adolescent *m*, l'adolescente *f*

**teeth** les dents *fpl*

**telephone** le téléphone

**to telephone** téléphoner

**telephone call** le coup de téléphone

**telephone number** le numéro de téléphone

**television** la télévision; **on television tonight** à la télévision ce soir

**to tell** dire

**temperature** la température; **to have a temperature** avoir de la fièvre

**tenant** le/la locataire

**tennis** le tennis

**tennis ball** la balle de tennis

**tennis court** le court de tennis

**tennis racket** la raquette de tennis  
**tent** la tente  
**tent peg** le piquet de tente  
**terminal** (*airport*) l'aérogare *f*  
**terrace** la terrasse  
**to test** (*to try out*) tester  
**to text** envoyer un SMS (à); **I'll text you** Je t'enverrai un SMS  
**text message** le SMS, le texto  
**than** que; **Diana sings better than me** Diana chante mieux que moi; **more than you** plus que toi;  
**more than five** plus de cinq  
**thank you** merci; **thank you very much** merci beaucoup  
**that** ce, cet, cette; **that cat** ce chat; **that man** cet homme; **that dress** cette robe; **that one** celui-là, celle-là; **to think that...** penser que...  
**the** le, la, l', les  
**theatre** le théâtre  
**their** (*sing*) leur; (*plural*) leurs; **their car** leur voiture; **their children** leurs enfants  
**them** les; leur; eux; elles; **I didn't know them** Je ne les connaissais pas; **I gave them some brochures** Je leur ai donné des brochures; **It's for them** C'est pour eux  
**there** (*over there*) là; **there is, there are** il y a; **there was** il y avait; **there'll be** il y aura  
**therefore** donc  
**thermometer** le thermomètre  
**these** ces; **these ones** ceux-ci, celles-ci  
**they** ils, elles  
**thick** (*not thin*) épais(se)  
**thief** le voleur, la voleuse  
**thin** (*person*) mince  
**thing** la chose; **my things** mes affaires  
**to think** penser  
**thirsty** **I'm thirsty** J'ai soif  
**this** ce, cet, cette; **this cat** ce chat; **this man** cet homme; **this dress** cette robe; **this one** celui-ci, celle-ci  
**those** ces; **those ones** ceux-là, celles-là  
**throat** la gorge  
**through** par; **to go through Rouen** passer par Rouen; **a through train** un train direct; **from May through to September** de mai jusqu'à septembre  
**Thursday** jeudi  
**ticket** (*for plane, train, theatre, concert*) le billet; (*for bus, tube, cinema, museum*) le ticket; **a single ticket** un aller simple; **a return ticket** un aller-retour; **a book of tickets** un carnet de tickets  
**ticket collector** le contrôleur, la contrôlease  
**ticket office** le guichet  
**tide** (*sea*) la marée; **low tide** la marée basse; **high tide** la marée haute  
**tidy** bien rangé(e)  
**tie** la cravate  
**tight** (*fitting*) serré(e)  
**tights** le collant  
**till** (*cash desk*) la caisse  
**till** (*until*) jusqu'à; **till 2 o'clock** jusqu'à deux heures  
**time** le temps; **this time** cette fois; **What time is it?** Quelle heure est-il?; **on time** à l'heure

**timetable** l'horaire *m*  
**tin** (*can*) la boîte  
**tin-opener** l'ouvre-boîtes *m*  
**tip** (*to waiter*) le pourboire  
**tipped** (*cigarette*) à bout filtre  
**tired** fatigué(e)  
**tissues** les kleenex® *mpl*  
**to** à; (*with name of country*) en, au; **to London** à Londres; **to France** en France; **to Canada** au Canada; **to the airport** à l'aéroport; **from nine o'clock to half past three** de neuf heures à trois heures et demie; **something to drink** quelque chose à boire  
**toast** le pain grillé  
**tobacconist's** le bureau de tabac  
**today** aujourd'hui  
**toe** le doigt de pied  
**together** ensemble  
**toilet** les toilettes *fpl*  
**toilet paper** le papier hygiénique  
**toiletries** les articles *fpl* de toilette  
**toll** (*motorway*) le péage  
**tomato** la tomate; **tinned tomatoes** les tomates en boîte  
**tomato soup** la soupe à la tomate  
**tomorrow** demain; **tomorrow morning** demain matin; **tomorrow afternoon** demain après-midi; **tomorrow evening** demain soir  
**tongue** la langue  
**tonic water** le tonic  
**tonight** (*this evening*) ce soir; (*during the night*) cette nuit  
**too** (*also*) aussi; (*excessively*) trop; **My sister came too** Ma sœur est venue aussi; **The water's too hot** L'eau est trop chaude; **too late** trop tard; **too much** trop; **too much noise** trop de bruit; **too many** trop; **too many people** trop de gens  
**tooth** la dent  
**toothache** le mal de dents  
**toothbrush** la brosse à dents  
**toothpaste** le dentifrice  
**toothpick** le cure-dent  
**top the top floor** le dernier étage  
**top** (*of bottle*) le bouchon; (*of pen*) le capuchon; (*of pyjamas, bikini*) le haut; (*of hill, mountain*) le sommet; **on top of** sur  
**total** (*amount*) le total  
**to touch** toucher  
**tough** (*meat*) dur(e)  
**tour** (*trip*) l'excursion *f*; (*of museum*) la visite; **guided tour** la visite guidée  
**tour guide** le/la guide  
**tour operator** le tour-opérateur  
**tourist** le/la touriste  
**tourist information office** l'office du tourisme  
**towel** la serviette  
**tower** la tour  
**town** la ville; **town centre** le centre-ville; **town plan** le plan de la ville

**toy** le jouet  
**toyshop** le magasin de jouets  
**traffic** la circulation  
**traffic jam** l'embouteillage *m*  
**traffic lights** les feux *mpl*  
**traffic warden** le contractuel, la contractuelle  
**train** le train; **by train** par le train; **the next train** le prochain train; **the first train** le premier train;  
**the last train** le dernier train  
**trainers** les baskets *fpl*  
**tranquillizer** le tranquillisant  
**to translate** traduire  
**to travel** voyager  
**travel agent's** l'agence *f* de voyages  
**travel guide** le guide  
**travel insurance** l'assurance *f* voyage  
**travel sickness** le mal des transports  
**traveller's cheque** le chèque de voyage  
**tray** le plateau  
**treatment** le traitement  
**tree** l'arbre *m*  
**trip** l'excursion *f*  
**trolley (for luggage, shopping)** le chariot  
**trousers** le pantalon  
**truck** le camion  
**true** vrai(e)  
**trunk (luggage)** la malle  
**trunks swimming trunks** le maillot (de bain)  
**to try** essayer  
**to try on (clothes, shoes)** essayer  
**t-shirt** le tee-shirt  
**Tuesday** mardi  
**tuna** le thon  
**to turn** tourner  
**to turn off (light, cooker, TV)** éteindre; (*tap*) fermer  
**to turn on (light, cooker, TV)** allumer; (*tap*) ouvrir  
**turquoise (colour)** turquoise  
**tweet** le tweet  
**to tweet** tweeter  
**twice** deux fois; **twice a week** deux fois par semaine  
**twin twin room** la chambre à deux lits  
**twins (male)** les jumeaux; (*female*) les jumelles  
**twisted** tordu(e)  
**tyre** le pneu  
**tyre pressure** la pression des pneus

## U

**ugly** laid(e)

**ulcer** l'ulcère *m*; **mouth ulcer** l'aphte *m*  
**umbrella** le parapluie; (*sunshade*) le parasol  
**uncle** l'oncle *m*  
**uncomfortable** inconfortable  
**under** sous; **children under 10** les enfants de moins de 10 ans  
**undercooked** pas assez cuit(e)  
**underground** le métro  
**underpants** (*men's underwear*) le slip  
**to understand** comprendre; **I don't understand** Je ne comprends pas; **Do you understand?** Vous comprenez?  
**underwear** les sous-vêtements *mpl*  
**unfortunately** malheureusement  
**United Kingdom** le Royaume-Uni  
**United States** les États-Unis *mpl*  
**university** l'université *f*  
**unleaded petrol** l'essence *f* sans plomb  
**unlikely** peu probable  
**to unlock** ouvrir  
**to unpack** déballer ses affaires  
**unpleasant** désagréable  
**up up here** ici; **up there** là-haut; **What's up?** Qu'est-ce qu'il y a?; **up to 50** jusqu'à 50; **up to now** jusqu'à présent  
**upstairs** en haut; **the people upstairs** les gens du dessus  
**urgent** urgent(e)  
**us** nous; **Can you help us?** Pouvez-vous nous aider?  
**USA** les USA *mpl*  
**to use** utiliser  
**useful** utile  
**usual** habituel(le)  
**usually** d'habitude

## V

**vacancy** (*in hotel*) la chambre libre  
**vacant** libre  
**vacation** les vacances *fpl*  
**vacuum cleaner** l'aspirateur *m*  
**valid** valable  
**valuable** d'une grande valeur  
**value** la valeur  
**VAT** la TVA  
**veal** le veau  
**vegan** végétalien(ne); **I'm vegan** Je suis végétalien(ne)  
**vegetables** les légumes *mpl*  
**vegetarian** végétarien(ne); **I'm vegetarian** Je suis végétarien(ne)  
**very** très; **very much** beaucoup; **I like it very much** Je l'aime beaucoup  
**vest** le maillot de corps  
**via** par

**video camera** la caméra vidéo  
**view** la vue  
**village** le village  
**vinegar** le vinaigre  
**vineyard** le vignoble  
**virus** le virus  
**visa** le visa  
**visit** le séjour  
**to visit** visiter  
**visiting hours** les heures *fpl* de visite  
**visitor** le visiteur, la visiteuse  
**voicemail** la messagerie vocale  
**voucher** le bon

## W

**waist** la taille  
**to wait for** attendre  
**waiter** le serveur  
**waiting room** la salle d'attente  
**waitress** la serveuse  
**to wake up** se réveiller  
**Wales** le pays de Galles  
**walk** la promenade; **to go for a walk** faire une promenade  
**to walk** marcher; (*go on foot*) aller à pied  
**walking boots** les chaussures *fpl* de marche  
**walking stick** la canne  
**wall** le mur  
**wallet** le portefeuille  
**to want** vouloir  
**ward** (*hospital*) la salle  
**wardrobe** l'armoire *f*  
**warehouse** l'entrepôt *m*  
**warm** chaud(e); **It's warm outside** Il fait bon dehors  
**to warm up** (*milk, food*) faire chauffer  
**to wash** laver  
**washing machine** la machine à laver  
**washing powder** la lessive  
**washing-up liquid** le produit à vaisselle  
**wasp** la guêpe  
**waste bin** la poubelle  
**watch** la montre  
**to watch** (*look at*) regarder  
**water** l'eau *f*; **bottled water** l'eau en bouteille; **cold water** l'eau froide; **drinking water** l'eau potable; **hot water** l'eau chaude; **sparkling water** l'eau gazeuse; **still water** l'eau plate  
**water heater** le chauffe-eau  
**watermelon** la pastèque  
**to waterski** faire du ski nautique



**watersports** les sports *mpl* nautiques  
**waves** (*on sea*) les vagues *fpl*  
**way in** l'entrée *f*  
**way out** la sortie  
**we** nous  
**weak** (*coffee, tea*) léger(ère); (*person*) faible  
**to wear** porter  
**weather** le temps  
**weather forecast** la météo  
**web** (*internet*) le Web  
**website** le site web  
**wedding** le mariage  
**wedding present** le cadeau de mariage  
**Wednesday** mercredi  
**week** la semaine; **last week** la semaine dernière; **next week** la semaine prochaine; **per week** par semaine; **this week** cette semaine; **during the week** pendant la semaine  
**weekday** le jour de semaine  
**weekend** le week-end; **next weekend** le week-end prochain; **this weekend** ce week-end  
**to weigh** peser  
**weight** le poids  
**welcome!** bienvenu(e)!  
**well** bien; **I'm very well** Je vais très bien; **He's not well** Il est souffrant  
**well done** (*steak*) bien cuit(e)  
**Welsh** gallois(e); (*language*) le gallois  
**west** l'ouest *m*  
**wet** mouillé(e); **wet weather** le temps pluvieux  
**wetsuit** la combinaison de plongée  
**what?** quoi?; **What colour is it?** C'est de quelle couleur?; **What is it?** Qu'est-ce que c'est?; **I saw what happened** J'ai vu ce qui arrivé; **Tell me what you did** Dites-moi ce que vous avez fait  
**wheel** la roue  
**wheelchair** le fauteuil roulant  
**when?** quand?  
**where?** où?  
**whether** si; **I don't know whether to go or not** Je ne sais pas si je dois y aller ou non  
**which?** quel(le)?; **Which one?** Lequel, laquelle?; **Which ones?** Lesquels, lesquelles?  
**while in a while** bientôt; (*very soon*) tout à l'heure  
**whisky** le whisky  
**white** blanc (blanche)  
**who?** qui?  
**whole** entier(ière)  
**wholemeal bread** le pain complet  
**whose** **Whose is it?** C'est à qui?  
**why?** pourquoi?  
**wide** large  
**widow** la veuve  
**widower** le veuf  
**wife** la femme  
**wild** (*animal*) sauvage

**to win** gagner  
**window** la fenêtre; (*in car, train*) la vitre; **shop window** la vitrine  
**windscreen** le pare-brise  
**windscreen wipers** les essuie-glaces *mpl*  
**to windsurf** faire de la planche à voile  
**windy** **It's windy** Il y a du vent  
**wine** le vin; **dry wine** le vin sec; **house wine** le vin en pichet; **red wine** le vin rouge; **rosé wine** le vin rosé; **sparkling wine** le vin mousseux; **white wine** le vin blanc; **wine list** la carte des vins  
**wing mirror** le rétroviseur latéral  
**winter** l'hiver *m*  
**with** avec; **with ice** avec des glaçons; **with milk** avec du lait  
**without** sans; **without ice** sans glaçons; **without milk** sans lait  
**woman** la femme  
**wonderful** merveilleux (-euse)  
**wood** le bois  
**wooden** en bois  
**wool** la laine  
**woollen** en laine  
**word** le mot  
**work** le travail; **at work** au travail  
**to work** (*person*) travailler; (*machine, car*) marcher; **It doesn't work** ça ne marche pas  
**world** le monde  
**worried** inquiet(-iète)  
**worse** pire  
**worth** **It's worth...** Ça vaut...  
**to wrap** (*parcel*) emballer  
**wrapping paper** le papier cadeau  
**wrist** le poignet  
**to write** écrire; **Please write it down** Vous pouvez l'écrire, s'il vous plaît?  
**wrong** faux (fausse); **What's wrong?** Qu'est-ce qu'il y a?

## X

**X-ray** la radiographie

## Y

**yacht** le yacht  
**year** l'an *m*; l'année *f*; **a year ago** il y a un an; **this year** cette année; **next year** l'année prochaine;  
**last year** l'année dernière  
**yearly** annuel(le)  
**yellow** jaune  
**yes** oui; **yes, please** oui, merci  
**yesterday** hier; **yesterday morning** hier matin; **yesterday evening** hier soir  
**yet not yet** pas encore  
**yoghurt** le yaourt; **plain yoghurt** le yaourt nature  
**yolk** le jaune d'œuf  
**you** (*familiar*) tu; (*polite, plural*) vous  
**young** jeune

**your** (*familiar sing*) ton, ta; (*familiar plural*) tes; (*collective or polite singular*) votre; (*collective or polite plural*) vos  
**youth hostel** l'auberge f de jeunesse

## Z

**zip** la fermeture éclair

**zoo** le zoo

**zoom lens** le zoom

**zucchini** la courgette

## **About the Publisher**

### **Australia**

HarperCollins Publishers (Australia) Pty. Ltd.

Level 13, 201 Elizabeth Street

Sydney, NSW 2000, Australia

<http://www.harpercollins.com.au>

### **Canada**

HarperCollins Canada

2 Bloor Street East - 20th Floor

Toronto, ON, M4W, 1A8, Canada

<http://www.harpercollins.ca>

### **New Zealand**

HarperCollins Publishers (New Zealand) Limited

P.O. Box 1

Auckland, New Zealand

<http://www.harpercollins.co.nz>

### **United Kingdom**

HarperCollins Publishers Ltd.

1 London Bridge Street

London SE1 9GF

<http://www.harpercollins.co.uk>

### **United States**

HarperCollins Publishers Inc.

195 Broadway

New York, NY 10007

<http://www.harpercollins.com>